Doctrines

of the

Future

Latter-day Saint Teachings on Things Soon to Come



R. Nathan Richardson

Updated 10.2.26

Usage Terms: This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License (CC BY 4.0). **You are free to share and adapt this work**, provided proper credit is given to the author. Full license text: https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/. The full text visions and scriptures in this book are fully in the public domain (CC0).

Contact editor@richardsonstudies.com. See RichardsonStudies.com for the free eBook and related materials.

This volume focuses on doctrinal church teachings. It excludes any material from visionaries who were not church leaders.

ABBREVIATED CONTENTS

- Doctrines of the Gift of Prophecy & Visions
- Doctrines of the Time Being Near & Needed Preparation
- Doctrines of Trials, Persecution, Evil Government, & Needed Cleansing
- Doctrines of Escape & Gathering for Safety
- Doctrines of the Latter-day Mission to Build Zion
- Doctrines of Disaster: Economic Collapse, Civil War, Plagues, Invasion, Earthquakes
- Doctrines of Spiritual Powers: Angels, Translation, Veil, Teleportation
- Doctrines of the Final Stages: Lost Tribes, 144,000, New Jerusalem, Second Coming
- Topical Summaries of Prophet Quotes on the Future from Crowther's Prophecy Book
- Appendix 1: Classical Latter-day Saint Prophet Visions of the Future
- Appendix 2: Proposed Sequences & Topical Overviews of Prophetic Teachings

Detailed Contents

Introductory Quotations on the Nature of Prophecy 15

The Book of Revelation: A Short Chronology of Events 17

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE GIFT OF PROPHECY & VISIONS 24

Scriptures on The Gift of Prophecy: Definition, Examples, For All Faithful, Testimony is Prophecy 24

Encouraged to Share Spiritual Experiences: Scriptures 28

God Will Give Us Visions: Scriptures 30

Dreams, Visions, Prophecy & Revelation: Quotes 32

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE TIME BEING NEAR & NEEDED PREPARATION 34

Book of Mormon as Parallel Timeline to Modern History of God's people 34

Joseph Smith Clarifies, Prophets WILL Know The Time 35

We are Close: Latter-day Prophet Quotes 36

A Marked Generation: Quotes 41

We Are Living in a Post-Christian World - Elder Cook 43

We are Wicked as Sodom – Words of the Prophets 44

Who Will (and WON'T) Abide the Day of Christ's Coming – Warnings of Prophets 48

Accelerate Your Preparation – Dallin H. Oaks 2004 56

Famine: Scriptures 56

Food Storage: Key Recent Quotes 57

Food Storage: Quotes From Church History 61

Additional Quotations on Preparedness 62

Church Articles on Preparedness 66

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF TRIALS, PERSECUTION, EVIL GOVERNMENT, & NEEDED CLEANSING 67

Persecution & Apostasy: Scriptures 68

Persecution & Apostasy: Introductory Quotes 70

Stay with Church Leadership Majority & Records: Joseph Smith, Supporting Scriptures & Quotes on Church Governed by Common Consent (Majority) 78

Elder H. Verlan Andersen on The Apostasy (of Members) Of The Latter Days 82

Elder Packer: Organized Atheistic Attacks from In & Out of the Church 87

Scriptures: Some Want to Get the Saints in Trouble, Gather to Zion for Refuge, Avoid Beheading, Christ's Return Sooner than Think ... 88

Deseret News Reports Heber C Kimball Prophecies: Deception, Persecution, Elders Called Home, Return of Joseph Smith, Gathering to Missouri 89

J. Golden Kimball Relates Heber C. Kimball Prophecies from 1868 & 1856 in a Conference Report in 1930: Persecution Coming to the Saints to Test Their Limits, Won't Endure the Test on Borrowed Light; Missouri will Yet be Swept Clean 90

Excerpt from Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox 92

Thought on the Validity of Heber's Prophecies 93

Overview of Isaiah on Saints being Tried & Refined Before They Can Redeem Zion 94

Isaiah Teaches that Only a Small Remnant Tithe Will Remain 96

Analysis on Missouri's Yet Future Cleansing (and the Cleansing of Everywhere Else): Not Entirely Fulfilled in Civil War 1, Refuge Will Yet Be Needed 97

Tribulations Will be Small for the Faithful - Heber C. Kimball & Vaughn J. Featherstone 101

Secret Combinations & The New World Order: Scriptures..... 102

Secret Combinations & The New World Order: Quotes 103

Apocrypha Scripture: Ezra's Prophecy on America's Decline & The Abominable World Government 107

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF ESCAPE & GATHERING FOR SAFETY 113

Gathering: Scriptures 113

Gathering: Quotes 116

Christians Heeded the Warning to flee Jerusalem before its 70AD destruction: Eusebius & Epiphanes 120

Prophets on Fleeing to Live in Tents 121

Patterns in the Scriptures of God Calling Out his People 122

49 Examples of Gathering to Places of Safety 123

Book of Mormon Pattern to Escape: Examples of Ammon & Alma 126

The Call to Flee Nauvoo – A Foreshadow of Our Day: 3 Waves of Retreat 128

Wheat Gathered Out BEFORE Tares Burned: JST & D&C on Tares Driving the Church into the Wilderness..... 131

Escape to Places of Safety are Prepared – Henry B. Eyring & H. Aldridge 2005..... 132

Valleys of the Rocky Mountains will be Refuge for Millions When Judgement Comes – Quotes 132

Joseph Smith: Gathering to Appointed Places Only Way to be Saved in Last Days, No Time to Cover Earth Before These Things, Escape War in Zion..... 134

Church Leaders Oversee the Gathering – Harold B. Lee..... 135

Only This People via Priesthood will Be Mostly Safe – Wilford Woodruff 135

Scriptures: My People Will I Preserve; They Shall Be Gathered Together in their Impenetrable Place 136

Scriptures: Come Out (Exodus), Hide Until Indignation Past, Woman (Church) into Wilderness 3.5 Years, Joy in Wilderness..... 137

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE LATTER-DAY MISSION TO BUILD ZION..... 138

When We Will Live the Law of Consecration in Zion We Will Be Blessed: Scriptures 138

Latter-day Zion: Foretold, Expected, & Commanded - Quotes from Early Leaders 145

Zion is to be Built Before Christ Returns – Quotes from Early Leaders 148

Our Priesthood Duty to Build the Latter-day Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders 149

The Saints Gathered to Utah to Build Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders..... 151

Desire & Focus on Building Zion Now – Quotes from Early Leaders 153

Building Zion is Not Just Spiritual – Quotes from Early Leaders ... 158

Leave Behind Babylon's Selfish Principles & Build Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders..... 162

Zion Includes Economic Independence from Babylon – Quotes from Early Leaders 166

Zion Requires Economic Unity – Quotes from Early Leaders 171

Economic Cooperatives Are a Steppingstone to Zion & Bring Blessings – Quotes from Early Church Leaders 175

A Possible Last Days Chiastic Timeline, Based on Restoration Events 181

Zion Shrugged: Thoughts on Why We Haven't Built Economic Zion Yet by Jesse Fisher 182

The Law Of Zion – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary 185

The Idea of Zion - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary 190

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF DISASTER: ECONOMIC COLLAPSE, CIVIL WAR, PLAGUE, INVASION, UTAH EARTHQUAKE..... 193

Economic Collapse: Scriptures..... 194

Economic Collapse: Quotes 196

Another American Civil War: Scriptures..... 199

Another American Civil War: Quotes 201

Plague: Scriptures 210

Plague: Quotes..... 214

Invasion: Scriptures 215

Invasion: Quotes 217

Earthquake: Scriptures 222

Earthquakes: Quotes 224

Seals, Trumpets, Vials: Book of Revelation Scripture Summary ... 225

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF SPIRITUAL POWERS: ANGELS, TRANSLATION, VEIL, TELEPORTATION 227

President Nelson: Expect the Greatest Miracles Before the Lord's Return..... 227

Earth is Alive: Scriptures 228

Earth is Alive: Quotes..... 230

Elements have Intelligence: Scriptures..... 234

Element Has Intelligence: Quotes..... 236

God Can Speak to Many People at the Same Time: Scriptures 237

The Nature of Evil Spirits: Scriptures..... 238

Visible & Invisible Angels to Help: Scriptures 240

Speaking Different Languages & Avoiding Enemies by the Spirit: Scriptures 244

Instantaneous / 'Portal' Travel: Scriptures 248

The Veil (Between Realms): Scriptures 255

Translation (Change to a Higher State) & Translated Beings: Scriptures 256

Apocryphal And Early Christian Texts on Instantaneous Travel, Translation, & The Veil 262

Higher Blessings to Come: Scriptures 264

Jesus the Second Comforter: Scriptures & Quotes 267

Seek the Mysteries: Scriptures 270

Seek the Mysteries: Joseph Smith 273

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE FINAL STAGES: LOST TRIBES, 144,000, NEW JERUSALEM, SECOND COMING .. 275

Many Faithful Remain in the West 275

The Prophesied Return to Missouri 276

The Era of Christ in Zion, An Appearance Unknown to the World before the Coming in Glory to All – Quotes from Joseph & Brigham 277

The 10 Tribes Come to Zion: Quotes from Pratt & Woodruff 279

Earthquake Prepares Way for 10 Tribes to Return from North: Quotes from Joseph Smith, Orson Pratt & Scriptures 280

Some of the Lost 10 Tribes Still Together in the North – Quotes ... 281

Possibility of a Portion of Ten Tribes Not on This World: Joseph Smith, Brigham Young & Others Quoted 284

Possibility of a Portion of Lost Tribes in Hollow Caverns: Scriptures, Prophet Quotations & Apocrypha 288

Zion & City of Enoch to Unite: Moses & John Taylor 292

Missionaries to Gather Israel to the New Jerusalem: Orson Pratt ... 293

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 1: A Remnant of Jacob: Scriptures 294

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 2: Scattered Israel from All the Americas: Scriptures 295

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 3: The Lost Ten Tribes: Scriptures 297

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 4: All Nations Gathered: Scriptures 298

The 144,000: Quotes 300

Joseph Smith to Return: Quotes 303

Four Groups Who Gather to the New Jerusalem 306

Gathering: 1. Spiritual 2. Physical 3. Millennial 307

Overview of Eras & Major Events 307

End Time Symbols & Meanings 309

End Time Event Flow Summary 310

Joseph Smith: Sign of the Coming of the Son of Man will Appear to be Comet 310

7 Prophesied Appearances of the Savior – Old Testament Gospel Doctrine Manual 311

McConkie on Pole's Returning to Straight & Year-Round Harvest In Millennium 312

1000 Years of Peace: Quotes from Joseph Fielding Smith 313

Nephi's Last Days Prophecies – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary 314

Nephi & John's Revelations of the Last Days – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary 323

TOPIC: TOPICAL SUMMARIES OF PROPHET QUOTES ON THE FUTURE FROM CROWTHER'S PROPHECY BOOK . 331

Analysis of Crowther's Diagram Charting the End Times 333
Analysis of Duane Crowther's Prophetic Chronology of Future Events 335
War Will Come Abundantly to All Nations 358
Missionary Work Among the Gentiles 359
God Will Pour Out Judgments 362
Internal Wars Leading to the Collapse of the US Government 363
The Political Kingdom of God Will Be Established 368
Establishment of the New Jerusalem 371
Series of Events: Lamanite Conversion, Zion Redeemed & Built, Missionaries Bring People to Zion, God is in Zion, 10 Tribes, 144,000 377
House of Israel Gathers to Palestine 381
Book of Revelation's Plagues 383
Universal Conflict and the Fall of Christian Nations 384
Christ's appearance at Adam-ondi-Ahman 385
Zion and Palestine Grow after the Season of Universal Conflict 388
The Battle of Armageddon and Christ's Coming to the Mount of Olives 392
Christ's Glorious Coming, The Great & Dreadful Day 393
The Millennium 397
Before the End of the Earth 401
Earth's Final Condition 404
Analysis of A Chronology of 50 Last Days Events from "Understanding the Book of Daniel" by Duane S. Crowther 406
Bonus: Timeline by Hugh Nibley 408
APPENDIX 1: COLLECTION OF CLASSICAL LATTER-DAY PROPHET VISIONS OF THE FUTURE 411

Summary of Patriarch Charles Evans 411

Summary of President John Taylor 411

Summary of Heber C. Kimball..... 412

Summary of President George Albert Smith..... 412

Heber C Kimball Sees Deception, Persecution, Elders Called Home, Return of Joseph Smith, Gathering to Missouri – Printed In Deseret News..... 413

Joseph Smith's White Horse Prophecy..... 415

Charles D Evans, Patriarch, Dream of Last Days, Published in The Contributor 419

John Taylor's Last Days Vision #1: Plague Across US..... 425

John Taylor's Last Days Vision #2: Records Out of Salt Lake, Many Leave the Church (The "Horseshoe" Shaped Travel Path Vision).. 429

Vision by President George Albert Smith..... 432

George Albert Smith: California Temple to be Desecrated, Many Will Flee to Utah 440

APPENDIX 2: PROPOSED SEQUENCES & TOPICAL OVERVIEWS OF PROPHETIC TEACHINGS 442

Phase 1: Cleansing of America 442

3 Sequence Pillars from Joseph Smith..... 442

Already Complete: Jews Return to Jerusalem..... 442

The Missionaries are Called Home as things get bad:..... 443

Economic Collapse: 444

Famine:..... 444

Civil War erupts in America Again:..... 446

Refuge in the Rocky Mountain Corridor 447

The New World Order: Persecution, Apostacy, & Saints Driven into the Wilderness 448

The Saints are Called to Places of Refuge 449

Major Destruction in America 451
Plague 451
Invasion of America by Foreign Powers 452
Saints Must be Tried Before Zion Cleansed & Redeemed 452
Phase 2: Redemption of America 456
The Redemption of America: Adam-ondi-Ahman, New Jerusalem, & A New Holy Government 456
Adam-ondi-Ahman 456
New Jerusalem 458
A New Holy Government 464
Judgement Around the World: Vials, Trumpets, Armageddon, & The Second Coming 466
The Second Coming 470

Introductory Quotations on the Nature of Prophecy

The Bible teaches, “17 And it shall come to pass **in the last days**, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall **prophesy**, and your young men shall see **visions**, and your old men shall dream **dreams**. 18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens **I will pour out in those days of my Spirit;** and **they shall prophesy**:” (Acts 2:17-18, referring to Joel 2:28-29, that’s two witnesses.)

Joseph Smith said, "We believe that **we have a right to revelations, visions, and dreams from God**, our Heavenly Father; and light and intelligence, through the gift of the Holy Ghost, in the name of Jesus Christ, on all subjects pertaining to our spiritual welfare, if it so be that we keep his commandments, so as to render ourselves worthy in his sight. (The Prophet Joseph Smith, Times and Seasons, Feb. 1840, p.54)

Joseph Smith said, “When men open their lips against [the truth] they do not injure me, but injure themselves. … When **things** that are **of the greatest importance are passed over by weak-minded men without even a thought**, **I want to see truth in all** its bearings and hug it to my bosom. I believe all that God ever revealed, and **I never hear of a man being damned for believing too much; but they are damned for unbelief**.” (Joseph Smith, cited in Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith Ch. 22, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-22?lang=eng)

Brigham Young said, “We are in pursuit of knowledge; and when you meet together, if you have a word of prophecy, a dream, a vision, or a word of wisdom, impart the same to the people.” (Brigham Young, ***JD*** 15:35)

Joseph Smith said, “When men open their lips against [the truth] they do not injure me, but injure themselves. … When **things that are of the greatest importance are passed over by weak-minded men** without even a thought, **I want to see truth in all its bearings** and hug it to my bosom. I believe all that God ever revealed, and **I never hear of a man being damned for believing too much**; but they are damned for unbelief.” (Joseph Smith, cited in Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith Ch. 22, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-22?lang=eng)

Elder George A. Smith said, "**all the prophecies** have aimed at the **gathering** of the people, and **saving them in the last days**." (History of the Church, 6:18)

D&C 93:24: **24 "**And truth is knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and **as they are to come;"**

D&C 45:37-39: "**37** Ye look and behold the fig trees, and ye see them with your eyes, and ye say when they begin to shoot forth, and their leaves are yet tender, that summer is now nigh at hand; **38** Even so it shall be in that day when they shall see all these things, then shall they know that the hour is nigh. **39** And it shall come to pass that **he that feareth me shall be looking forth for the great day of the Lord to come, even for the signs of the coming** of the Son of Man."

Orson Pratt taught that those with the spirit of prophecy can put together a sequence of events. He said, "But the Latter-day Saints are not in darkness; they are the children of light, although many of us will actually be asleep. We shall have to wake up and trim up our lamps, or we shall not be prepared to enter in; for we shall all slumber and sleep in that day, and **some will have gone to sleep** from which they will not awake until they awake up in darkness without any oil in their lamps. But, as a general thing, the **Saints will understand the signs of the times, if they do lie down and get to sleep**. Others have their eyes closed upon the prophecies of the ancient Prophets; and not only that, but they are void of the spirit of prophecy themselves. When a man has this, though he may appeal to ancient Prophets to get understanding on some subjects he does not clearly understand, yet, as he has the spirit of prophecy in himself, **he will not be in darkness; he will have a knowledge of the signs of the times**; he will have a knowledge of the house of Israel, and of Zion, of the ten tribes, and of many things and purposes and events that are to take place on the earth; and **he will see coming events, and can say such an event will take place, and after that another, and then another**; and after that the trumpet shall sound, and **after that certain things will take place**, and then another trump shall sound, &c., &c.; and **he will have his eye fixed on the signs** of the times, and **that day will not overtake him unawares;**" (Journal of Discourses 7:189) (online at journalofdiscourses.com/7/29)



The Book of Revelation: A Short Chronology of Events

The following is based on a simple reading of the text in the order it's presented.

General layout of the Book of Revelation by Chapter:

1-3 Letters to the 7 churches.
4-6 Sees a book with 7 seals; 7 periods on the earth, describes first 5 periods.
7 The Restoration of the Gospel, the sealing of the 144k are in the 6th seal.
8 Half hour of silence in heaven, then 7 trumpets are in the 7th seal
9 Three Woes (plagues and wars) that will lead to the Second Coming.
10 John's mission (Restoration of the 10 Tribes)
11 Two prophets sent to Jerusalem to hold off the world's army. Armageddon.
12 Woman and Stars sign in heaven. Satan is after the woman (woman is restored church).
13 A Beastly System is formed on the earth. The Mark of the Beast is implemented.
14 Christ with 144k on Mt. Zion (Church of Firstborn is established.)
15 Saints overcome the beast and false prophet; angels prepare to pour out the vials of plagues.
16 Angels start vials, Armageddon commences.
17 The wickedness of Babylon. Followers will war among themselves.

18 Saints called out of Babylon, God decrees Babylon to fall.
19 Marriage Supper (AOA) Beast and false prophet thrown in lake of fire.
20 Satan is bound. Resurrection. The Millennium opens.
21 Christ will dwell in New Jerusalem. Tree of Life is there.
22 The angels confirm what John testified of.

Detailed Major Events by Verse:

- Christian martyrs (Rev. 6:11)
- 6th seal opens (Rev. 6:12)
- Great earthquake (Rev. 6:12)
- Stars (appear to) fall like fruits from a tree in great wind (Rev. 6:12)
- Moon appears as blood (Rev. 6:12)
- Sun blackened (Rev. 6:12)
- Islands and mountains flee (Rev. 6:14)
- No hurt to the earth until high priests144,000 sealed to God (Rev. 7:3)
- 24 Elders worship God in white robes (Rev. 7:11)
- The righteous serve God in his temple day and night (Rev. 7:15)
- 7th seal opens (Rev. 8:1)
- 1/2 hour of silence (Rev. 8: 1)
- 7 trumpets given to 7 angels begin (Rev. 8:6-7)
- Trumpet one is hail with fire and blood. 1/3 of trees destroyed (Rev. 8:7)
- Trumpet 2 is fiery mountain into sea. 1/3 of water made bad, 1/3 of sea life dies, 1/3 of ships destroyed (Rev. 8:8)
- Trumpet 3 is a star called wormwood (means a bitter herb) falls to the rivers making the sources of water bitter. 1/3 of remaining water becomes bitter. (Rev. 8:10-11)
- Trumpet 4 is the sun moon and stars are darkened so there is 1/3 less light or 1/3 shorter days (Rev. 8:12)
- Trumpet 5 is locusts tormenting men for 5 months. They are described as human warriors. Perhaps warfare so thick it's like locusts. Reminiscent of Moses plagues. They only hurt men who don't have the seal of God in their foreheads. (Rev. 9:1-10)
- The locusts' king is Apollyon (Greek for the Destroyer). (Rev. 9:11)
- One woe is past 2 more to come (Rev. 9:12)
- Trumpet 6 is an army of 200 million kills 1/3 of all humans on earth with fire war machines (Rev. 9:14-19)
- The people still won't repent (Rev. 9:20-21)
- The temple at Jerusalem is trodden under feet for 3.5 years (Rev. 11:2)

- 2 prophets testify in the streets of Jerusalem for 3.5 years (Rev. 11:3) burning whoever oppose them (Rev. 11:5). They can turn water to blood and cause many plagues (Rev. 11:6). After finishing their testimony, they are killed by the beast (Rev. 11:7) at Jerusalem (Rev. 11:8) but 3.5 days later are resurrected and ascend up to heaven. (Rev. 11:11-12)
- The same hour the prophets ascend to heaven, a large earthquake causes 1/10 of "the city" (Jerusalem) to fall, and kills 7,000 people. Survivors feared God and gave him glory (Rev. 11:13)
- The 2nd woe is now accomplished and the 3rd woe is soon to come (Rev. 11:14)
- Trumpet 7 by the 7th angel announces that the kingdoms of the world now belong to Christ (Rev. 11:15)
- 24 Elders worship God (Rev. 11:16) (*compare with LDS prophets' visions of these 24 dedicating Missouri for the New Jerusalem temple after Missouri is laid desolate)
- God's wrath has come (Rev. 11:18)
- Lightnings seen, thunder and voices heard, earthquake, great hale (Rev. 11:19)
- Kingdom of God is born (Rev. 12:2).
- 10 horned 7 crowned dragon appears. (Rev. 12:3)
- Before the woman gave birth, the dragon cast 1/3 of heaven to earth and was waiting to devour the child (Rev. 12:4)
- The child is to rule all nations (Rev. 12:5)
- The child (the kingdom of God) hides in the wilderness for 3.5 years (Rev. 12:6)
- Kingdom of God as with eagles wings flees to the wilderness for 3.5 years to hide where the child is nourished (Rev. 12:14) (*could be referring to what happened in verse 6)
- Satan sends a flood to stop the Kingdom of God but the earth helps the Kingdom of God and swallows it. (Rev. 12:15-16)
- The dragon wages war on the Church (Rev. 12:17)
- Beast with 7 crowned heads and 10 horns rises from the sea (Rev. 13:1)
- This beast has power and great authority which the dragon has given it (Rev. 13:2)
- Deadly wound of the beast is healed and all the world marvels at it (Rev. 13:3)
- People fear the beast and consider him the most powerful on earth. The worship the dragon and the beast. (Rev. 13:4)
- The beast speaks blasphemies for 3.5 years (Rev. 13:5)

- The beast overcomes the saints (*could be referring to God's ancient people the Jews, or the LDS, or other Christians) (Rev. 13:7)
- All but they who are written in the lambs book of life worship the beast (Rev. 13:8)
- Those who use the sword are killed by the sword. Saints are to be patient and faithful (Rev. 13:10).
- The 2nd beast enlivens the 1st beast (whom was wounded by sword) and does miracles. 2nd beast tells the people to make an image to the 1st beast. Life is given to the image of the beast. (Rev. 13:11-12)
- The beast does miracles to deceive like bringing fire down from heaven (Rev. 13:13-14)
- The image of the beast causes those who won't worship it to be killed (Rev. 13:15)
- The mark of the beast is imposed upon people to transact in the economy (Rev. 13:16-17). Mark is 666 (Rev. 13:18).
- The Lamb with 144,000 stand upon the mount (of Zion the New Jerusalem) with the mark of God on their foreheads (Rev. 14:1)
- The 144,000 sing a new song (Rev. 14:3) (D&C 84:96-102 is the new song. It's sang after plagues.)
- The 144,000 are those undefiled (*The Lord often speaks of his covenant people as being virgins, in that they don't go whoring after false doctrines and false gods and false religions) (Rev. 14:4)
- Angel with loud voice preaches (*missionaries have a new type of mission: preaching with loud voice in public places) (Rev. 14:6-7)
- Another angel says Babylon is fallen (Rev. 14:8)
- A 3rd angel warns against those who have the mark of the beast they they'll receive eternal plague (Rev. 14:9-11)
- The Saints patiently keep God's commandments. That is how you know they have faith. (Rev. 14:12)
- People are judged by their works after they die (Rev. 14:13)
- Earth is reaped and many are trodden (Rev. 14:14-20)
- The winepress of God's wrath is filled with 1600 furlongs of blood (Rev. 14:20)
- 7 angels with 7 last plagues (Rev. 15:1)
- Those who overcome the beast and his image have the harps of God (Rev. 15:2). They are astounded at what God has done (Rev. 15:3)
- God's judgements are made manifest (Rev. 15:4)
- The angels who pour out the wrath of God are holy people (*This goes along with the Jewish lore that the archangels who preside over each other 7 dispensations are the ones who pour out the plagues upon the land in the last days!) (Rev. 15:6).

- The vials/plagues to come are God's wrath (*not just natural disasters!) (Rev. 15:7)
- No one is able to enter the temple until the plagues are poured out in full (*perhaps this is why we should not procrastinate doing our temple work, temple marriages, and work for our dead in the temples) (Rev. 15:8)
- Wrath of God plague vial 1 is beast mark people get sores (Rev. 16:2)
- Wrath of God plague vial 2 is sea turned to blood all life in it dies (Rev. 16:3)
- Wrath of God plague vial 3 is rivers and fountains of waters turn to blood (Rev. 16:4)
- Don't make the mistake of thinking that God is evil because of this wrath. He is righteous. He has judged us (Rev. 16:5). People deserve these plagues because they have slain the prophets and saints of God (Rev. 16:6).
- Wrath of God plague 4 is upon the sun which scorches with fire (Rev. 16:8). This causes people to curse God, but still not repent (Rev. 16:9).
- Wrath of God plague 5 is extreme pain to those at the seat of the beast. This also causes them to blaspheme God. They still don't repent (Rev. 16:10-11).
- Wrath of God plague 6 is the river Euphrates dried. This also serves to "prepare the way of the kings of the east" (Rev. 16:12). (*perhaps for the Chinese to come participate in Armageddon).
- 3 spirits as frogs from the beast the false prophet and the dragon proceed and gather people together by false miracles to the battle or Armageddon (Rev. 16:13-14)
- Christ's coming will surprise people like a thief (Rev. 16:15)
- People gather at Armageddon (*a place in the east by Jerusalem) (Rev. 16:16).
- Wrath of God plague 7 poured out into the air and then voices, thunders, lightnings, and a great earthquake are heard and felt. (Rev. 16:17-18)
- Wrath on Babylon (Rev. 16:19)
- Islands and mountains cease (Rev. 16:20)
- Hale comes the weight of a talent (*1 talent ~ 70 pounds). This makes people blaspheme God, it's effect being so large (Rev. 16:21).
- Kings of the earth have committed fornication with Babylon (Rev. 17:2)

- Babylon is depicted as having 7 heads and ten horns (*chapter summary in LDS scriptures seems to refer to this as showing that Babylon is established all over the earth) (Rev. 17:3)
- Babylon is drunken with the blood of the saints to an astonishing degree (Rev. 17:6).
- The beast "carrying" Babylon "was and is not and yet is" goes to perdition (Rev. 17:8) This is the 8th king (Rev. 17:11).
- The 7 heads of the beast are 7 mountains it's over (*shows it's established through the earth) (Rev. 17:9)
- The ten horns are kings. They have 1 hour of power with the beast (Rev. 17:12) to unitedly battle the Lamb's people (Rev. 17:13-14).
- Babylon has large coverage in many nations, hence the meaning of the water the whore sits upon (Rev. 17:15).
- The horns on the beast turn against the whore and burn her (Rev. 17:16)
- Babylon is fallen (Rev. 18:2)
- Merchants were rich because of Babylon. Kings of the earth committed fornication with her. Every nation was involved with Babylon (Rev. 18:3).
- Saints called out of Babylon lest they partake of her plagues (Rev. 18: 4)
- God has remembered the iniquities of Babylon (Rev. 18: 5)
- Babylon is punished 2 fold for all it's evil. Inasmuch as she was happy living "deliciously", she'll now be sad (*for all the taking advantage of people etc.) (Rev. 18:6)
- Death famine mourning and burning came to Babylon in 1 hour whilst she boasts of being undefeatable (Rev. 18:8)
- Merchants weep as Babylon falls (Rev. 18: 9-19)
- Heaven and holy people rejoice as Babylon falls (Rev. 18:20)
- Babylon businesses are no more (Rev. 18:22)
- ALL nations were deceived by sorceries of Babylon (Rev. 18:23)
- Babylon is responsible for all the blood spilt on earth (Rev. 18: 24)
- God has avenged the blood of his saints upon Babylon (Rev. 19:2)
- 24 elders worship God (Rev. 19:4)
- The Lord God omnipotent reigneth (Rev. 19:6)
- The marriage supper of the Lamb occurs, only the righteous may attend. The white robe is "the righteousness of the saints" and who is found not dressed in the wedding garment is "cast into outer darkness" (Matt. 22:10-14). The wife has made herself ready. (Rev. 19:7-8)
- Jesus Christ comes on a white horse dressed in red and eyes as flames of fire (Rev. 19:11-13). Armies follow him (Rev. 19:14).

- Jesus Christ proceeds to unleash the fierce wrath of the Almighty God. He is in charge (Rev. 19: 15-16).
- The animals eat the slain people. This is called "the supper of the great God" (Rev. 19:17-18, 21)
- All beast people try to fight against the horseman Jesus Christ, but are slain by fire from Jesus Christ, or a sword proceeding from the mouth of Jesus Christ (Rev. 19: 19-21)
- Satan is bound in the pit by the angel who has the keys to such (Jesus Christ) for a Millennium (1000 years) so he can't tempt people. At the end of the thousand years he will come out and tempt people for a while (Rev. 20: 1-3, 7).
- The righteous reign with Christ on thrones during the Millennium (Rev. 20:4)
- The wicked are not resurrected until after the Millennium (they suffer for their sins 1000 years in hell then rise to a lesser glory than they who were righteous) (Rev. 20:5) (For more information on resurrections and assignments to kingdoms of glory after this life, read Doctrine and Covenants 76)
- After the Millennium Satan is loosed for a little season and gathers an army innumerable as the sands of the sea (Rev. 20: 8)
- Satan's followers are consumed with fire (Rev. 20:9)
- The Devil goes to fire forever and ever (Rev. 20:10)
- Everyone gets judged according to what they did in life (Rev. 20:12)
- People rise from the dead to go to judgement (Rev. 20:13).
- There is a new heaven and a new earth (Rev. 21:1)
- The holy city comes down from the sky to earth (Rev. 21:2)
- God himself rules on earth among men (Rev. 21:3)
- There will be no more death or sorrow. God wipes the tears from our eyes (Rev. 21:4)
- God gives all those who thirst to drink of the waters of life freely (Rev. 21: 6)
- Who overcomes all things becomes a son of God (*and hence will inherit all he has (D&C 84:38)) (Rev. 21:7)
- The holy city has no need of the sun because Jesus Christ is the light there (Rev. 21:23). There will be no night there (Rev. 21:25).
- There are none neither can there be any wicked people in the holy city (Rev. 21:27).
- A pure river flows from under the throne of God (Rev. 22:1).
- The tree of life is here. It's leaves heal the nations. It bears fruit year-round (Rev. 22:2).
- The earth is no longer cursed (Rev. 22:3)

- They shall see the face of Jesus Christ. His name shall be in their foreheads (Rev. 22:4)
- The servants of Christ reign forever and ever (Rev. 22:5)
- Those who lived lives of filth are still filthy in the next life. Those who lived wholesome lives in the next life, are still wholesome (Rev. 22:11)
- Christ is coming quickly (Rev. 22:12)
- Those who do the commandments of Christ have access to the gate of this holy city and the tree of life there (Rev. 22: 14)
- Specific groups of people banned from the holy city are those who lie to their spouse, who use magic, who are idol, who kill, and those who participate in whoredom. (Rev. 22:15)
- Whoever wants to come participate in the goodness of Christ, come. It is free (Rev. 22:17).
- The grace of Christ is with those who believe in him (Rev. 22:21).

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE GIFT OF PROPHECY & VISIONS

Scriptures on The Gift of Prophecy: Definition, Examples, For All Faithful, Testimony is Prophecy

Definition And Promise of The Gift of Prophecy:

D&C 93:24: **24 "**And truth is knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and **as they are to come;"**

D&C 45:37-39: "**37** Ye look and behold the fig trees, and ye see them with your eyes, and ye say when they begin to shoot forth, and their leaves are yet tender, that summer is now nigh at hand; **38** Even so it shall be in that day when they shall see all these things, then shall they know that the hour

is nigh. **39** And it shall come to pass that **he that feareth me shall be looking forth for the great day of the Lord to come, even for the signs of the coming** of the Son of Man."

Numbers 11:29: 29 And Moses said unto him, Enviest thou for my sake? would God that all the Lord's people were prophets, and that the Lord would put his spirit upon them!

Revelation 19:10: **10** And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See *thou do it* not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

1 Corinthians 12:10: **10** To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:

D&C 46:22–26: **22** And to others it is given to prophesy;
23 And to others the discerning of spirits.
24 And again, it is given to some to speak with tongues;
25 And to another is given the interpretation of tongues.
26 And all these gifts come from God, for the benefit of the children of God.

Examples of Prophecy in Scripture:

Amos 3:7: **7** Surely the Lord GOD will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets.

Acts 11:28: **28** And there stood up one of them named Agabus, and signified by the Spirit that there should be great dearth throughout all the world: which came to pass in the days of Claudius Cæsar.

1 Nephi 1:8, 19: **8** And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.
19 And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and

also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

Mosiah 8:16–17: **16** And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.
17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

D&C 21:4–5: **4** Wherefore, meaning the church, thou shalt give heed unto all his words and commandments which he shall give unto you as he receiveth them, walking in all holiness before me;
5 For his word ye shall receive, as if from mine own mouth, in all patience and faith.

Revelation To All the Faithful:

James 1:5-6: **5** If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.
6 But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed.

D&C 8:2–3: 2 Yea, behold, I will tell you in your mind and in your heart, by the Holy Ghost, which shall come upon you and which shall dwell in your heart.
3 Now, behold, this is the spirit of revelation; behold, this is the spirit by which brought the children of Israel through the Red Sea on dry ground.

D&C 28:2–6: **2** But, behold, verily, verily, I say unto thee, no one shall be appointed to receive commandments and revelations in this church excepting my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., for he receiveth them even as Moses.
3 And thou shalt be obedient unto the things which I shall give unto him,

even as Aaron, to declare faithfully the commandments and the revelations, with power and authority unto the church.
4 And if thou art led at any time by the Comforter to speak or teach, or at all times by the way of commandment unto the church, thou mayest do it.
5 But thou shalt not write by way of commandment, but by wisdom;
6 And thou shalt not command him who is at thy head, and at the head of the church;

D&C 1:19-24: **19** The weak things of the world shall come forth and break down the mighty and strong ones, that man should not counsel his fellow man, neither trust in the arm of flesh—
20 But that every man might speak in the name of God the Lord, even the Savior of the world;
21 That faith also might increase in the earth;
22 That mine everlasting covenant might be established;
23 That the fulness of my gospel might be proclaimed by the weak and the simple unto the ends of the world, and before kings and rulers.
24 Behold, I am God and have spoken it; these commandments are of me, and were given unto my servants in their weakness, after the manner of their language, that they might come to understanding.

D&C 42:61: **61** If thou shalt ask, thou shalt receive revelation upon revelation, knowledge upon knowledge, that thou mayest know the mysteries and peaceable things—that which bringeth joy, that which bringeth life eternal.

D&C 121:26: **26** God shall give unto you knowledge by his Holy Spirit, yea, by the unspeakable gift of the Holy Ghost, **that has not been revealed since the world was until now;**

Prophecy And the Testimony of Jesus:

Revelation 19:10: **10** And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See *thou do it* not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

Moroni 10:13: **13** And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

Alma 5:45–46: **45** And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?
46 Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

2 Nephi 32:3: **3** Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Encouraged to Share Spiritual Experiences: Scriptures

D&C 62:3: **3** Nevertheless, ye are blessed, for the testimony which ye have borne is recorded in heaven for the angels to look upon; and they rejoice over you, and your sins are forgiven you.

D&C 88:76-82: **76** Also, I give unto you a commandment that ye shall continue in prayer and fasting from this time forth.
77 And I give unto you a commandment that you shall teach one another the doctrine of the kingdom.
78 Teach ye diligently and my grace shall attend you, that you may be instructed more perfectly in theory, in principle, in doctrine, in the law of the gospel, in all things that pertain unto the kingdom of God, that are expedient for you to understand;
79 Of things both in heaven and in the earth, and under the earth; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the

perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms—
80 That ye may be prepared in all things when I shall send you again to magnify the calling whereunto I have called you, and the mission with which I have commissioned you.
81 Behold, I sent you out to testify and warn the people, and it becometh every man who hath been warned to warn his neighbor.
82 Therefore, they are left without excuse, and their sins are upon their own heads.

3 Nephi 18:24: **24** Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

Acts 22:6–8, 10, 15: **6** And it came to pass, that, as I made my journey, and was come nigh unto Damascus about noon, suddenly there shone from heaven a great light round about me.
7 And I fell unto the ground, and heard a voice saying unto me, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me?
8 And I answered, Who art thou, Lord? And he said unto me, I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom thou persecutest.
10 And I said, What shall I do, Lord? And the Lord said unto me, Arise, and go into Damascus; and there it shall be told thee of all things which are appointed for thee to do.
15 For thou shalt be his witness unto all men of what thou hast seen and heard.

Note: Naturally some things are too sacred to share, particularly openly. We must use discretion and prayer to determine what would and wouldn't be appropriate to share. I think generally speaking these days we are too private about our religious experiences, but we must be prudent. Prior to teaching the endowment, Joseph Smith warned the Saints:
"Let us be faithful and silent, brethren, and if God gives you a manifestation, keep it to yourselves." (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith, edited by Joseph Fielding Smith (Salt Lake City, UT: Deseret Book, 1938), 91.) Of this remark, Elder Dallin H. Oaks wrote: "By and large, Latter-day Saints observe this direction. They do not speak publicly of their

most sacred experiences. They seldom mention miracles in bearing their testimonies, and they rarely preach from the pulpit about signs that the gospel is true. They usually affirm their testimony of the truthfulness of the restored gospel by asserting the conclusion, not by giving details on how it was obtained." (Dallin H. Oaks, The Lord's Way (Salt Lake City, UT: Deseret Book Co., 1991, 96) Joseph cautioned, "The reason we do not have the secrets of the Lord revealed unto us, is because we do not keep them, but reveal them; we do not keep our own secrets, but reveal our difficulties to the world, even to our enemies, then how would we keep the secrets of the Lord? I can keep a secret till doomsday." (TPJS, p. 195.) Brigham Young once lamented that if he had sinned, it was in that he revealed too much to the saints. Surely we must be on our guard to be bold, yet not overbearing. Signs do follow faith, but we must follow the guidance of God as to what can and should be said in which settings.

God Will Give Us Visions: Scriptures

Joel 2:28-29: **28** And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:
29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.

Joel's prophecy is repeated in **Acts 2:16-18**, and made more specific as a reference to the last days: **16** But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass **in the last days**, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:

Numbers 12:6: 6 And he said, Hear now my words: If there be a prophet among you, *I* the LORD will make myself known unto him in a vision, *and* will speak unto him in a dream.

Daniel 7:1–2: **1** In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, *and* told the sum of the matters.
2 Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea.

Revelation 1:1: **1** The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him, to shew unto his servants things which must shortly come to pass; and he sent and signified *it* by his angel unto his servant John:

Ezekiel 1:1: 1 Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year, in the fourth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month, as I *was* among the captives by the river of Chebar, *that* the heavens were opened, and I saw visions of God.

D&C 76:5–6: **5** And thus, if ye are faithful ye shall be laden with many sheaves, and crowned with honor, and glory, and immortality, and eternal life.
6 Therefore, verily I say unto my servant William E. McLellin, I revoke the commission which I gave unto him to go unto the eastern countries;

D&C 110:1–4: **1** The veil was taken from our minds, and the eyes of our understanding were opened.
2 We saw the Lord standing upon the breastwork of the pulpit, before us; and under his feet was a paved work of pure gold, in color like amber.
3 His eyes were as a flame of fire; the hair of his head was white like the pure snow; his countenance shone above the brightness of the sun; and his voice was as the sound of the rushing of great waters, even the voice of Jehovah, saying:
4 I am the first and the last; I am he who liveth, I am he who was slain; I am your advocate with the Father.

D&C 137:1–5, 7: **1** The heavens were opened upon us, and I beheld the celestial kingdom of God, and the glory thereof, whether in the body or out I cannot tell.
2 I saw the transcendent beauty of the gate through which the heirs of that kingdom will enter, which was like unto circling flames of fire;

3 Also the blazing throne of God, whereon was seated the Father and the Son.
4 I saw the beautiful streets of that kingdom, which had the appearance of being paved with gold.
5 I saw Father Adam and Abraham; and my father and my mother; my brother Alvin, that has long since slept;
7 Thus came the voice of the Lord unto me, saying:...

Dreams, Visions, Prophecy & Revelation: Quotes

Joseph Smith said, "We believe that we have a **right to revelations, visions, and dreams from God**, our Heavenly Father; and light and intelligence, through the gift of the Holy Ghost, in the name of Jesus Christ, on all subjects pertaining to our spiritual welfare, if it so be that we keep his commandments, so as to render ourselves worthy in his sight. (The Prophet Joseph Smith, Times and Seasons, Feb. 1840, p.54)

Brigham Young said, "We are in pursuit of knowledge; and when you meet together, if you have a word of prophecy, **a dream, a vision, or a word of wisdom, impart the same to the people**." (Brigham Young, ***JD*** 15:35)

President Hinckley said, "The era in which we live is the fulness of times spoken of in the scriptures, when God has brought together all of the elements of previous dispensations. From the day that He and His Beloved Son manifested themselves to the boy Joseph, there has been a tremendous cascade of enlightenment poured out upon the world. The hearts of men have turned to their fathers in fulfillment of the words of Malachi. The vision of Joel has been fulfilled wherein he declared: "And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: "And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit." (Joel 2:28—32)." (Oct. 2001 General Conference.)

Elder Oaks said, "Visions do happen. Voices are heard from beyond the veil. I know this. But these experiences are exceptional… Most of the revelation that comes to leaders and members of the Church comes by the

still, small voice or by a feeling rather than by a vision or a voice that speaks specific words we can hear." (Elder Dallin H. Oaks, Ensign, Mar. 1997, p.14.)

President Harold B. Lee, Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Harold B. Lee, (2000), 48–58**:** "Now there's one more way by which revelations may come, and that is by dreams. Oh, I'm not going to tell you that every dream you have is a direct revelation from the Lord. … But I fear that in this age of sophistication there are those of us who are prone to rule out all dreams as of no purpose, and of no moment. And yet all through the scriptures there were recorded incidents where the Lord, by dreams, has directed His people."

Joseph Smith, The Prophet Joseph Smith, Times and Seasons, Feb 1840, p. 54: We believe that we have a right to revelations, visions, and dreams from God, our heavenly Father; and light and intelligence, through the gift of the Holy Ghost, in the name of Jesus Christ, on all subjects pertaining to our spiritual welfare; if it so be that we keep his commandments, so as to render ourselves worthy in his sight.

Orson Pratt taught that those with the spirit of prophecy can put together a sequence of events. He said, "But the Latter-day Saints are not in darkness; they are the children of light, although many of us will actually be asleep. We shall have to wake up and trim up our lamps, or we shall not be prepared to enter in; for we shall all slumber and sleep in that day, and **some will have gone to sleep** from which they will not awake until they awake up in darkness without any oil in their lamps. But, as a general thing, the **Saints will understand the signs of the times, if they do lie down and get to sleep**. Others have their eyes closed upon the prophecies of the ancient Prophets; and not only that, but they are void of the spirit of prophecy themselves. When a man has this, though he may appeal to ancient Prophets to get understanding on some subjects he does not clearly understand, yet, as he has the spirit of prophecy in himself, **he will not be in darkness; he will have a knowledge of the signs of the times**; he will have a knowledge of the house of Israel, and of Zion, of the ten tribes, and of many things and purposes and events that are to take place on the earth; and **he will see coming events, and can say such an event will take place, and after that another, and then another**; and after that the trumpet shall sound, and **after that certain things will take place**, and then another trump shall sound, &c., &c.; and **he will have his eye fixed on the signs** of the times, and **that day will not overtake him unawares;**" (Journal of Discourses 7:189) (online at journalofdiscourses.com/7/29)

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE TIME BEING NEAR & NEEDED PREPARATION

Book of Mormon as Parallel Timeline to Modern History of God's people

(From "Divinely Sanctioned Governments" by the Joseph Smith Foundation)



1 Prophets persecuted: akin to the reformation.
2 Lehites to America: akin to Gentiles to America.
3 Mosiah's law is akin to the US Constitution of the US.
4 They found the Jaredite record, which is akin to Joseph Smith finding the Nephite record.
5 Then Alma restoring the church is a parallel on a Book of Mormon timeline to Joseph Smith restoring the church.
6 Abinadi's martyrdom is akin to Joseph Smith's martyrdom.
7 Anti-Christ's deceive Nephites: akin to Anti-Christ deceive Saints.
8 Missionaries to the Lamanites and Nephites: akin to missionaries to the world.
9 Wicked leaders conspire: akin to communism and socialism.
10 Title of Liberty: akin to Constitution.
11 Astonishing church growth: akin to worldwide church growth.
12 Nephites degenerate: akin to moderns reject founding moorings.
13 Lamanite religious freedom: akin to walls come down.
14 Combinations infiltrate Nephites: akin to complicity in America.
15 Signs warn Nephites: akin to signs warn moderns.

16 More wicked destroyed: akin to earth cleansed.
17 Christ visits Nephites: akin to Second Coming.
18 Period of peace: akin to the Millennium.
19 Nephites openly rebel: akin to Satan loosed after the Millennium.
20 Mormon leads final battle: akin to Michael leads final battle.

Joseph Smith Clarifies, Prophets WILL Know The Time

Of the Savior's words that no man knows the day or the hour of the coming of the Son of Man (see Matt. 24:36), the Prophet asked:

"Did Christ speak this as a general principle throughout all generations? Oh, no, He spoke in the present tense. No man that was then living upon the footstool of God knew the day or the hour. **But He did not say that there was no man throughout all generations that should not know the day or the hour**. No, for this would be in flat contradiction with other scripture. For the prophet says that God will do nothing but what He will reveal unto His servants the prophets (see Amos 3:7). Consequently, if it is not made known to the prophets, it will not come to pass."
April 6, 1843, James Burgess Notebook.
Appears in The Words of Joseph Smith by Ehat & Cook, p. 180.
Also cited in https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/ensign/2002/08/the-prophet-joseph-smiths-use-of-the-old-testament?lang=eng#note12

We can take these teachings to the bank. As Joseph Fielding Smith said,

"I have that absolute confidence in every vision, in every manifestation, in every revelation that has come to us through the Prophet Joseph Smith. I know he spoke the truth. … Everything has worked out harmoniously and according to the revelations we find in the Old Testament and in the New." (President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972), "Joseph Smith's First Prayer," Improvement Era, June 1960, 401.)

We are Close: Latter-day Prophet Quotes

The Family Proclamation: "We warn that individuals who violate covenants of chastity, who abuse spouse or offspring, or who fail to fulfill family responsibilities will one day stand accountable before God. **Further, we warn that the disintegration of the family will bring upon individuals, communities, and nations the calamities foretold by ancient and modern prophets."** -The Family: A Proclamation to the World. The First Presidency and Council of the Twelve Apostles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

Note: The 30-year anniversary of The Family Proclamation was completed recently in October 2025.

Elder McConkie in D&C student manual teaches the doctrine that we will know the generation wherein the Lord will return, as follows: "Question: Does or will anyone know when the Lord will come? Answer: As to the day and hour, No; **as to the generation, Yes**. Question: Who shall know the generation? Answer: The saints, the children of light, **those who can read the signs of the times,** those who treasure up the Lord's word so they will not be deceived." (Elder Bruce R. McConkie, D&C student manual for section 133 – https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrine-and-covenants-student-manual/sections-132-138/section-133-the-lords-appendix-to-the-doctrine-and-covenants?lang=eng)

In very recent times, the message has gotten even clearer. A study of teachings of **President Nelson** show that we are now closer than ever. He repeatedly warns us that the times are upon us. That we are in the "latter part of these latter days" and that we must be "true millennials" and so on. Indeed, during President Nelson's 7 year time as church president, he was known for making frequent bold and specific declarations about the imminence of the return of Christ and our duties related to it! He was also known for being happy, surely a righteous man about to live with his Lord is happy! Here are some of his teachings:

President Nelson said that the dedication of the Rome Italy Temple is "a **hinge-point in the history of the Church**. Things are going to move forward at an **accelerated pace**. The Church is going to have an unprecedented future, unparalleled. We're just building up to what is ahead now." (President Russel M Nelson, remarks at Rome temple dedication 2019. See https://www.thechurchnews.com/leaders-and-ministry/2019-03-15/president-nelson-talks-unprecedented-future-of-church-following-rome-

italy-temple-dedication-49233?fbclid=IwAR1VeKe0WxZ4FtPs38zMaKogR4Qbh9DLTEKLSKtaVAIsNneUciZ8ZKWZLNk)

President Nelson said, "We are grateful for each time you stand up and speak up for truth—especially when it is not popular. Many people refer to you as Millennials. I'll admit that when researchers refer to you by that word and describe what their studies reveal about you—your likes and dislikes, your feelings and inclinations, your strengths and weaknesses—I'm uncomfortable. There is something about the way they use the term Millennial that bothers me. And frankly, I am less interested in what the experts have to say about you than what the Lord has told me about you. When I pray about you and ask the Lord how He feels about you, I feel something far different from what the researchers say. **Spiritual impressions I've received about you lead me to believe that the term Millennial may actually be perfect for you**. But for a much different reason than the experts may ever understand. The term Millennial is perfect for you if that term reminds you of who you really are and what your purpose in life really is. A True Millennial is one who was taught and did teach the gospel of Jesus Christ premortally and who **made covenants** with our Heavenly Father there about courageous things—even **morally courageous things—that you would do while here on earth**.
A True Millennial is a man or woman whom God trusted enough to send to earth during the most compelling dispensation in the history of this world. A True Millennial is a man or woman who lives now to help prepare the people of this world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ and His millennial reign. Make no mistake about it—you were born to be a True Millennial… **Expect and prepare to accomplish the impossible. God has always asked His covenant children to do difficult things**. Because you are covenant-keeping sons and daughters of God, living in the **latter part of these latter days**, the Lord will ask you to do difficult things. You can count on it—**Abrahamic tests** did not stop with Abraham." (You are True Millennials by President Russell M. Nelson, 2016)

President Nelson said, **"Just think of the excitement and urgency of it all**: every prophet commencing with Adam has seen our day. And **every prophet has talked about *our* day**, when Israel would be gathered and the world would be prepared for the Second Coming of the Savior. Think of it! Of all the people who have ever lived on planet earth, ***we* are the ones who get to participate in this final, great gathering event.** How exciting is that! Our Heavenly Father has reserved many of His most noble spirits—perhaps, I might say, His finest team—for this final phase. Those noble spirits—those finest players, those heroes— are *you*!" (Hope of Israel,

Worldwide Youth Devotional, June 3, 2018)

President Nelson said, "Our Savior and Redeemer, Jesus Christ, will perform **some of His mightiest works between now and when He comes again**. **We will see miraculous indications that God the Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, preside over this Church in majesty and glory**," ("Revelation for the Church, Revelation for Our Lives," Apr. 2018 General Conference).

President Nelson said, "Do the spiritual work to find out for yourselves, and please do it now. **Time is running out**." (Come Follow Me, April 2019 Gen. Conf.)

President Nelson said, "We are just **building up to the climax** of this last dispensation— **when the Savior's Second Coming becomes a reality**." The Future of the Church, Preparing the World for the Savior's Second Coming, April 2020, 200 Years of Light: 1820-2020

President Nelson said, "In coming days, we will see the ***greatest*** **manifestations of the Savior's power that the world has *ever* seen**. Between now and the time He returns "with power and great glory," He will bestow **countless privileges, blessings, and miracles** upon the faithful." (Russel M Nelson, Overcome the World and Find Rest, Oct. 2022 Gen. Conf.)

Here are some other stirring statements:

President Henry B. Eyring in 2020 (a conference filled with apocalyptic themes) said, "**You** sisters, your daughters, your granddaughters, and the **women you have nurtured** will be at the heart of creating that society of people who will join in glorious association with the Savior. You will be an essential force in the gathering of Israel and in the creation of a Zion people who **will dwell in peace in the New Jerusalem**." (President Henry B. Eyring, Sisters in Zion, Oct. 2020 Gen. Conf., https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/2020/10/35eyring?lang=eng)

Elder Rasband in 2020 said, "We live in that time prophesied; **we are the people charged with ushering in the Second Coming** of Jesus Christ; we are to gather God's children, those who will hear and embrace the truths,

covenants, and promises of the everlasting gospel." (Elder Rasband, April 2020 Gen. Conf., https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/2020/04/41rasband?lang=eng)

Elder Christofferson in a talk titled "Fathers:" (he starts out by quoting a Book of Mormon passage): "Behold, I say unto you, that it is [Christ] that surely shall come … ; yea he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people. And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather … that they **may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming**." (Alma 39:15-16) **That is the ministry of fathers today**. God bless and make them equal to it, in the name of Jesus Christ, amen." (Elder Christopherson, "Fathers," April 2016 Gen. Conf., https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/2016/04/fathers?lang=eng)

Note: You could say that the preachers he refers to weren't right at the time of the Lord's coming, but given the context of other statements, this statement becomes significant as an indicator.

President Boyd K. Packer: "I am sorry to tell you that it will not get better….I know of nothing in the history of the Church, or in **the history of the world to compare with our present** circumstances. **Nothing happened in Sodom and Gomorrah which exceeds in wickedness** and depravity that which surrounds us now. Words of profanity, vulgarity, and blasphemy are heard everywhere. **Unspeakable wickedness and perversion** were once hidden in dark places; **now they are in the open**, and even **accorded legal protection**. At Sodom and Gomorrah these things were localized. Now, they are **spread across the world**, and they are **among us**". ("The One Pure Defense," by President Boyd K. Packer, Acting President of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, An Evening with President Boyd K. Packer, 6 February 2004, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/teaching-seminary-preservice-readings-religion-370-471-and-475/the-one-pure-defense?lang=eng)

President Ezra Taft Benson said, "For nearly six thousand years, God has held you in reserve to make your appearance in the final days before the Second Coming of the Lord...God has saved for the final inning some of

His strongest and most valiant children, who will help bear off the kingdom triumphantly. That is where you come in, for you are the generation that must be prepared to meet your God." (President Ezra Taft Benson, March 4, 1979)

President Benson said, “This is the last and great dispensation in which the great consummation of God’s purposes will be made, the only dispensation in which the Lord has promised that sin will not prevail. The Church will not be taken from the earth again. It is here to stay. The Lord has promised it and you are a part of that Church and kingdom—the nucleus around which will be builded the great kingdom of God on the earth. The kingdom of heaven and the kingdom of God on the earth will be combined together at Christ’s coming—and that time is not far distant. How I wish we could get the vision of this work, the genius of it, and realize the nearness of that great event. I am sure it would have a sobering effect upon us if we realized what is before us” (The Teachings of Ezra Taft Benson [Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1988], p. 19).

Note: President Gordon B. Hinckley also quoted the above Benson statement in his talk in the October 1992 General Conference, “Sin Will Not Prevail,” https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/1992/10/sin-will-not-prevail?lang=eng

Elder Ezra Taft Benson said, "Should the Lord decide at this time to cleanse the Church ...a famine in this land of one year's duration could wipe out a large percentage of slothful members, including some ward and stake officers. Yet we cannot say we have not been warned." (Elder Ezra Taft Benson, General Conference, April 1965.)

Elder Benson also said, “God has saved for the final inning some of his strongest children, who will help bear off the Kingdom triumphantly. And that is where you come in, for you are the generation that must be prepared to meet your God.” (In His Steps by Ezra Taft Benson (then of the 12 Apostles, later president of the church) Mar. 4, 1979, BYU Devotional, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson_in-christs-steps/)

Elder Dallin H. Oaks said, “We are living in the prophesied time ‘when peace shall be taken from the earth’ (D&C 1:35,) when ‘all things shall be in

commotion' and 'men's hearts shall fail them' (D&C 88:91.) There are many temporal causes of commotion, including wars and natural disasters, but an even greater cause of current 'commotion' is spiritual. ...We need to make both temporal and spiritual preparation for the events prophesied at the time of the Second Coming. And the preparation most likely to be neglected is the one less visible and more difficult – the spiritual. (Preparation for the Second Coming, by Elder Dallin H. Oaks, April 2004 General Conference, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/2004/04/preparation-for-the-second-coming?lang=eng)

Many prophets are repeating this message right now, loud and clear!

A Marked Generation: Quotes



[These first two quotes are also in the 'time is near' essay, but are also particularly relevant here.]

President Nelson said, "We are grateful for each time you stand up and speak up for truth—especially when it is not popular. Many people refer to you as Millennials. I'll admit that when researchers refer to you by that word and describe what their studies reveal about you—your likes and dislikes, your feelings and inclinations, your strengths and weaknesses—I'm uncomfortable. There is something about the way they use the term Millennial that bothers me. And frankly, I am less interested in what the experts have to say about you than what the Lord has told me about you. When I pray about you and ask the Lord how He feels about you, I feel something far different from what the researchers say. **Spiritual impressions I've received about you lead me to believe that the term Millennial may actually be perfect for you**. But for a much different reason than the experts may ever understand. The term Millennial is perfect

for you if that term reminds you of who you really are and what your purpose in life really is. A True Millennial is one who was taught and did teach the gospel of Jesus Christ premortally and who **made covenants** with our Heavenly Father there about courageous things—even **morally courageous things—that you would do while here on earth**.
A True Millennial is a man or woman whom God trusted enough to send to earth during the most compelling dispensation in the history of this world. A True Millennial is a man or woman who lives now to help prepare the people of this world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ and His millennial reign. Make no mistake about it—you were born to be a True Millennial… **Expect and prepare to accomplish the impossible. God has always asked His covenant children to do difficult things**. Because you are covenant-keeping sons and daughters of God, living in the **latter part of these latter days**, the Lord will ask you to do difficult things. You can count on it—**Abrahamic tests** did not stop with Abraham." (You are True Millennials by President Russell M. Nelson, 2016)

President Nelson also said, **"Just think of the excitement and urgency of it all**: every prophet commencing with Adam has seen our day. And **every prophet has talked about *our* day**, when Israel would be gathered and the world would be prepared for the Second Coming of the Savior. Think of it! Of all the people who have ever lived on planet earth, ***we* are the ones who get to participate in this final, great gathering event.** How exciting is that! Our Heavenly Father has reserved many of His most noble spirits—perhaps, I might say, His finest team—for this final phase. Those noble spirits—those finest players, those heroes— are *you*!" (Hope of Israel, Worldwide Youth Devotional, June 3, 2018)

Ezra Taft Benson said: "For nearly six thousand years, God has held you in reserve to make your appearance in the final days before the Second Coming of the Lord. Every previous gospel dispensation has drifted into apostasy, but ours will not. True, there will be some individuals who will fall away; but the kingdom of God will remain intact to welcome the return of its head—even Jesus Christ. While our generation will be comparable in wickedness to the days of Noah, when the Lord cleansed the earth by flood, there is a major difference this time. It is that God has saved for the final inning some of his strongest children, who will help bear off the Kingdom triumphantly. And that is where you come in, for you are the generation that must be prepared to meet your God. All through the ages the prophets have looked down through the corridors of time to our day. Billions of the deceased and those yet to be born have their eyes on us. Make no mistake about it—you are a marked generation. There has never been more expected of the faithful in such a short period of time as there is of us. Never before on the face of this earth have the forces of evil and the forces of good been as well organized. Now is the great

day of the devil's power, with the greatest mass murderers of all time living among us. But now is also the great day of the Lord's power, with the greatest number ever of priesthood holders on the earth. And the showdown is fast approaching. Each day the forces of evil and the forces of good pick up new recruits. Each day we personally make many decisions that show where our support will go. The final outcome is certain—the forces of righteousness will finally win. What remains to be seen is where each of us personally, now and in the future, will stand in this fight—and how tall we will stand. Will we be true to our last-days, foreordained mission? Great battles can make great heroes, but heroes will make great battle. You will never have a better opportunity to be a greater hero in a more crucial battle than in the battle you will face today and in the immediate future. Be warned that some of the greatest battles you will face will be fought within the silent chambers of your own soul. David's battles in the field against the foe were not as critical as David's battles in the palace against a lustful eye. We will each find our own battlefield. The tactics that the enemy will use against us will vary from time to time; he will feel after our weak spots. We must be alert to the devil's devious designs, to the subtle sins and clever compromises as well as the obvious offenses." (In His Steps by Ezra Taft Benson (then of the 12 Apostles, later president of the church) Mar. 4, 1979, BYU Devotional, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson_in-christs-steps/)

Bruce R. McConkie said: "It may be, for instance, that nothing except the power of faith and the authority of the priesthood can save individuals and congregations from the atomic holocausts that surely shall be... We do not say that all of the Saints will be spared and saved from the coming day of desolation. But we do say there is no promise of safety and no promise of security except for those who love the Lord and who are seeking to do all that he commands." (Bruce R McConkie-Stand Independent above All Other Creatures)

We Are Living in a Post-Christian World - Elder Cook

"The goal of honoring the Lord and submitting ourselves to His will is not as valued in today's society as it has been in the past. Some Christian leaders of other faiths believe **we are living in a post-Christian world**." (Elder Quinton L. Cook, 2017 Oct. Gen. Conf. "The Eternal Everyday" The Eternal Everyday (churchofjesuschrist.org))

Note: In other words, society is no longer encouraging a Christ centered life! Please do not think that you can be cool in the world, and holy in the church at the same time!

Note: As Christian philosopher Peter Kreeft points out, a good society is one that makes it easy to be good, and a bad society is one that makes it easy to be bad. Well, it was bad when I was a kid, and now it's worse.

We are Wicked as Sodom – Words of the Prophets



Spencer W. Kimball said, "…when I review the performance of this people in comparison with what is expected, I am appalled and frightened. Iniquity seems to abound. The Destroyer seems to be taking full advantage of the time remaining to him in this, the great day of his power. Evil seems about to engulf us like a great wave, and **we feel that truly we are living in conditions similar to those in the days of Noah before the Flood."** (President Spencer W Kimball, "The God's We Worship")

Mark E Peterson Warnings from the Past from the 70's said this too.

President Boyd K. Packer said, "Largely because of **television**, **instead of looking over into that spacious building, we are, in effect, living inside of it.** That is your fate in this generation. You are living in that great and spacious building." (President Boyd K. Packer, Lehi's Dream and You, BYU Speech, 2007, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/boyd-k-packer/lehis-dream/)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Our generation will be comparable in wickedness to the days of Noah" (In His Steps by Ezra Taft Benson (then of the 12 Apostles, later president of the church) Mar. 4, 1979, BYU Devotional, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson_in-christs-steps/)

President Gordon B. Hinckley said, "The traditional family is under heavy attack. I do not know that things were worse in the times of Sodom and Gomorrah. … We see similar conditions today. They prevail all across the world. I think our Father must weep as He looks down upon His wayward sons and daughters. (President Gordon B. Hinckley, Worldwide Leadership Training Meeting, 10 Jan. 2004, 20)

President Gordon B. Hinckley said, "We live in a season when fierce men do terrible and despicable things. We live in a season of war. We live in a season of arrogance. We live in a season of wickedness, pornography, immorality. All of the sins of Sodom and Gomorrah haunt our society. **Our young people have never faced a greater challenge. We have never seen more clearly the lecherous face of evil**." (President Gordon B. Hinckley, Ensign, Nov 2001, 4)

Elder Boyd K. Packer said, "**Nothing happened in Sodom and Gomorrah which exceeds in wickedness and depravity that which surrounds us now**. Words of **profanity, vulgarity, and blasphemy** are heard everywhere. Unspeakable wickedness and **perversion were once hidden in dark places; now they are in the open, even accorded legal protection.** At **Sodom and Gomorrah these things were localized. Now they are spread across the world, and they are among us."** (Elder Boyd K. Packer, Address to CES religious educators, Feb. 6, 2004, 4)

Elder Richard G. Scott said, "Much of the world is being engulfed in a rising river of degenerate filth, with the abandonment of virtue, righteousness, personal integrity, traditional marriage, and family life. Sodom and Gomorrah was the epitome of unholy life in the Old Testament**. It was isolated then; now that condition is spread over the world.** Satan skillfully manipulates the power of all types of media and communication. His success has greatly increased the extent and availability of such degrading and destructive influences worldwide. In the past some effort was required to seek out such evil. **Now it saturates significant portions of virtually every corner of the world.** We cannot dry up the mounting river of evil influences, for they result from the exercise of moral agency divinely granted by our Father. But we can and must, with clarity, warn of the consequences of getting close to its enticing, destructive current." (Elder Richard G. Scott, How to Live Well Amidst Increasing Evil, Ensign, May 2004)

President Harold B. Lee said, "Husbands, be true to your wives. Wives, be true to your husbands. **Guard against the great sin of Sodom and Gomorrah. It has been labeled as a sin second only in seriousness to the**

sin of murder. I speak of the sin of adultery, which as you know, is the name used by the Master as he referred to unlicensed sexual sins of **fornication**, **adultery** and besides this, the equally grievious sin of **homosexuality** which seems to be gaining momentum with social acceptance in the Babylon of today's world, and with which Church members must not be a party. While we are in the world we must not be of the world. Any **attempts being made by the schools or places of entertainment to flaunt sexual perversions, which can do nothing but excite to experimentation, must find among the priesthood in this Church a vigorous and unrelenting foe through every lawful means which can be employed**." (President Harold B. Lee, Decisions for Successful Living, 246)

Elder Bruce R. McConkie said, "As spoken of in the revelations, pride is the opposite of humility. It is inordinate self-esteem arising because of one's position, achievements, or possessions; and it has the effect of centering a person's heart on the things of the world rather than the things of the Spirit. (1 John 2:15-17.) As humility, which is an attribute of godliness possessed by true saints, leads to salvation, so pride, which is of the devil, leads to damnation. (2 Ne. 28:15.) "God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble." (Jas. 4:6; 1 Pet. 5:5.) Latter-day prevalence of pride in the hearts of men is one of the sure proofs that apostasy and unrighteousness prevail on the earth. (Rom. 1:28-32; 2 Tim. 3:1-7; 2 Ne. 28-10- 15; Morm. 8:28-36.) The Lord **hates "a proud look."** (Prov. 6:16-19.) "Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall." (Prov. 16:18.) Pride among the inhabitants of Sodom was one of the chief reasons for her destruction. (Ezek. 16:49.) Pride is wickedness, and those who are proud are living a telestial law and will be utterly destroyed at the Second Coming of Christ. (Isa. 2:12; Mal. 4:1; 1 Ne. 22:15; 3 Ne. 25:1; D. & C. 29:9; 64:24; 133:64.) " (Elder Bruce R. McConkie, Doctrinal New Testament Commentary, 3 vols. [Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1965-1973], 3: 110.)

Elder Bruce R. McConkie said, "If God cast one-third of the hosts of heaven down to eternal damnation, for their rebellion; if in the flood he destroyed all but Noah and his family, for rejecting the divine will; if he rained brimstone and fire upon Sodom and Gomorrah, utterly destroying all, save Lot and his family only, that dwelt therein, for their sins and abominations—**why should false prophets and teachers expect to escape the wrath of Him who is no respecter of persons**?" (Elder Bruce R. McConkie, Doctrinal New Testament Commentary, 3 vols. [Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1965-1973], 3: 359.)

Elder Bruce R. McConkie said, "When men are "ripened in iniquity," then the fulness of the Lord's wrath comes upon them, and they are destroyed in

the flesh. (Ether 2:8-9; 14:25.) Such was the case with the Jaredites, the Nephites, and the inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah, for instance; such will be the case with the wicked at the Second Coming. The "fiery indignation of the wrath of God" will continue to be poured out upon the wicked in hell until the day of their resurrection. (Alma 40:14; Rev. 14:10; D. & C. 19:15; 76:106-107.) Then, to all eternity, those subject to the second death shall be "vessels of wrath, doomed to suffer the wrath of God, with the devil and his angels in eternity." (D. & C. 76:33, 38.) " (Elder Bruce R. McConkie, Mormon Doctrine, 2nd ed., p. 851)

Elder Neal A. Maxwell said, "When we pause to think of nuclear denouement, we find it almost instantly unthinkable. Yet we know that it is avoidable if mankind will keep God's commandments. If we do not, then again, as God told us (long before man so worried about incinerating the world), the earth can be destroyed by fire. The outcome turns on whether mankind chooses to respond as in Nineveh or as in Sodom, for those are now the choices; Eden is long since behind us!" (Elder Neal A. Maxwell, Even As I Am [Salt Lake City: Deseret Book Co., 1982], 106.)

Elder Neal A. Maxwell said, "It is likewise a grave error to underestimate secularism's dulling, desensitizing influence on traditional values. Jesus Himself compared the "business as usual" days of Noah and Lot with our own last days: "And as it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. "They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all. "Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they; "But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all. "Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed." (Luke 17:2630.) Cataclysm came!" (Elder Neal A. Maxwell, If Thou Endure It Well [Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1996], 14)

Elder Spencer W. Kimball said, "Because of this widespread tolerance toward promiscuity, this world is in grave danger. When evil is decried and forbidden and punished, the world still has a chance. But when toleration for sin increases, the outlook is bleak and Sodom and Gomorrah days are certain to return. (Elder Spencer W. Kimball, Faith Precedes the Miracle, 154)

Elder Ezra Taft Benson said, "The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! for they have rewarded evil unto themselves. (Isaiah 3:9) Youth leaders, are you holding aloft our standards, or have you compromised them for the lowest common denominator in order to appease

the deceived or vile within the Church? Are the dances and music in your cultural halls virtuous, lovely, praiseworthy, and of good report, or do they represent a **modern Sodom with short skirts, loud beat, strobe lights, and darkness**?" (Elder Ezra Taft Benson, God, Family, Country: Our Three Great Loyalties [Salt Lake City: Deseret Book Co., 1974], 229)

Elder David B. Haight said, "In recent years, America and most other nations of the free world have been **converted into a space-age Sodom and Gomorrah**, aided by some publishers and movie producers, and even some so-called educators. **Moral principles have been eclipsed by the blind, ungodly pursuit of pleasure at any price**." (Elder David B. Haight, A Light unto the World, 155 - 156)

Note: SLC is prophesied to become one of the best and worst cities on earth. SLC is now a world leader in performing gay marriages around the world online. It also had a gay major. They aren't just being nice to those who struggle with this sin, they are setting them up as the examples and leaders, and helping people all around the world to live this way.



Who Will (and WON'T) Abide the Day of Christ's Coming – Warnings of Prophets

"But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeareth? for he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap" (Malachi 3:2)



Who WON'T abide the day?

Non-tithe payers have no guarantee to not be burned at His coming (D&C 64:23).

Saints who don't do their family history work are in jeopardy. **Spencer W. Kimball** taught, ""And *why stand we in jeopardy every hour*?" (1 Cor. 15:29–30; italics added.) Paul's last question has caused me much reflection in recent months. **Why do the peoples of the world stand in jeopardy? Because they cannot be saved without their families and their associates**. They will continue to stand in jeopardy until the gospel is taken to them in such a way that they are willing either to receive it or reject it. This responsibility also places us in jeopardy so far as missionary work is concerned if we don't share the gospel with them. At the same time, **we as members of the Church also stand in jeopardy if we do not do our temple work.** Much of our time is taken up with the mundane details of everyday living, which must be done, of course; but those who are members of His kingdom at this **critical time** should endeavor to give **much time and effort to this important work**... We wonder about our progenitors—grandparents, great-grandparents, great-great-grandparents, etc. What do they think of you and me? We are their offspring. We have the responsibility to do their temple work, and the beautiful temples of the Lord stand day after day, yet we do not fill them always. We have a grave responsibility that we cannot avoid, and may stand in jeopardy if we fail to do this important work… We have asked the members of the Church to further the work of turning the hearts of the children to the fathers by getting their sacred family records in order. These records, including especially the **"book containing the records of our dead"** (D&C 128:24), are **a portion of the "offering in righteousness" referred to by Malachi** (Mal. 3:3), which we are to present in His holy temple, and **without which we shall not abide the day of His coming**." (Spencer W. Kimball, "The Things of Eternity- Stand we in Jeopardy?" Ensign Jan. 1977, p.7, (https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/ensign/1977/01/the-things-of-eternity-stand-we-in-jeopardy?lang=eng) (see also D&C 128:24)

Those who don't pray always to resist temptation will not abide the day of His coming (D&C 61:39)

Those who don't have food storage may not survive the last days. **President Ezra Taft Benson** said having food storage in these days is similar to boarding Noah's ark before the flood: "From the standpoint of food production, storage, handling, and the Lord's counsel, wheat should have high priority. "There is more salvation and security in wheat," said Orson Hyde years ago, "than in all the political schemes of the world" (in Journal of Discourses, 2:207). Water, of course, is essential. Other basics could include honey or sugar, legumes, milk products or substitutes, and salt or its equivalent. The **revelation to produce and store food may be as essential to our temporal welfare today as boarding the ark was** to the people in the days of Noah." (Oct. 1980 Ezra Taft Benson Conf. Report, https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1980/10/prepare-for-the-days-of-tribulation?lang=eng))

The glory of the Savior's presence will consume the wicked (see Nahum 1:5–10; D&C 133:41; 5:19) (See also LDS Doctrines of the Gospel Student Manual Ch 36 The Lord's Second Coming (https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrines-of-the-gospel-student-manual/chapter-36-the-lords-second-coming?lang=eng))

At Jesus' coming to the Nephites, which is typical of the 2nd Coming to come: those who survived the destructions were those who were not stoning and casting out the prophets. " O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up" (3 Ne. 8:25)

D&C 133:41–51: The wicked to be destroyed at His coming.

Penruse said, "He comes! with all the hosts of the righteous glorified. The breath of his lips strikes death to the wicked. His glory is a consuming fire. The proud and rebellious are as stubble; they are burned and 'left neither root nor branch.' He sweeps the earth 'as with the besom of destruction.' He deluges the earth with the fiery floods of his wrath, and the filthiness and abominations of the world are consumed. " (Doctrines of the gospel LSD student manual Second Coming: Penruse, "Second Advent" , 583)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "The third appearance of Christ will be to the rest of the world. … All nations will see Him 'in the clouds of heaven, clothed with power and great glory; with all the holy angels; … And the Lord shall utter his voice, and all the ends of the earth shall hear it; and the nations of the earth shall mourn, and they that have laughed shall see their folly. And calamity shall cover the mocker, and the scorner shall be consumed; and

they that have watched for iniquity shall be hewn down and cast into the fire.' (D&C 45:44, 49–50.)" (Doctrines of the gospel LSD student manual Second Coming: Ezra Taft Benson, "Five Marks of the Divinity of Jesus Christ," New Era, Dec. 1980, 49–50))

President Joseph Fielding Smith said, "We shall not escape [the judgements] unless we repent, turn to the Lord, honor our Priesthood and our membership in this Church, and be true and faithful to our covenants" (President Joseph Fielding Smith, Conference Report, Apr. 1937, 62)

Wilford Woodruff said, "Will he [Jesus] receive us to himself? Are we prepared for his coming and kingdom and the fulness thereof, unless we are sanctified, and lay aside sin, and do right? No. We must sanctify ourselves, and keep the commandments of God, and do those things that are required at our hands, before we can be prepared for the coming of the Great Bridegroom." (Wilford Woodruff, Journal of Discourses, 2:202)

President George Albert Smith said, "In our day we are warned in a revelation to the Prophet Joseph Simth, that unless we are more righteous than those who are receiving destruction at the present time in many parts of the world, we, too, must lose our birthright and our opportunity and be destroyed here in the flesh. We will not be justified by saying we are living as well as other people. That is not sufficient, my brethren. We have a special destiny if we live for it. That destiny is to live here upon this earth when it becomes the Celestial Kingdom, where God our Heavely Father and His Son Jesus Christ will be our King and our Lawgiver" (President George Albert Smith, Conference Report, Oct. 1943, 45)

George Albert Smith said, "[The Lord] has told us in great plainness that the world will be in distress, that there will be warfare from one end of the world to the other, that the wicked shall slay the wicked and that peace shall be taken from the earth. And He has said, too, that the only place where there will be safety will be in Zion. Will we make this Zion? Will we keep it to be Zion, because Zion means the pure in heart?" (George Albert Smith, in Conference Report, Oct. 1941, 99). (https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrines-of-the-gospel-student-manual/chapter-35-the-fall-of-babylon-and-the-establishment-of-zion?lang=eng)

"41 But as it was in the days of Noah, so it shall be also at the coming of the Son of Man; 42 For it shall be with them, as it was in the days which were before the flood; for until the day that Noah entered into the ark they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage; 43 And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of Man be." (Joseph Smith - Matthew 1:41-43)

Elder Bruce R. McConkie said, "The one who is taken, of the two laboring side by side, is the righteous one, the one to be gathered with the saints. He is taken to the body of the Church." (Elder Bruce R. McConkie, Doctrinal New Testament Commentary, 1:670.)

Moses 8:22 Earth filled with violence before flood at time of Noah

Moses 8:19-24 Noah's contemporaries rejected the preaching of repentance and baptism and faith and the Holy Ghost.

Moses 7:43 says the flood swallowed the wicked.

Bruce R. McConkie said, "All things are in commotion. Never has there been such a day as this. The newspapers of the world, as well as radio and television, speak only of war and calamity and the dread that hangs like a millstone around every neck. …
"And the signs in heaven above are like nothing man has ever seen. Blood is everywhere; fire and vapors of smoke fill the atmospheric heavens. No man has seen a rainbow this year. …**And above all are the vexing words of those Mormon Elders! They are everywhere preaching their strange doctrine,** saying that the coming of the Lord is near, and that unless men repent and believe the gospel they will be destroyed by the brightness of his coming. In this setting, as these and ten thousand like things are in progress, suddenly, quickly, as from the midst of eternity, He comes! Fire burns before him; tempests spread destruction; the earth trembles and reels to and fro as a drunken man. Every corruptible thing is consumed." (Doctrines of the gospel LSD student manual Second Coming: Bruce R. McConkie, Millennial Messiah, 21–22)

Bruce R. McConkie said, "When the Lord comes in his glory, in flaming fire, that fire will both cleanse the vineyard and burn the earth. In that day, so intense shall be the heat and so universal the burning, the very elements of which this earth is composed shall melt. The mountains, high and glorious and made of solid rock, shall melt like wax. They shall become molten and flow down into the valleys below. The very earth itself, as now constituted, shall be dissolved. All things shall burn with fervent heat. And out of it all shall come new heavens and a new earth whereon dwelleth righteousness" (Doctrines of the gospel LSD student manual Second Coming: Bruce R. McConkie,Millennial Messiah, 526–27)

Charles A. Callis said, "Now brethren and sisters, the great day of the Lord is coming. It is going to be a terrible day. The wicked are going to be destroyed, and when I say the wicked I do not mean everybody outside the

Mormon Church. There will be countless millions of people not of this Church spared because they are not ripe in iniquity and to them we will preach the everlasting Gospel and bring them unto Christ" (Doctrines of the gospel LSD student manual Second Coming: Charles A. Callis, in Conference Report, Apr. 1935, 18)

Who WILL Abide the Day of Christ's Coming?



The righteous people will be spared! We must never loose hope in the promises of God! The scriptures are full of them!

For examples of who WILL abide the day of his coming, look up terms like 'righteous, safe, peace' in the topical guide to the scriptures.

Here are a few abbreviated excerpts from those guides, be sure to refer to the guides for many more references on these topics:

RIGHTEOUS:

The Lord will bless the righteous: Ps. 5:12
The eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous: Ps. 34:15, 17; (1 Pet. 3:12;)
Blessed are they who hunger and thirst after righteousness: Matt. 5:6; (3 Ne. 12:6;)
The righteous go into life eternal: Matt. 25:46;
The fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much: James 5:16;

The righteous shall inherit the kingdom of God: 2 Ne. 9:18;
The righteous fear not the words of truth: 2 Ne. 9:40;

Stand, having on the breastplate of righteousness: D&C 27:16; (Eph. 6:14;)
The death of the righteous is sweet unto them: D&C 42:46;
The righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations: D&C 45:71;
He who does the works of righteousness shall receive peace in this world and eternal life in the world to come: D&C 59:23;
At the Second Coming, there will be an entire separation of the righteous

and the wicked: D&C 63:54;
Among the righteous there was peace: D&C 138:22;

SAFE:

3 Nephi 4:30 And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.
Lord shall cover him all the day long, and he shall dwell between his shoulders.
Deuteronomy 33:28 Israel then shall dwell in safety alone: the fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew.
Prov. 24:6 in multitude of counsellors there is safety.
Job 11:18 And thou shalt be secure, because there is hope; yea, thou shalt dig about thee, and thou shalt take thy rest in safety.
Leviticus 25:18 ¶Wherefore ye shall do my statutes, and keep my judgments, and do them; and ye shall dwell in the land in safety.
Leviticus 25:19 And the land shall yield her fruit, and ye shall eat your fill, and dwell therein in safety.

D&C 105:25 And behold, I will give unto you favor and grace in their eyes, that you may rest in peace and safety, while you are saying unto the people: Execute judgment and justice for us according to law, and redress us of our wrongs.
Moses 7:20 And it came to pass that Enoch talked with the Lord; and he said unto the Lord: Surely Zion shall dwell in safety forever. But the Lord said unto Enoch: Zion have I blessed, but the residue of the people have I cursed.
Alma 34:16 And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.
Job 11:18 And thou shalt be secure, because there is hope

JST, Genesis 14:33 And now, Melchizedek was a priest of this order; therefore he obtained peace
Isaiah 57:19 I create the fruit of the lips; Peace, peace to him that is far off, and to him that is near, saith the Lord; and I will heal him.

James 3:18 And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace of them that make peace.

John 14:27 Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.
2 Corinthians 13:11 Finally, brethren, farewell. Be perfect, be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace; and the God of love and peace shall be with you.

Isaiah 27:5 Or let him take hold of my strength, that he may make peace with me; and he shall make peace with me.

PEACE:

Zephaniah 1:7 Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord God: for the day of the Lord is at hand: for the Lord hath prepared a sacrifice, he hath bid his guests.
Psalms 119:165 Great peace have they which love thy law: and nothing shall offend them.
Psalms 128:6 Yea, thou shalt see thy children's children, and peace upon Israel.

1 Nephi 20:18 O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.
God hath called us to peace. 1 Cor. 7:15
Alma 38:15 And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace.

2 Peter 3:14 Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless.
Psalms 29:11 The Lord will give strength unto his people; the Lord will bless his people with peace.
Ezekiel 34:25 And I will make with them a covenant of peace, and will cause the evil beasts to cease out of the land: and they shall dwell safely in the wilderness, and sleep in the woods.

Luke 24:36 ¶And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.
Galatians 6:16 And as many as walk according to this rule, peace be on them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of God.
Isaiah 60:17 For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness.

Psalms 55:18 He hath delivered my soul in peace from the battle that was

against me: for there were many with me.
1 Samuel 11:15 And all the people went to Gilgal; and there they made Saul king before the Lord in Gilgal; and there they sacrificed sacrifices of peace offerings before the Lord; and there Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.
Leviticus 26:6 And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land.

Accelerate Your Preparation – Dallin H. Oaks 2004

Oaks encouraged all members of the Church throughout the world to, "**accelerate our own preparation and try to influence the preparation of those around us**." (April 2004 General Conference)

Famine: Scriptures

D&C 29:16: And there shall be a great hailstorm sent forth to destroy the crops of the earth.

D&C 38:30: If ye are prepared ye shall not fear

D&C 109:8: Organize yourselves; prepare every needful thing, and establish a house, even a house of prayer, a house of fasting, a house of faith, a house of learning, a house of glory, a house of order, a house of God;

D&C 87:6: And thus, with the sword and by bloodshed the inhabitants of the earth shall mourn; and with famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven, and the fierce and vivid lightning also, shall the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God, until the consumption decreed hath made a full end of all nations;

Helaman 11:5: …And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi…

Genesis 26:1: And there was a famine in the land,…

Genesis 41:27: And the seven thin and ill favoured kine that came up after them are seven years; and the seven empty ears blasted with the east wind shall be seven years of famine.

Rev. 16:8-9, 21: 8 And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire.
9 And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory.
21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great.

Rev. 8:10-12: 10 And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;
11 And the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.
12 And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.
13 And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabiters of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound!

Food Storage: Key Recent Quotes

Spencer W. Kimball said, “I remember when the sisters used to say, “Well, but we could buy it at the store a lot cheaper than we can put it up.” But that isn’t quite the answer. . . Because **there will come a time when there isn’t a store**…” (Pres. Spencer W. Kimball, Conference Report, Oct. 1974)

President Ezra Taft Benson said having food storage in these days is similar to boarding Noah’s ark before the flood: “From the standpoint of food production, storage, handling, and the Lord’s counsel, wheat should

have high priority. “There is more salvation and security in wheat,” said Orson Hyde years ago, “than in all the political schemes of the world” (in Journal of Discourses, 2:207). Water, of course, is essential. Other basics could include honey or sugar, legumes, milk products or substitutes, and salt or its equivalent. The **revelation to produce and store food may be as essential to our temporal welfare today as boarding the ark was** to the people in the days of Noah.” (Oct. 1980 Ezra Taft Benson Conf. Report, https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1980/10/prepare-for-the-days-of-tribulation?lang=eng))

President Nelson said, “For decades, the Lord’s prophets have urged us to store food, water, and financial reserves for a time of need. . . . I urge you to take steps to be temporally prepared.” (President Russell M. Nelson, “Embrace the Future with Faith,” Ensign or Liahona, Nov. 2020, 74)

President Thomas S Monson said, “We urge all Latter-day Saints to be prudent in their planning, to be conservative in their living, and to avoid excessive or unnecessary debt. Many more people could ride out the storm-tossed waves in their economic lives if they had a supply of food and clothing and were debt-free. **Today we find that many have followed this counsel in reverse**: they have a supply of debt and are food-free…We live in turbulent times. Often the future is unknown; therefore, it behooves us to prepare for uncertainties. *When the time for decision arrives, the time for preparation is past.”* (Ensign, September 2014, Thomas S. Monson, Are We Prepared?)

Spencer W. Kimball said, “His [Noah’s] people mocked and called him a fool. His preaching fell on deaf ears. His warnings were considered irrational. There was no precedent; never had it been known that a deluge could cover the earth. How foolish to build an ark on dry ground with the sun shining and life moving forward as usual! But time ran out. The ark was finished. The floods came. The disobedient and rebellious were drowned. The miracle of the ark followed the faith manifested in its building.” (Teachings of President Spencer W. Kimball, Ch. 13, Obedience Born of Faith in God, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/teachings-spencer-w-kimball/chapter-13?lang=eng)

Gordon B. Hinckley said, “We can begin ever so modestly. We can begin with a one week’s food supply and gradually build it to a month, and then to three months. I fear that so many feel that a long-term food supply is so far beyond their reach that they make no effort at all. Begin in a small way, and gradually build toward a reasonable objective.”

Vaughn J. Featherstone said, “I bear my humble witness to you that the great God of heaven will open doors and means in a way we never would

have supposed to help all those who truly want to get their year's supply."

Thomas S. Monson said**,** "the best storehouse system that the Church could devise would be for **every family to store a year's supply** of needed food, clothing, and, where possible, the other necessities of life." (First Presidency Message September 1986 Ensign, Guiding Principles of Personal and Family Welfare by President Thomas S. Monson Second Councilor in the First Presidency https://www.lds.org/ensign/1986/09/guiding-principles-of-personal-and-family-welfare?lang=eng)

Spencer W. Kimball said, "No true Latter-day Saint, while physically or emotionally able, will voluntarily shift the burden of his own or his family's well-being to someone else." (Ensign, Nov. 1977, p. 77.)

Bishop W. Christopher Waddell said, "The Lord does not expect us to do more than we can do, but he does expect us to do what we can do, when we can do it" ("There Was Bread," Ensign or Liahona, Nov. 2020, 43)

Thomas S. Monson said, "Self-reliance is a product of our work and undergirds all other welfare practices. It is an essential element in our spiritual as well as our temporal well-being. Regarding this principle, President Marion G. Romney has said: "Let us work for what we need. Let us be self-reliant and independent. Salvation can be obtained on no other principle. Salvation is an individual matter, and we must work out our own salvation in temporal as well as in spiritual things." (In Welfare Services Meeting Report, 2 Oct. 1976, p. 13.) (First Presidency Message September 1986 Ensign "Guiding Principles of Personal and Family Welfare by President Thomas S. Monson Second Councilor in the First Presidency https://www.lds.org/ensign/1986/09/guiding-principles-of-personal-and-family-welfare?lang=eng)

Marion G. Romney said, "...We will see the day when we will live on what we produce." (Elder Marion G. Romney, General Conference April 1975)

President Spencer W. Kimball said, "We encourage families to **have on hand this year's supply**; and we say it **over and over and over** and repeat over and over the scripture of the Lord where He says, "Why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?" How empty it is as they put their spirituality, so-called, into action and call him by his important names, but **fail to do the things which he says**." (April 1976, General Conference, Family Preparedness.)

Elder Dallin H. Oaks said, "What if the day of His coming were tomorrow? If we knew that we would meet the Lord tomorrow—through

our premature death or through His unexpected coming—what would we do today? What confessions would we make? What practices would we discontinue? What accounts would we settle? at forgiveness would we extend? What testimonies would we bear? If we would do those things then, why not now? Why not seek peace while peace can be obtained? If our lamps of preparation are drawn down, let us start immediately to replenish them." (Dallin H. Oaks, April 2004, General Conference, Preparation for the Second Coming)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Should the Lord decide at this time to cleanse the Church—and the need for **that cleansing seems to be increasing**—a **famine** in this land of one year's duration **could wipe out a large percentage of slothful members**, including some ward and stake officers. Yet we cannot say we have not been warned." (Not Commanded in All Things, Ezra Taft Benson, Conference Report, April 1965, pp. 121-125)

Ezra Taft Benson said, **"**Too often we bask in our comfortable complacency and rationalize that the ravages of war, economic disaster, famine, and earthquake cannot happen here. Those who believe this are either not acquainted with the revelations of the Lord, or they do not believe them. **Those who smugly think these calamities will not happen, that they somehow will be set aside because of the righteousness of the Saints, are deceived and will rue the day they harbored such a delusion**." (Ezra Taft Benson – October Conference, 1980 Ensign, November 1980, p. 32-33.)

President Gordon B. Hinckley said, "The church has built grain storage and **storehouses** and stocked them with the necessities of life in the event of a disaster, **but the best storehouse is the family storeroom**." (If Ye Are Prepared Ye Shall Not Fear, October 2005 General Conference.)

Spencer W. Kimball said, "It rolled over and over and over in my mind: "Why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?" (Luke 6:46.) There are many people in the Church today who have failed to do, and **continue to argue against doing, the things that are requested and suggested by this great organization**. The Lord said also, "Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven." (Matt. 7:21.) And I was thinking that there are as many wards and branches in the Church as there are people in this room, one for one. And what great accomplishment there would be if every bishop and every branch president in all the world, wherever it's possible (of course there are a few places where this is not

permitted), had a **storage** such as has been suggested here this morning—and took to their three or four or five hundred members the same message, quoting scripture and insisting that the people of their wards and branches do the things the Lord has requested, for we know that **there are many who are failing**." (Spencer W. Kimball, "Family Preparedness", April 1976 General Conference; In the Ensign (May 1976), it appears on page 124.)

Food Storage: Quotes From Church History

Joseph Smith said, "I have asked of the Lord concerning His coming; and while asking the Lord, He gave a sign and said, 'In the days of Noah I set a bow in the heavens as a sign and token that in any year that the bow should be seen the Lord would not come; but there should be seed time and harvest during that year: but **whenever you see the bow withdrawn, it shall be a token that there shall be famine, pestilence, and great distress among the nations, and that the coming of the Messiah is not far distant.**'" The Teachings of Joseph Smith, Chapter 21.

Food Storage in Church History Subtopic: Nothing Beats Food in Famine:

Brigham Young said, "Suppose you. . .sell all your wheat . . .and you are left with nothing more than a pile of gold, what good would it do you? You could not eat it, drink it, wear it, or carry it off where you could have something to eat. The time will come that gold will hold no comparison in value to a bushel of wheat." (Brigham Young, JD 1:250, 1853)

Heber C. Kimball said, "Harder times are coming by and bye, and there is going to be an awful famine. And if we do right, we shall take a course to lay up our surplus grain." (Heber C. Kimball, JD 109, 1856)

J. Richard Clark said, "There are some who feel that they are secure as long as they have funds to purchase food. Money is not food. If there is no food in the stores or in the warehouses, you cannot sustain life with money. Both President Romney and President Clark have warned us that we will yet live on what we produce." (J. Richard Clarke, Conference Report, Oct. 1980)

Food Storage in Church History Subtopic: Many will come to us for food:

Heber C. Kimball said, "But the day will be, and it is right at our doors, when thousands and **millions** in the United States and in the old countries

will **come to us** and render to us all the **rich things that this earth affords, in exchange for food.**" (Heber C. Kimball, JD 5:255, 1857)

Heber C. Kimball said, "The day will come when **millions of people will flock to us for bread,** and thousands of them will be honest; they will be the elect of God; **they will come to us for salvation**, either to this place or to Jackson County." (Heber C. Kimball, JD 8:89, 1860)

A report of **Lorenzo Snow's** teaching says, "Elder Lorenzo Snow. . .spoke of the prediction of the servants of God that **wheat would be worth its weight in gold**. He asked what preparation had been made for that time. . . .**When this nation became disrupted by civil strife, thousands would flock here and we should have to feed them**. . . .As sure as there was a God in Israel, the famine predicted would come to pass." (Des. Evening News, Jan. 31, 1877)

Note: Remember the scriptural patterns of famine, that deliverance was found with Joseph in Egypt during the famine as God had forewarned him of the famine and he made preparations. We too have been warned, and we too have the opportunity to be saivors on mount Zion, the modern Joseph fulfilling God's promises again in the latter-days.

Additional Quotations on Preparedness

Thomas S. Monson said, "We urge all Latter-day Saints to be prudent in their planning, to be conservative in their living, and to avoid excessive or unnecessary debt." – President Thomas S. Monson, October 2008 Priesthood Session, General Conference

Thomas S. Monson said, "Avoid the philosophy that yesterday's luxuries have become today's necessities. They aren't necessities until we make them so. Many enter into long-term debt only to find that changes occur; people become ill or incapacitated, companies fail or downsize, jobs are lost, natural disasters befall us. For many reasons, payments on large amounts of debt can no longer be made.

Our debt becomes as a Damocles sword hanging over our heads and threatening to destroy us." - President Thomas S. Monson, April 2006 General Conference

L. Tom Perry said, "Just as it is important to prepare ourselves spiritually, we must also prepare ourselves for our temporal needs. … We have been instructed for years to follow at least four requirements in preparing for that which is to come. **First**, gain an adequate education. Learn a trade or a profession to enable you to obtain steady employment that will provide remuneration sufficient to care for yourself and your family. … **Second**, live strictly within your income and save something for a rainy day. Incorporate in your lives the discipline of budgeting that which the Lord has blessed you with. As regularly as you pay your tithing, set aside an amount needed for future family requirements. … **Third**, avoid excessive debt. Necessary debt should be incurred only after careful, thoughtful prayer and after obtaining the best possible advice. We need the discipline to stay well within our ability to pay. … **Fourth**, acquire and store a reserve of food and supplies that will sustain life [if local laws permit such storage]. Obtain clothing and build a savings account on a sensible, well-planned basis that can serve well in times of emergency. As long as I can remember, we have been taught to prepare for the future and to obtain a year's supply of necessities. I would guess that the years of plenty have almost universally caused us to set aside this counsel. I believe the time to disregard this counsel is over. With events in the world today, it must be considered with all seriousness." – Elder L. Tom Perry, October 1995 General Conference

Spencer W. Kimball said, "Maintain a year's supply. The Lord has urged that his people save for the rainy days, prepare for the difficult times, and put away for emergencies, a year's supply or more of bare necessities so that when comes the flood, the earthquake, the famine, the hurricane, the storms of life, our families can be sustained through the dark days. How many of us have complied with this? We strive with the Lord, finding many excuses: We do not have room for storage. The food spoils. We do not have the funds to do it. We do not like these common foods. It is not needed — there will always be someone to help in

trouble. The government will come to the rescue. And some intend to obey but procrastinate." – The Teachings of Spencer W. Kimball, p.375

Bruce R. McConkie said, "I stand before the Church this day and raise the warning voice. It is a prophetic voice, for I shall say only what the apostles and the prophets have spoken concerning our day. …It is a voice calling upon the Lord's people to prepare for the troubles and desolations which are about to be poured upon the world without measure. For the moment, we live in a day of peace and prosperity but it shall not ever be thus. Great trials lie ahead. All of the sorrows and perils of the past are but a foretaste of what is yet to be. And we must prepare ourselves temporally and spiritually." – Bruce R. McConkie (General Conference April 1979)

J. Reuben Clark said, "Let every head of every household see to it that he has on hand enough food and clothing, and, where possible, fuel also, for at least a year ahead" – J. Reuben Clark (General Conference April 1937.)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Should the Lord decide at this time to cleanse the Church … a famine in this land of one year's duration could wipe out a large percentage of slouthful members, including some ward and stake officers. Yet we cannot say we have not been warned." – Ezra Taft Benson (General Conference, April 1965)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "For the righteous, the gospel provides a warning before calamity, a program for the crises, refuge for each disaster… The Lord has warned us of famines, but the righteous will have listened to the prophets and stored at least one year's supply of survival food…"- Ezra Taft Benson (General Conference, October 1973)

Bishop H. Burke Peterson said, "On the average, about 30 percent of the church has a two-month supply of food. The remainder have little or none…become self-sufficient as

possible to prepare against the days to come."- Bishop H. Burke Peterson (General Conference October 1975)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Plan to build up your food supply just as you would a savings account… We urge you to do this prayerfully and do it now." – Ezra Taft Benson (General Conference, October 1980)

Gordon B. Hinckley said, "We feel the need to emphasize with greater clarity the obligation for members of the Church to become more independent and self reliant." – Gordon B. Hinckley (General Conference, April 1983)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Plan to build up your food supply just as you would a savings account… We urge you to do this prayerfully and do it now." – Ezra Taft Benson (General Conference, October 1980)

Thomas S. Monson said, "Noah heeded God's command to build an ark…that they might be saved from the floodwaters. Yet there was no evidence of rain and flood. His actions were considered irrational. The sun was shining and life moved forward as usual. But time ran out. The floods came, the disobedient were drowned. When God speaks and we obey, we will always be right." – Thomas S. Monson (October 2002 Ensign)

Heber C. Kimball said, "Will you be slack, brethren, and let the evil come upon us, when we forewarn you of the future events that are coming;… We are telling of what the prophets have said-of what the Lord has said to Joseph. Wake up now, wake up, O Israel, and lay up your grain and your stores. I tell you that there is trouble coming upon the world…" – Heber C. Kimball (Journal of Discourses, vol. 4, p. 336-9)

Brigham Young said, "A great many have taken this counsel, and they are prepared…Who is deserving of praise? The persons who take care of themselves, or the ones who always trust in the great mercies of the Lord to take care of them? It is just as consistent to expect that the Lord will

supply us with fruit when we do not plant the trees; or that, when we do not plow and sow and are saved the labor of harvesting, we should cry to the Lord to save us from want, as to ask Him to save us from the consequences of our own folly, disobedience and waste…"The Lord has said, 'Gather and save the produce I put within your reach, and prepare against a day of want."- Brigham Young (Journal of Discourses, vol. 12, p. 244)

D&C 6:34, 36: "Fear not little flock; do good; let earth and hell combine against you, for **if ye are built upon my rock, they cannot prevail**. . .Look unto me in every thought; doubt not, fear not."

Church Articles on Preparedness

1) Pres. Gordon B. Hinckley, "Living in the Fulness of Times," Ensign, Nov. 2001
2) Lenet Hadley Read, "The Golden Plates and the Feast of Trumpets," Ensign, Jan. 2000
3) Elder Henry B. Eyring, "Let Us Raise A Voice of Warning," Ensign, Nov. 1998 and Jan. 2009
4) Elder Boyd K. Packer, "Counsel to Youth," Ensign, Nov 2011
5) Pres. Boyd K. Packer, "Counsel to Young Men," Ensign, May 2009
6) Pres. Ezra Taft Benson, "Prepare Yourselves for the Great Day of the Lord," BYU Devotional, April 1981
7) Pres. Thomas S. Monson, "Are We Prepared?," Ensign, Sep. 2014
8) Pres. Dieter F. Uchtdorf, "Providing in the Lord's Way," Ensign, Nov. 2011
9) Pres. Henry B. Eyring, "Finding Safety in Counsel," Ensign, April 1997 and June 2008
10) President Thomas S. Monson, "Dare to Stand Alone," Ensign, Nov. 2011
11) President Ezra Taft Benson, "In His Steps," CES Fireside, Feb. 1987; "In His Steps," BYU Devotional 1979
12) Elder David A. Bednar, "Who's on the Lord's Side? Now is the Time to Show," BYU-I Education Week Address, July 2010

13) Pres. Thomas S. Monson, “A Word at Closing,” Ensign, April 2010
14) Pres. Spencer W. Kimball, “Faith Precedes the Miracle,” pg. 253
15) Pres. Gordon B. Hinckley, “To the Boys and Men,” Ensign, Nov. 1998
16) Pres. Gordon B. Hinckley, “The Times in Which We Live,” Ensign, Nov. 2001
17) Pres. Gordon B. Hinckley, “If Ye Are Prepared Ye Shall Not Fear,” Ensign, Nov. 2005
18) Elder Ezra Taft Benson, “Prepare Ye,” Ensign, Jan. 1974
19) Pres. James E. Faust, “The Responsibility for Welfare Rests with Me and My Family,” Ensign, May 1986
20) Bishop Victor L. Brown, “Prepare Every Needful Thing,” Ensign, Nov. 1980
21) Pres. Thomas S. Monson, “That Noble Gift – Love At Home, May 2001
22) Pres. Ezra Taft Benson, “Prepare for the Days of Tribulation,” Ensign, Nov. 1980
23) The First Presidency and the Council of the Twelve Apostles, “The Family: A Proclamation to the World,” read by President Gordon B. Hinckley, Sep. 23, 1995
24) Bishop Keith B. McMullin, “Lay Up In Store,” Ensign, May 2007
25) First Presidency, “All is Safely Gathered In, Family Home Storage,” Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints, 2007
26) Pres. Thomas S. Monson, “Closing Remarks,” Ensign, Nov. 2009

For an excellent collection of quotes of the prophets on the questions of preservation of the saints in the last days and wickedness among the saints, see https://josephsmithfoundation.org/saints-will-the-saints-be-preserved-from-the-calamities-of-the-last-days.

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF TRIALS, PERSECUTION, EVIL GOVERNMENT, & NEEDED CLEANSING

Persecution & Apostasy: Scriptures

Matt. 24:7-12: **7** For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places.
8 All these *are* the beginning of sorrows.
9 Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake.
10 And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another.
11 And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many.
12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold.

1 Ne. 8:26-28: **26** And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.
27 And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.
28 And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

Luke 6:22-23: 22 Blessed are ye, when men shall hate you, and when they shall separate you *from their company*, and shall reproach *you*, and cast out your name as evil, for the Son of man's sake. 23Rejoice ye in that day, and leap for joy: for, behold, your reward *is* great in heaven: for in the like manner did their fathers unto the prophets.

2 Cor. 12:10: 10 Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong.

Luke 21:12-13: 12 But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute *you*, delivering *you* up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake. 13And it shall turn to you for a testimony.

2 Tim. 3:12: 12Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.

3 Ne. 12:10: **10** And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

2 Ne. 30:8-10: **8** And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.
9 And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

D&C 101:35: **35** And all they who suffer persecution for my name, and endure in faith, though they are called to lay down their lives for my sake yet shall they partake of all this glory.

3 Ne. 18:15: **15** Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

D&C 112:24-26: **24** Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth, a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation; and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth, saith the Lord.
25 And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord;
26 First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.

D&C 122:7-8: **7** And if thou shouldst be cast into the pit, or into the hands of murderers, and the sentence of death passed upon thee; if thou be cast into the deep; if the billowing surge conspire against thee; if fierce winds become thine enemy; if the heavens gather blackness, and all the elements combine to hedge up the way; and above all, if the very jaws of hell shall gape open the mouth wide after thee, know thou, my son, that all these things shall give thee experience, and shall be for thy good.
8 The Son of Man hath descended below them all. Art thou greater than he?

Persecution & Apostasy: Introductory Quotes



President Russel M Nelson said, "Sadly, **some who you thought were your friends will betray you.** And some things will **simply** seem **unfair**." (President Russel M Nelson, April 2020 Ensign, "The Future of the Church: Preparing the World for the Savior's Second Coming" https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/ensign/2020/04/the-future-of-the-church-preparing-the-world-for-the-saviors-second-coming?lang=eng)

Russel M Nelson said, "Why do we need such resilient faith? Because difficult days are ahead. Rarely in the future will it be easy or popular to be a faithful Latter-day Saint. Each of us will be tested. The Apostle Paul warned that **in the latter days, those who diligently follow the Lord 'shall suffer persecution'** [2 Timothy 3:12]. That very persecution can **either crush you into silent weakness or motivate you to be more exemplary and courageous** in your daily lives." (Russell M. Nelson, "Face the Future with Faith," Ensign or Liahona, May 2011, 35–36.)

Elder Bruce R McConkie said, "Nor are the days of our greatest sorrows and our deepest sufferings all behind us. They too lie ahead. We shall yet face greater perils, we shall yet be tested with more severe trials, and we shall yet weep **more tears of sorrow than we have ever known** before…the vision of the future is not all sweetness and light and peace. All that is yet to be shall go forward in the midst of **greater evils and perils and desolations than have been known** on earth at any time…The way ahead is dark and dreary and dreadful. There **will yet be martyrs**; the doors in Carthage shall again enclose the innocent. We have not been promised that the trials and evils of the world will entirely pass us by." (The Coming Tests and Trials of Glory by Elder Bruce R McConkie, April 1980 General Conference; https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1980/04/the-coming-tests-and-trials-and-glory?lang=eng)

Elder Bruce R McConkie said, "It may be, for instance, that nothing except the power of faith and the authority of the priesthood can save individuals and congregations from the **atomic holocausts that surely shall**

be... **We do not say that all of the Saints will be spared** and saved from the coming day of desolation. **But we do say there is no promise of safety and no promise of security except for those who love the Lord and who are seeking to do all** that he commands." (Bruce R McConkie, Stand Independent above All Other Creatures)

President Packer, referring to progressive attacks on church doctrine, warned that not all the persecution against the saints comes from outside of the church. He said, "Atheists and agnostics make nonbelief their religion and today organize in unprecedented ways to attack faith and belief. They are now organized, and they pursue political power. You will be hearing much about them and from them. Much of their attack is indirect in mocking the faithful, in mocking religion. The types of Sherem, Nehor, and Korihor live among us today (see Jacob 7:1–21; Alma 1:1–15; Alma 30:6–60). Their arguments are not so different from those in the Book of Mormon. You who are young will see many things that will try your courage and test your faith. **All of the mocking does not come from outside of the Church.** Let me say that again: All of the mocking does not come from outside of the Church. Be careful that you do not fall into the category of mocking." (President Boyd K Packer, Jan. 16 2007 Lehi's Dream and You - Boyd K. Packer - BYU Speeches, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/boyd-k-packer/lehis-dream/)

Elder Benson taught that the Church is not divided, there's just people who aren't in harmony with it, and yes, they write in our Church publications. Benson said, Sometimes we hear someone refer to a division in the Church. In reality, **the Church is not divided**. It simply means that there are some who, for the time being at least, are **members of the Church but not in harmony with it.** These people have a **temporary** membership and influence in the Church; but unless they repent, they will be missing when the final membership records are recorded. It is well that our people understand this principle, so they will not be misled by those apostates **within the Church** who have not yet repented or been cut off. But there is a cleansing coming. The Lord says that his vengeance shall be poured out "upon the inhabitants of the earth . . . And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord; First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me" (D&C 112:24-26). I look forward to that cleansing; **its need within the Church is becoming increasingly apparent. Not only are**

there apostates within our midst, but there are also apostate doctrines that are sometimes taught in our classes and from our pulpits and that appear in our publications. And these apostate precepts of men cause our people to stumble. As the Book of Mormon, speaking of our day, states: ". . . they have all gone astray save it a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men" (2 Ne. 28: 14). The world worships the learning of man. They trust in the arm of flesh. To them, men's reasoning is greater than God's revelations. The precepts of man have gone so far in subverting our educational system that in many cases a higher degree today, in the so-called social sciences, can be tantamount to a major investment in error. Very few men build firmly enough on the rock of revelation to go through this kind of an indoctrination and come out untainted. Unfortunately, of those who succumb, some use their higher degree to get teaching positions even in our Church educational system, where they spread the falsehoods they have been taught. President Joseph F. Smith was right when he said that false educational ideas would be one of the three threats to the Church within (Gospel Doctrine, pp. 312-13)." (Ezra Taft Benson, To The Humble Followers of Christ, April 1969, http://www.gapages.com/divided.htm)

In the same address, **Benson** equates Jesus' appointing with Judas the traitor with elements existing in the latter-day church. He said, "The Lord strengthened the faith of the early apostles by pointing out Judas as a traitor, even before this apostle had completed his iniquitous work (John 13:21-30). So also **in our day** the Lord has told us of the **tares within the wheat** that will **eventually be hewn** down when they are fully ripe." (Ezra Taft Benson, To The Humble Followers of Christ, April 1969, http://www.gapages.com/divided.htm)

Ezra Taft Benson quoted **President Kimball** in teaching that many in the church reject the current prophet and try to get the prophet to not speak on evolution etc. He said, "It is the living Prophet who really upsets the world. "**Even in the Church**", said President Kimball, "many are prone to garnish the sepulchers of yesterday's prophets **and mentally stone the living ones**." Why? Because the living prophet gets at what we need to know now, and the world prefers that prophets either be dead or mind their own business. Some so-called experts of political science want the prophet to keep still on

politics. **Some would-be authorities on evolution want the prophet to keep still on evolution**. And so the list goes on." (Elder Ezra Taft Benson, The 14 Fundamentals of Following the Prophet; https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson/fourteen-fundamentals-following-prophet/)

Elder Neal A. Maxwell also warned of these wolves among the flock. He said, "True, the enemies and the critics of the Lord's work will not relent; they only regroup. **Even among the flock**, here and there and from time to time, are a few wolves, wearing various styles of sheep's clothing—ironically, just before the shearing season! A few defectors and "high-minded" traitors (2 Tim. 3:4) even go directly to the "great and spacious building" to hire on (1 Ne. 8:26). Their recruits are celebrated and feted until—like their predecessors—they have faded into the dark swamps of history." ("For I Will Lead You Along" By Elder Neal A. Maxwell, Apr. 1988, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/1988/04/for-i-will-lead-you-along?lang=eng)

Elder Maxwell further encourages us to stay on the right course, knowing that these worldly philosophers will be overturned. He said, "We surely have been warned and forewarned about **our time**, a period in which the compression of challenges may make a year seem like a decade. Members **will be** cleverly mocked and scorned by those in the "**great and spacious building**," representing the pride of the world (1 Ne. 8:26, 1 Ne. 11:36). No matter, for ere long, **He** who was raised on the third day will raze that spacious but third-class hotel!" (Elder Neal A. Maxwell, "Overcome … Even As I Also Overcame" Apr. 1987)

In case we had any doubt about who was in that great and spacious building, **President Monson** specifically identified it as those who reject scripture. He said, "**The great and spacious building** in Lehi's vision represents those in the world who mock God's word and who ridicule those who **embrace** it and who **love** the Savior and **live** the commandments." (President Thomas S. Monson, *May You Have Courage,* April, 2009)

In our rejection of worldly philosophers, Church leaders can stand as a guide for taking the right direction. Elder **Ezra Taft Benson** taught, "If we want to know how well we stand with the Lord, then let us ask ourselves how well we stand with His mortal captain. **How closely do our lives harmonize**

with the words of the Lord's anointed — the living Prophet, the President of the Church, and with the Quorum of the First Presidency?" (Elder Ezra Taft Benson, The 14 Fundamentals of Following the Prophet, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson/fourteen-fundamentals-following-prophet/)

Ezra Taft Benson warned against brainwashing at college, particularly in the social sciences. He said, "in many cases a higher degree today, in the **so-called social sciences**, can be tantamount to a **major investment in error**. Very few men build firmly enough on the rock of revelation to go through this kind of **indoctrination** and come out untainted. Unfortunately, of those who succumb, some use their higher degree to get teaching positions even in our Church Educational System, where **they spread the falsehoods** they have been taught." (ET Benson Teachings p.319)

Elder Neal A. Maxwell, BYU Speeches, October 10, 1978: "But make no mistake about it, brothers and sisters; in the months and years ahead, events will require of each member that he or she decide whether or not he or she will follow the First Presidency. Members will find it **more difficult to halt longer between two opinions** (see 1 Kings 18:21).

Heber C. Kimball, Deseret News, May 23, 1931**:** "An army of Elders will be sent to the four quarters of the earth to search out the righteous and warn the wicked of what is coming. All kinds of religions will be started and miracles performed that will deceive the very elect if that were possible. Our sons and daughters must live pure lives so as to be prepared for what is coming. After a while the gentiles will gather by the thousands to this place, and Salt Lake City will be classed among the wicked cities of the world. A spirit of speculation and extravagance will take possession of the Saints, and the results will be financial bondage. Persecution comes next and all true Latter-day Saints will be tested to the limit. Many will apostatize and others will be still not knowing what to do. Darkness will cover the earth and gross darkness the minds of the people. The judgments of God will be poured out on the wicked to the extent that our Elders from far and near will be called home, or in other words the gospel will be taken from the Gentiles and later on carried to the Jews. The western boundary of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that as President Young tells us, when you return to that place, there will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail. Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to tests that will try the integrity of the best of them. *The pressure will become so great that the more righteous among them will cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance comes*. Then the prophet and others will make their appearance and those who have remained faithful will be selected to return

to Jackson County, Missouri, and take part in the upbuilding of that beautiful city, the New Jerusalem:"

Heber C. Kimball, Dec 13, 1857, Journal of Discourses, 6:126**:** "The world is ripe, and there are no saving principles within them, with a very few exceptions; and they [the righteous] will gather out, and the rest of mankind are ready for destruction, for they will have no salt to save them. I know the day is right at hand when men will forfeit their priesthood and turn against us and against the covenants they have made, and they will be destroyed as Judas was."

Ezra Taft Benson said, "There is a real sifting going on in the Church, and it is going to become more pronounced with the passing of time. It will sift the wheat from the tares, because we face some difficult days, the like of which we have never experienced in our lives. And those days are going to require faith and testimony and family unity, the like of which we have never had." (The Teachings of Ezra Taft Benson, p. 107. 1974.)

Ezra Taft Benson, Conference Report, April 1969**:** "Sometimes we hear someone refer to a division in the Church. In reality, the Church is not divided. It simply means that there are some who, for the time being at least, are members of the Church but not in harmony with it. These people have a temporary membership and influence in the Church; but unless they repent, they will be missing when the final membership records are recorded. It is well that our people understand this principle, so they will not be misled by those apostates within the Church who have not yet repented or been cut off. But there is a cleansing coming. The Lord says that his vengeance shall be poured out "upon the inhabitants of the earth. . . . And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord; First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me. . . ." (D&C 112:24-26.)

J. Reuben Clark, Conference Report, April 1949**:** "The ravening wolves are amongst us, from our own membership, and they, more than any others, are clothed in sheep's clothing because they wear the habiliments of the priesthood. . . . We should be careful of them. . . ."

Neal A. Maxwell: "President Marion G. Romney said, many years ago, that he had "never hesitated to follow the counsel of the Authorities of the Church even though it crossed my social, professional or political life" (in Conference Report, Apr. 1941, p. 123). This is a hard doctrine, but it is a particularly vital doctrine in a society which is becoming more wicked. In short, brothers and sisters, not being ashamed of the gospel of Jesus Christ

includes not being ashamed of the prophets of Jesus Christ! ... Your discipleship may see the time when such religious convictions are discounted... This new irreligious imperialism seeks to disallow certain opinions simply because those opinions grow out of religious convictions. Resistance to abortion will be seen as primitive. Concern over the institution of the family will be viewed as untrendy and unenlightened... If people, however, are not permitted to advocate, to assert, and to bring to bear, in every legitimate way, the opinions and views they hold which grow out of their religious convictions, what manner of men and women would we be? Our founding fathers did not wish to have a state church established nor to have a particular religion favored by government. They wanted religion to be free to make its own way. But neither did they intend to have irreligion made into a favored state church... Before the ultimate victory of the forces of righteousness, some skirmishes will be lost. Even in these, however, let us leave a record so that the choices are clear, letting others do as they will in the face of prophetic counsel. There will also be times, happily, when a minor defeat seems probable, but others will step forward, having been rallied to rightness by what we do. We will know the joy, on occasion, of having awakened a slumbering majority of the decent people of all races and creeds which was, till then, unconscious of itself. Jesus said that when the fig trees put forth their leaves, "summer is nigh" (Matt. 24:32). Thus warned that summer is upon us, let us not then complain of the heat!" (Neal A. Maxwell, "Meeting the Challenges of Today," BYU Devotional, October 10, 1978. This is a great talk, go read it.)

Neal A. Maxwell, October 1982 General Conference**:** Alas, brothers and sisters, we likewise live in a time when the love of many will wax cold. (See D&C 45:27; Matt. 24:12.) Fear will therefore increase. Why? Because when men fear, it is because we are not perfect in love. (See 1 Jn. 4:18; Moro. 8:16.) The less love, the more fear—as well as the more war! As with Paul, however, we may be perplexed, but we are not in despair. (See 2 Cor. 4:8.) For if we are prepared spiritually, we need not fear. (See D&C 38:30.) Even so, the Lord has made no secret of the fact that He intends to try the faith and the patience of His Saints. (See Mosiah 23:21.) We mortals are so quick to forget the Lord: "And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions … they will not remember him." (Hel. 12:3.) However, the Lord knows our bearing capacity, both as to coping and to comprehending, and He will not give us more to bear than we can manage at the moment, though to us it may seem otherwise. (See D&C 50:40; D&C 78:18.) Just as no temptations will come to us from which we cannot escape

or which we cannot bear, we will not be given more trials than we can sustain. (See 1 Cor. 10:13.)

To those who are allergic to taking a stand on matters like this, remember that just this year Elder **Ronald A. Rasband** urged the saints to be **proactive** in **defending prophetic teachings**. He said, referring to the prophet, **"We do not sit quietly by but actively defend him."** (October 2024 General Conference)

Church founder and dispensation head **Joseph Smith** was not shy of correcting the learned. He said, "I wish to correct an error among men that profess to be learned, liberal and wise; and I do it the more cheerfully because I hope **sober-thinking** and **sound-reasoning** people will sooner listen to the voice of truth than be led astray by the vain pretensions of the self-wise." (https://www.josephsmithpapers.org/paper-summary/history-of-joseph-smith/67)

J. Golden Kimball recounted a teaching of his father Heber. He said, "I claim not to be a prophet, but **I am a son of a prophet**, and I expect to give you evidence-whether you question the truth of it or not-that shall be left with you-that Heber C. Kimball was a prophet of God. President Brigham Young on more than one occasion said: 'Heber is my prophet, and I love to hear him prophesy.' In May, 1868-that is sixty-two years ago–he said: '**After a while the gentiles will gather in Salt Lake City by the thousands, and this will be among the wicked cities of the world."** *J. Golden Kimball, conference address in 1930*

Note that in the same address as mentioned above, J. Golden recounds Heber also saying: "Before that day [of Missouri being swept clean] comes, however, the Saints will be put to the test that will try the very best of them. The pressure will become so great that the righteous among us will cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance comes."

(The original J. Golden Kimball 1930 report is available at https://dn721808.ca.archive.org/0/items/conferencereport1930sa/conferencereport1930sa.pdf look for pages 58-61) (Also in a more legible format available at https://blog.jacobhouseholder.com/archive/j-golden-kimball-son-of-a-prophet/)

Brigham Young spoke of the time when **the Lord will "purge the land…cut off the evil doer, and prepare a way for the return of my**

people to their inheritance," and added that "if our enemies do not cease **their oppression upon this people**, as sure as the Lord lives it will not be many days before **we will occupy that land [of Zion] and there build up a Temple** to the Lord." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 9:270)

Stay with Church Leadership Majority & Records: Joseph Smith, Supporting Scriptures & Quotes on Church Governed by Common Consent (Majority)

Joseph Smith said, "I will give you a key that will never rust, if you will stay with the majority of the Twelve Apostles, and the records of the Church, you will never be led astray." (Cited in https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/1994/10/the-keys-that-never-rust?lang=eng)

Here are quotes of others remembering Joseph teaching this doctrine from the Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith manual chapter 27: (https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/teachings-joseph-smith/chapter-27?lang=eng)

Orson Hyde, a member of the Quorum of the Twelve, said: "Joseph the Prophet … said, 'Brethren, remember that the majority of this people will never go astray; and as long as you keep with the majority you are sure to enter the celestial kingdom.'"

William G. Nelson said: "I have heard the Prophet speak in public on many occasions. In one meeting I heard him say: 'I will give you a key that will never rust,—if you will stay with the majority of the Twelve Apostles, and the records of the Church, you will never be led astray.' The history of the Church has proven this to be true."

Ezra T. Clark said: "I heard the Prophet Joseph say that he would give the Saints a key whereby they would never be led away or deceived, and that was: The Lord would never suffer a majority of this people to be led away or deceived by imposters, nor would He allow the records of this Church to fall into the hands of the enemy."

This teaching jives with revelations in the D&C. A blog called "Ether's Cave" by Mark Roper compiled the following list of references: "In the Doctrine and Covenants teaches that the Church is the governed by the Law of Common Consent (D&C 20:65; 26:2; 28:13; 38:34; 41:9; 51:4; 124:144)." See https://etherscave.blogspot.com/2014/10/a-key-that-will-never-rust-majority-of.html for more analysis.

Here are supporting quotations on this subject, also supplied in the Mark Roper essay mentioned above:

Orson Hyde said, "Joseph Smith said, some know that this work is of God, and some may not know, but if they believe the testimony of those who do know and follow on they will go into the Celestial kingdom. He also said, ***always follow the majority of the church, for they will never go wrong***. It is not by reason and philosophy, which are after the world, that will regulate His church, but God will regulate it by the power of the Holy Ghost through his representative on the earth. If any people on the earth have reason to be faithful to god in all things it is the people of the Latter-day Saints, who have in their midst His living oracles." (Orson Hyde, 11 September, 1867, in *Deseret News*, 25 September, 1867. Emphasis added).

Orson Hyde said, "[It] reminds me of the words of Joseph the Prophet, when he said, "Brethren, remember that ***the majority of this people will never go astray***; and as long as you ***keep with the majority*** you are sure to enter the celestial kingdom." (Orson Hyde, 5 May 1870, *JD* 13:367. Emphasis added).

Edward Stevenson said, "The writer [Edward Stevenson] heard the Prophet say on the stand at the east end of the Nauvoo Temple, that the time was coming, when there would be many dissensions from the Church. "But," said he, "I now see the time which I have long desired to see. Let me go where I may, the Gospel tree is planted never more to be rooted up, for there are those present who are prepared to carry on the Gospel, whatever may become of me." He also said: "***I will give you a key by which you may never be deceived***, if you will observe these facts: Where the true church is, there will also be a majority of the saints, and the records and history of the

Church also." (Andrew Jenson and Edward Stevenson, *Infancy of the Church*, [1889], 5).

Ezra T. Clark said, "I heard the Prophet Joseph say he would give the Saints ***a key whereby they would never be led away or deceived***, and that was: the Lord would never suffer the majority of this people to be led away or deceived by impostors, nor would he allow the records of this church to fall into the hands of the enemy." (Ezra T. Clark, *I.E.* 5 [January 1902]: 202).

William G. Nelson recalled the teaching of Joseph Smith to say, "***I will give you a key that will never rust***. If you will ***stay with the majority of the twelve apostles***, and the records of the church, you will never be led astray." (William G. Nelson recollection, *YWJ* 17 [December 1906]: 543).

William G. Nelson said, "My brother William and I were baptized into the Church by the Prophet Joseph during the summer of 1842. I well remember many of the sayings of the Prophet which are on record in the Church. But one I will mention here. He said: "***I will give you a key that will never rust***; if you will ***stay with the majority of the twelve Apostles, and the records of the Church***, you will never be led astray." ("William Goforth Nelson," Mormon Biography File Church Archives, Salt Lake City, Utah).

Lyman O. Littlefield said, "Once in Nauvoo I heard the Prophet declare to the people how they might *always* know where to find the true Church. He gave it as a guide for them ever afterwards, and said they day would come when they would need it. He said: "Factions and parties will arise out of this Church, and apostates will lead away many. But in the midst of all this, ***keep with the majority, for the true leaders of God's people will always be able to have a majority, and the records of the Church will be with them. Keep with the majority, for where the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together.***" (Lyman O. Littlefield, *Millennial Star* 45/25 [18 June, 1883]: 389. Emphasis added).

Mosiah Hancock said, "Brother Joseph gave us to understand that it was our duty to follow the Twelve. ***The majority of this people will be right***; but when you see people thirsting for the blood of the Saints, you may know they are not right." (Autobiography of Mosiah Hancock, 28. Emphasis added).

Brigham Young said, "Among a great many other things he said, and he had a foreboding that he would be betrayed into the hands of his enemies. "I will give you a key to govern your actions if I should be slain by my enemies. If ever this transpires, some persons will stand forth who honor and hold the keys of the holy priesthood, and ***the main body of the people*** will follow that individual. You may depend upon this." many of your are witnesses with regard to the truth of this saying." (Brigham Young Address, 7 October 1863, HDC, Ms d 1234 Box 49, folder11. Emphasis added).

Brigham Young said, "Joseph Smith said that ***where the keys of the Kingdom were, there would be the place to gather. Wherever the Twelve and Council are, there will the keys be, and the place of gathering."*** (Brigham Young, 3 May, 1846, Manuscript History of Brigham Young, 149-52)

W. W. Phelps said, "It takes a ***majority*** of any quorum, according to the order of God, as declared in the Doctrine & Covenants, which I hold in my hand, and the common consent of the whole church, to make any act valid; every ordination, therefore made by Sidney Rigdon, he being one only out of a quorum of three, even if he had not otherwise transgressed is illegal" (Trial of Sidney Rigdon, *Times & Seasons* 5/18 [1 October, 1844]: 663).

Oliver Cowdery said, "***Brother Hyde has just said that it was all important that we keep in the true channel in order to avoid the sand bars. This is true. The channel is here***. The priesthood is here. I was present with Joseph when a holy angel from God came down from heaven and conferred, or restored, the Aaronic Priesthood and said at the same time that it should remain upon the earth while the earth stands. ***I was also present with Joseph when the Melchizedek Priesthood was conferred by the holy angels of God which we then confirmed on each other by the will and commandment of God. This Priesthood is also to remain upon the earth until the last remnant of time***." (Oliver Cowdery, Reuben Miller Journal, 21 October, 1848. Emphasis added).

Oliver Cowdery, who had just arrived from Wisconsin with his family, on being invited, addressed the meeting. He bore testimony in the most positive terms of the truth of the Book of Mormon, the restoration of the priesthood

to the earth, and the mission of Joseph Smith as the prophet of the last days. And told the people if they wanted to follow the right path, to ***keep in the main channel of the stream–where the body of the Church goes, there is the authority***; and all these lo here's and lo there's, have no authority. But this people have the holy priesthood, "***for the angel said unto Joseph Smith, Jr., in my hearing, that this priesthood shall remain on earth unto the end***" (George A. Smith to Orson Pratt, Council Bluffs, Iowa, 20 October 1848, *MS* 11 [1849]: 14. Emphasis added).

Phineas Young reported, "O. Cowdery is dead. His last testimony will never be forgotten by many. He said to his friend, ***[there] was no salvation but in the valley and through the priesthood there."*** (Phineas Young to Brigham Young, Kanesville, 25 April 1850).

George A. Smith said, "Oliver Cowdery said to the people, when he came to Pottawotamie and requested to be restored to the Church, "Follow the Twelve: they are the men with whom the priesthood rests. ***If you follow the main channel of the stream, you will go right***; but if you run into a bayou, you will find yourself among snags."" (George A. Smith, 10 January 1858, *JD* 7:117. Emphasis added).

Oliver Cowdery said, "This Gospel is the "stone taken from the mountain without hands." John the Baptist, holding the keys of the Aaronic Priesthood; Peter, James, and John, holding the keys of the Melchisedek Priesthood, have ministered for those who shall be heirs of salvation, and with these administrations ordained men to the same Priesthoods. ***These Priesthoods, with their authority, are now, and must continue to be, in the body of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints***. Blessed is the Elder who received the same, and thrice blessed and holy is he who shall endure to the end." (Oliver Cowdery to Samuel W. Richards, 13 January 1849, *IE* 2 [December 1898]: 95-96. Emphasis added).

Elder H. Verlan Andersen on The Apostasy (of Members) Of The Latter Days

Note: By including an excerpt of this writing by Andersen, I do not suggest the church going into apostacy, but members of it doing so.

(Excerpts from *Chapter 18 of The Great and Abominable Church of the Devil, by H. Verlan Andersen, of The First Quorum of Seventy, 1914 - 1992)*

HISTORY WARNS THAT APOSTASY MUST BE EXPECTED

Religious history testifies that, with the single exception of the inhabitants of the City of Enoch, no people to whom the gospel has been given have remained faithful to their covenants for more than a few generations. Time after time the Lord has established his church among a group who have lived his commandments for a few years and then fallen away thus bringing upon themselves his judgments. This cycle of human folly which so many prophets have noted, has repeated itself with such consistent regularity that any group which finds itself to be the favored recipients of the gospel would do well to assume that their own apostasy is certain and the only question about it is how long it will take.

Christ, who as governor of the world, has the painful duty of punishing transgression, has spoken of the infidelity of the House of Israel and the frequency with which they have rejected him. Just before he made his appearance to those righteous Nephites who survived the terrible disaster inflicted upon their nation, he uttered these words of anguish:

"O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you. And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; ... how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not." (3 Nephi 10:4-5)

To the Jews the Lord said:

"O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how oft would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!" (Matt. 23:37)

The fact that the Lord has found it necessary to restore his gospel so many times is in itself evidence of the regularity with which apostasy has occurred because the only thing which will cause the destruction of his Church is the wickedness of its members. As the angel told Alma who had been trying to destroy the Lord's work among the Nephites:

"Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord has said: "This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people." (Messiah 27:13)

The prophet, Mormon, whose labor as a historian gave him the opportunity to observe the frequency of the righteousness - wickedness - punishment cycle, spoke of it as though it were a law of life which operates as a certain consequence of a universal human weakness. His analysis of apostasy and its causes should interest us deeply:

"And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him. Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold and silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies ... yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, .. and this because of their ease and exceedingly great prosperity. And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him. O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil and devilish and how quick to do iniquity and how slow to do good, are the children of men..." (Helaman. 12:1-4)

ARE THE CONDITIONS WHICH ORDINARILY ACCOMPANY APOSTASY PRESENT TO DAY?

Do the words of Mormon quoted above have application today? If "ease" and "exceedingly great prosperity" are certain to cause people to "forget the Lord their God," then the Church is in deep trouble because seldom, if ever, has any group been as prosperous as it is today. Its beginnings were humble enough. Starting in 1830 with an initial membership of six, the Church was persecuted, its property destroyed and confiscated, its leaders slain, and the people finally driven into a forbidding wilderness before they could find a measure of peace. But all that has now changed. After 140 years of growth, membership numbers in the millions, persecution has long vanished, and instead of ostracism, members are, for the most part accepted and respected.

These conditions in prior dispensations have been sure signs of weakened faith. To fail to consider the possibility that the members of the Church are again "falling away" would be to ignore one of the most thoroughly

documented lessons of history. Especially is this true in light of the fact that the cultural, political, and educational life of Church members has become so deeply and thoroughly involved with that of non-members that they are being overwhelmingly influenced by the "ways of the world." Through newspapers and magazines, motion pictures and television, schools and lecture halls, and a thoroughly integrated economic system, Church members come into close and continuous contact with those not of their faith.

Some may assume that a "Gentile apostasy" in the latter days cannot occur because Christ's Church is here to stay this time. They may assume that widespread departure from the gospel principles by Church members is contrary to prophecy. While the scriptures do assure us that the Church will continue to exist and be divinely led by prophets of the Lord right up until his Second Coming, they do not state that all, or even a majority of its members will follow those prophets. On the contrary they foretell extensive, and in some cases, almost total defection from true principles. For example, we noted in the Lord's prophecy that only one-half of the small group he calls "virgins" will avoid being deceived and destroyed. Let us consider other scriptures which discuss this problem.

THE FAILURE OF PEOPLE TO RECOGNIZE THE SIGNS OF APOSTASY

In the great majority of cases where apostasy has occurred, it appears that people become wicked while believing themselves righteous. This happened time and again to the Children of Israel and the Nephites, and was plainly evident in the case of the Jews at the time of Christ. There are recorded exceptions to this rule. For example, when the Nephites apostatized immediately prior to Christ"s visit, we are told:

"Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did willingly rebel against God."

(3 Nephi 6:18)

But the typical situation is described thus by Mormon as he commented on the frequency and rapidity with which a people who have been blessed forsake their Lord:

"...they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One--yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity."

(Helaman 12:2)

Prophecies regarding the Gentile apostasy of the latter days indicate that it will be the typical one wherein Church members will be led away by false beliefs into evil practices. Nephi had much to say regarding the event. Among other things he predicted that:

(1) "Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted...."

(Nephi 28:12)

(2) "The humble followers of Christ" will err in many instances because of being taught by the precepts of men. "

(2 Nephi 28:14)

(3) Some will be lulled away "into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; Zion prospereth, all is well--and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell."

(2 Nephi 28:21)

(4) Others will be deceived into believing that there is no devil and no hell." (2 Nephi 28:22)(5) There will be many who will say:

"Eat, drink and be merry; nevertheless, fear God--he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines..."

(Nephi 28:8-9)

TO EXERCISE UNRIGHTEOUS DOMINION

Each man desires to be free to spend his own money, manage his own home, operate his own farm or business, and otherwise conduct the affairs of his life which are personal to him. Usually he doesn't want others knowing about his personal affairs, much less does he want them using force and the threat thereof to dictate how he shall handle them. Therefore people are not inclined to intrude into one another's concerns---at least on a private level. It would not only be in poor taste, but criminal as well. But that which is seen so clearly when done by any individual becomes hidden when done as a group. When men act in the name of government, no person's property or business is sacred. No longer do they hesitate to deny others the privacy and freedom they desire for themselves. No longer is there any fear of retaliation or public condemnation to restrain them from exhibiting that disposition common to almost all men---the tendency to exercise unrighteous dominion.

Elder Packer: Organized Atheistic Attacks from In & Out of the Church

President Boyd K Packer said, **"Atheists and agnostics make nonbelief their religion and today organize in unprecedented ways to attack faith and belief. They are now organized, and they pursue political power. You will be hearing much about them and from them. Much of their attack is indirect in mocking the faithful, in mocking religion.** The types of Sherem, Nehor, and Korihor live among us today (see Jacob 7:1–21; Alma 1:1–15; Alma 30:6–60). Their arguments are not so different from those in the Book of Mormon. **You who are young will see many things that will try your courage and test your faith. All of the mocking does not come from outside of the Church.** Let me say that again: All of the mocking does not come from outside of the Church. Be careful that you do not fall into the category of mocking." (President Boyd K Packer, Jan. 16 2007 Lehi's Dream and You - Boyd K. Packer - BYU Speeches))

Note: In addition to citing atheists and agnostics as the source of these troubles, I would add Mormon apostates, and even church members who don't align their views with the scriptures and teachings of the prophets.

Note: In addition to promoting "non-belief," they attack the Church and western civilization.

Note: As we can see, you can't rely on your schools, your Churches, or anything else. You have to make your home the "ultimate combination of

sacred time and space." Church leaders are directing us to this with their recent emphasis on having our gospel learning be 'home-centered and church-supported.'The home will always be the most important place to learn and teach.

Elder Packer also taught: "The ultimate purpose of every teaching and activity in the Church is that parents and children are happy at home, sealed in an eternal marriage, and linked to their generations," he said. "The ultimate **purpose of the adversary . . . is to disrupt, disturb and destroy the home and family**."
(https://www.thechurchnews.com/1994/4/9/23257198/a-purpose-of-the-church-happiness-in-the-family/)

Scriptures: Some Want to Get the Saints in Trouble, Gather to Zion for Refuge, Avoid Beheading, Christ's Return Sooner than Think

Trouble: D&C 122:4, 7: 4 And although their influence shall cast thee into trouble, and into bars and walls, thou shalt be had in honor; and but for a small moment and thy voice shall be more terrible in the midst of thine enemies than the fierce lion, because of thy righteousness; and thy God shall stand by thee forever and ever.
7 And if thou shouldst be cast into the pit, or into the hands of murderers, and the sentence of death passed upon thee; if thou be cast into the deep; if the billowing surge conspire against thee; if fierce winds become thine enemy; if the heavens gather blackness, and all the elements combine to hedge up the way; and above all, if the very jaws of hell shall gape open the mouth wide after thee, know thou, my son, that all these things shall give thee experience, and shall be for thy good.

Refuge: D&C 115:6: 6 And that the gathering together upon the land of Zion, and upon her stakes, may be for a **defense**, and for a **refuge** from the storm, and from wrath when it **shall** be poured out without mixture upon the whole earth.

Why Refuge? Because the Beast will Behead People - Rev. 20:4: "and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for

the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years."

By Definition, Christ's Return is Sooner Than You Think: Mark 13:20: 20 And except that the Lord had shortened those days, no flesh should be saved: but for the elect's sake, whom he hath chosen, he hath shortened the days."

Deseret News Reports Heber C Kimball Prophecies: Deception, Persecution, Elders Called Home, Return of Joseph Smith, Gathering to Missouri

(Heber C. Kimball, First Counselor in the First Presidency, May **1868**, printed in the **Deseret News, 23 May 1931**; see also J. Golden Kimball's reading of these things in the Conference Report Oct. 1930 p. 58-59)

An army of Elders will be sent to the four quarters of the earth to search out the righteous and **warn the wicked of what is coming**. All kinds of religions will be started and **miracles performed that will deceive the very elect** if that were possible. Our sons and daughters must live pure lives so as to be prepared for what is coming. After a while the Gentiles will gather by the thousands to this place, and **Salt Lake City will be classed among the wicked cities of the world**. A spirit of **speculation and extravagance will take possession of the Saints, and the results will be financial bondage**.

Persecution comes next and all true Latter-day **Saints will be tested to the limit**. **Many will apostatize** and others will be still not knowing what to do. Darkness will cover the earth and gross darkness the minds of the people. The **judgments** of God will be poured out on the wicked to the extent that our **Elders from far and near will be called home**, or in other words the gospel will be taken from the Gentiles and later on carried to the Jews.

The western boundary of the State of **Missouri will be swept so clean** of its inhabitants that as President Young tells us, when you return to that place, there will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.

Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to a test that will try the integrity of the best of them. The **pressure will become so great that the more righteous among them will cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance** comes.

Then the Prophet **Joseph and others will make their appearance** and those who have remained faithful will be selected to return to Jackson County, Missouri and take part in the building of that beautiful city, the New Jerusalem.

(Heber C. Kimball, First Counselor in the First Presidency, May 1868, in Deseret News, 23 May 1931; see also see also J. Golden Kimball's reading of these things in the Conference Report Oct. 1930 p. 58-59)

Next we will look at another source for Heber C. Kimball's prophecies, namely what his son J. Golden Kimball related in a conference address in 1930:

J. Golden Kimball Relates Heber C. Kimball Prophecies from 1868 & 1856 in a Conference Report in 1930: Persecution Coming to the Saints to Test Their Limits, Won't Endure the Test on Borrowed Light; Missouri will Yet be Swept Clean

In a Conference Report in 1930, Heber's son J. Golden Kimball recounted many of Heber's prophecies.

Source: Conference Report 1930 by J. Golden Kimball p.58-61
(The original report is available at https://dn721808.ca.archive.org/0/items/conferencereport1930sa/conferencereport1930sa.pdf look for pages 58-61) (Also in a more legible format available at https://blog.jacobhouseholder.com/archive/j-golden-kimball-son-of-a-prophet/)

See also *Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox 1868.*

Here is a large portion of the J. Golden Kimball speech where he references Heber C. Kimball:

I claim not to be a prophet, but **I am a son of a prophet**, and I expect to give you evidence — whether you question the truth of it or not — that shall be left with you — that Heber C. Kimball was a prophet of God. **President Brigham Young on more than one occasion said: "Heber is my prophet, and I love to hear him prophesy**."

In May, **1868**—that is sixty-two years ago—he said: "After a while the **gentiles will gather in Salt Lake City** by the thousands, and this will be among the wicked cities of the world."

He said: "A spirit of speculation and **extravagance** will take possession of the **Saints**, and the results will be **financial bondage**."

He said: "An army of elders will be sent to the four quarters of the earth, to search out the righteous and warn the wicked of coming events. All kinds of religions will be started, and miracles performed that will deceive the very elect, if' such a thing were possible. **Persecution** comes next, and all Latter-day **Saints will be tested to the limit**. **Many will apostatize**, and others will stand still, not knowing what to do. Before the temple reaches the square our **brethren** will be **imprisoned**, until the penitentiary shall be full, and some of them will be removed to other penitentiaries. Mothers would weep for their husbands, and children would cry for their fathers. Some would die, and sorrow would fill the hearts of the Latter-day Saints. When the temple roof is on, the persecution will lessen, but when the temple is completed the power of the Evil One will be shut out. The prayers of the Saints will then be heard. The sick will be taken there and healed. The Spirit of God will rest upon the people, and work for the dead will be continued night and day. The judgments of God will be poured out upon the wicked, to the extent that our elders from far and near will be called home; or in other words, the Gospel will be taken from the gentiles, and later on will be carried to the Jews."

"The western boundaries of the State of **Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants** that as President Young tells us, **'when we return to that place there will not be as much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.' Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to the test that will try**

the very best of them. The pressure will become so great that the righteous among us will **cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance** comes."

In **1856**—that is seventy-four years ago—a small group of friends convened in the house of the Lord, called the Endowment House. The conversation was about the isolated condition of the Latter-dav Saints.

"Yes," said Brother Heber, "we think we are secure here in the chambers of these everlasting hills, where we can close the doors of the canyons against mobs and persecutors, the wicked and the vile, who have always beset us with violence and robbery, but I want to say to you, my brethren, the time is coming when we will be **mixed up in these now peaceful valleys to that extent that it will be difficult to tell the face of a Saint from the face of an enemy against the people of God.**"

"Then is the time to look out for the **great sieve, for there will be a great sifting time, and many will fall. For I say unto you there is a test, a Test, a TEST coming**."

He further said: 'This **Church has before it many close places through which it will have to pass before the work of God is crowned with glory**. The difficulties will be of such a character that the man or woman who does not possess a personal knowledge or witness will fall. If you have not got this testimony, you must live right and call upon the Lord, and cease not until you obtain it. Remember these sayings : The **time will come when no man or woman will be able to endure on borrowed light**. Each will **have to be guided by the light within themselves**. If you do not have the knowledge that Jesus is the Christ, how can you stand?"

Excerpt from Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox

Heber C Kimball (as reported by Amanda H. Wilcox in Salt Lake City in May 1868) said, “The western boundries of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that, as President Young tells us, when we return to that place, ‘There will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.’” (Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox, n.p., n.d., p. 6.)

Note: When citing the Alamda Wilcox recording of the Heber C. Kimball prophecy in his prophecy book, Crowther states (on page 45) that a copy of the prophecy is available in the BYU Library.

Note that Cleon Skousen quotes some of this prophecy in his book "Prophecy and Modern Times" pages 31-33.

See also http://jaredc.chaosnet.org/proph/amandawilcox.html

Notice: The saints are tested to the max BEFORE Missouri is cleansed for their return.

Notice: This prophecy was given AFTER the first US Civil War, suggesting a pending fulfillment.

Thought on the Validity of Heber's Prophecies

Some cast doubt on the Amanda Wilcox 1868 report since it's just her notes on the conversation with Heber C. Kimball.

However, Wilcox source aside, many have promoted the Heber C. Kimball prophecies as valid including J. Golden Kimball, Duane Crowther (see pages 91, 86, 32, 62, 64, 63 of his prophecy book), the Deseret News, Gerald Lund, Cleon Skousen, and many others.

I don't know if the Wilcox source is where all of these teachings are drawn from, but that's not the point.

The substance of Heber's message also aligns with the prophetic picture of events, and that's an important check to apply when weighing these kind of things. Isaiah makes it clear that the saints will be tried and tested before they can redeem Zion.

Joseph Smith said he's heard of man being damned for not believing enough, but he's never heard of a man for being damned for believing too much. In that spirit, I promote these prophecies which inspire the soul to take heart and gird up the loins for the trials to come.

Be they true or not, in your investigation and prayers on this matter, remember the tendency of the masses to cast doubt on teachings of the prophets any way they can to accommodate their comfortable worldview.

Note: Some have recently also cast doubt upon prophecies of John Taylor, but they too fit the prophetic picture perfectly and have been widely circulated by reputable sources.

Overview of Isaiah on Saints being Tried & Refined Before They Can Redeem Zion

Isaiah's teachings on the need for the saints to experience trials and refinement BEFORE redeeming Zion are clear.

As you review these teachings, ask yourself, have the saints been sufficiently tried and refined? Are they ready and able to build Zion? Do they have more or less faith and purity than the ancients and our pioneer ancestors? Have we as a people entirely committed ourselves to being God's peculiar people or do we try to fit in? Are we focused on building a distinctly Christian society, or do we merely lag a few steps behind Babylon's trends while attempting to accommodate some kind of moral multiculturalism?

Here are Isaiah passages to consider on the topic of the saints being tried and refined before they can redeem Zion:

Isaiah 1:25–27: 25 ¶ And I will turn my hand upon thee, and **purely purge away thy dross**, and take away all thy tin: 26 And I will restore thy judges **as at the first**, and thy counsellors **as at the beginning**: afterward thou shalt be called, **The city of righteousness,** the faithful city. 27 **Zion shall be redeemed with judgment**, and her converts with righteousness.

Isaiah 4:3–4: 3 And it shall come to pass, that **he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy**, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem: 4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.

Isaiah 48:10: 10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the **furnace of affliction**.

Isaiah 33:14–17: 14 The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. **Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire?** who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings? 15 He that walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that **stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil**; [note: think about what kind of TV we watch] 16 He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure. 17 Thine eyes shall see the king in his beauty: they shall behold the land that is very far off.

Isaiah 35:8–10: 8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The **way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass** over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. 9 No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: 10 And **the ransomed of the Lord shall return**, and come to Zion **with songs and everlasting joy** upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and **sorrow and sighing shall flee away**.

Isaiah 52:1–2: 1 Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O **Zion**; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: **for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.** 2 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

Isaiah 59:17–20: 17 For he put on righteousness as a breastplate, and an helmet of salvation upon his head; and he put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, and was clad with zeal as a cloak. 18 According to their deeds, accordingly he will repay, fury to his adversaries, recompence to his enemies; to the islands he will repay recompence. 19 So shall they fear the name of the Lord from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the **enemy shall come in like a flood**, the Spirit of the Lord shall lift up a standard against him. 20 ¶ And the **Redeemer shall come to Zion**, and **unto them that turn from transgression** in Jacob, saith the Lord.

Isaiah 60:21–22: 21 Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified. 22 **A little one shall become a thousand**, and a small one a strong nation: I the **Lord will hasten it in his time**.

Isaiah Teaches that Only a Small Remnant Tithe Will Remain

Isaiah 6:11–13: **11** Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be **wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man**, and the land be **utterly desolate**, **12** And the Lord have removed men far away, and *there be* **a great forsaking** in the midst of the land. **13** ¶ But yet in it ***shall be*** **a tenth**, and *it* shall return, and shall be eaten: as a teil tree, and as an oak, whose substance *is* in them, when they cast *their leaves: so* the holy seed *shall be* the substance thereof.

Isaiah 1:9: 9 Except the Lord of hosts had **left unto us a very small remnant**, we should have been as Sodom, *and* we should have been like unto Gomorrah.

Isaiah 10:20–22: **20** ¶ And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the **remnant** of Israel, and such as are **escaped** of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth. **21** The **remnant** shall return, *even* the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God. **22** For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, *yet* **a remnant of them shall return**: the **consumption decreed shall overflow** with righteousness.

Isaiah 24:1–6: 1 Behold, the **Lord maketh the earth empty**, and maketh it **waste**, and turneth it **upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants** thereof. **2** And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury, so with the giver of usury to him. **3** The **land shall be utterly emptied**, and **utterly spoiled**: for the Lord hath spoken this word. **4** The earth mourneth *and* fadeth away, the world languisheth *and* fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish. **5** The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they

have transgressed the
laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant. **6** Therefore hath the **curse devoured the earth**, and they **that dwell therein are desolate**: therefore the **inhabitants of the earth are burned, and <u>few men left</u>**.

Note: Exactly where Isaiah's cleansing takes place is not certain, but Isaiah specifically speaks of Zion being redeemed by judgement, so I believe it fits in BEFORE the New Jerusalem is redeemed. This also aligns with teachings of Heber C. Kimball and other prophets and visionaries.

Analysis on Missouri's Yet Future Cleansing (and the Cleansing of Everywhere Else): Not Entirely Fulfilled in Civil War 1, Refuge Will Yet Be Needed

Note that Heber C. Kimball's prophecies on Missouri being swept clean were made in 1868 which was AFTER the Civil War, which indicates that the prophecy of Missouri being swept clean was NOT fulfilled in the Civil War, and is yet pending. Heber puts the event of Missouri being cleansed in a sequence which has not yet come to pass. Yes there were some hard times there at the Civil War in Missouri to be sure, but harder times are yet coming on a much greater scale there.

General Doniphan thought that the Civil War fulfilled Joseph Smith's prophecy on the cleansing of Missouri, and BH Roberts promoted that perspective. Surely on some level it did. (Joseph said to Doniphan, "God's wrath hangs over Jackson County … and you will live to see the day when it will be visited by fire and sword. The fields and farms and houses will be destroyed, and only the chimneys will be left to mark the desolation.") (See Comprehensive History of the Church, 1:538–59) But I can't in good conscience say that is all there is to it, nor is Joseph's the only prophecy about the future of Missouri.

More cleansing is to come to Missouri and everywhere else in America, except, God willing, a few little pockets of refuge in the Rockies where God directed His Church, as predicted by several prophets. Zion (in Missouri)

cannot be redeemed until the Saints have been sufficiently tried and refined. Ask yourself, are we there? Do we care more or less about building a Christian society than our pioneer ancestors, who also weren't able to redeem Zion? The wicked must be swept from the area – has that happened? Go there today and report back to me as to whether you found any wickedness entrenched in the area. So until the saints are refined and the wicked are removed, God isn't done with the sweeping of Missouri.

President Brigham Young spoke of the time when the Lord will "purge the land…cut off the evil doer, and prepare a way for the return of my people to their inheritance," and added that "if our enemies do not cease their oppression upon this people, as sure as the Lord lives it will not be many days before we will occupy that land [of Zion] and there build up a Temple to the Lord." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 9:270) (See also Crowther Prophecy p.45)

Some say, 'then why are many saints impressed to move there?' I say, the same reason God tells anyone to go anywhere, to preach the gospel and gather Israel. God will send you to hell itself before he is through with it. And maybe He wants some things setup out there before the bottom falls out, who knows. There are many places now safe which will not be so in the future. In fact, most places probably fall under that category. Let us not underestimate the hard times that lie ahead in the cleansing of America to prepare her for her Zion destiny (Zion cannot involve compromise with evil. The art of compromise belongs to Babylon).

Several times church leaders have said wait until word comes from the brethren to gather to Missouri. If you want to go there, that's your prerogative, just as it is to go anywhere. Today there's a hands-off go wherever you want policy. Just don't get too comfortable, wherever you are. As Heber C. Kimball taught, tests are coming which will try the saints to the very core. We all (Utahns Missourians and everyone else) need to brace ourselves for the prophesied call to places of refuge.

The bottom and in some ways unfortunate line is this – America, all except a few pockets of it, will be swept clean. Refining fires must occur! Desolation is coming upon this country on a larger scale than any of us can possibly realistically imagine. If you think you're out of dodge in Missouri, Utah, or anywhere else, think again. All of these places have extremely hard times coming their way. Only those places the Lord has specifically prepared, to which He will call his people at the times of these judgements, will be spared. The main places of safety the Lord has referred to as being places of

refuge during the cleansing of America are in the Rocky Mountain Corridor, but even many parts of that will even need heavy refinement. (As Stauffenberg says in the Valkyrie movie, as the patriots are about to pay the ultimate price for their valor, "No one will be spared.") Your best bet is to get on God's side, and get really good at doing exactly what He tells you to, even when that means walking away from everything at a moment's notice, or 1000 other things in between. And don't fear death. Follow the spirit and the prophet, and God bless you!

Remember these prophetic teachings on safety in the Rocky Mountain Corridor during the cleansing of America:

- **Brigham Young** said, "**An inland Empire** will be **established in these valleys of the mountains**, which will be a **place of refuge for millions** of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgments of God comes upon the earth, and the righteous come here for safety. Our people will go East, West, North and South, but the day will come, when **they will be glad to come back**. We will be shut out from the rest of the world." (Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock. (Note: Researcher Duane Crowther, when citing this quote in his Prophecy book on page 58 of version 39 of his book, states that he has a copy of notarized statements pertaining to the validity of this and other prophecies recorded by Bullock.))
- **Joseph Smith** said, "A terrible revolution will take place in the land of America, such as has never been seen before; for the land will be literally left without a supreme government. And every species of wickedness will run rampant. Father will be against son, and son against father, mother against daughter, and daughter against mother. The most terrible scenes of murder and bloodshed and rapine that have ever been looked upon will take place. Peace will be taken from the earth and there will be **no peace only in the Rocky Mountains**. This will cause many hundreds and thousands of the honest in heart together there; not because they would be saints but for safety and because they would not take up the sword against their neighbor." (Joseph Smith's White Horse Prophecy)
- **Heber C. Kimball** said, "I am very thankful that so many of the brethren have come in with handcarts; my soul rejoiced, my heart was filled and grew as big as a two-bushel basket. Two companies

have come through safe and sound. Is this the end of it? No; there will be millions on millions that will come much in the same way, only they will not have handcarts, for they will take their **bundles under their arms, and their children on their backs**, and under their arms **and flee**" (Source: Journal of Discourses, 4:106).

- **Orson Pratt** said, "The hand of the Lord will be over us to sustain us, and we will spread forth. He will multiply us in the land; He will make us a great people, and strengthen our borders, and send forth the missionaries of this people to the four quarters of the earth to publish peace and glad tidings of great joy and proclaim that there is still a place left in the **heart of the American continent where there are peace and safety and refuge** from the storms, **desolations and tribulations** coming upon the wicked." (JD, 12:345.)
- **J. Golden Kimball** said**,** "I prophesy that before many of you go to the other side **you will have a burning desire in your hearts to return to the place where the leaders of the Church have counseled the Saints to settle, and you will give anything** in the world to be able to live there." (President J. Golden Kimball of the First Council of Seventy, Conference Report, October, 1926, p. 58.)
- **Orson Pratt** said (paraphrasing), our missionaries will be sent to all the world declaring there is a place in the heart of USA where peace and refuge from the major destructions can be found. (Crowther sites this on p.59 of his Prophecy book.)
- In the following 2 teachings, we are told to escape war we will need to flee to Zion. Given the context of other teachings about the inland empire in the Rocky Mountains, we can assume that 'Zion' in these statements refers not to Missouri, as the Missourian Zion doesn't come until after the wars, but to the preparatory-Zion in the west. Consider these paraphrased teachings: **Joseph Smith**: When wars come we will have to flee to Zion, those who don't go when they have a chance to go will be afflicted by the devil. Gentiles will flow to us a constant stream then and our doors will be constantly open to them. See Crowther p61. **Orson Pratt**: As a flowing stream goes continually, so shall the Gentiles come to us in Zion, seeing God protects Zion and that there is no safety in their nations. Their nations will be tottering and crumbling to ruin. They'll come not to

be baptized, but for safety, having heard also our officers are for peace, and our tax collectors are righteous. See Crowther p.61

Remember also that not everyone needs to return to Missouri. **Brigham Young** said, "Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. Are we all going? O no! of course not. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in these mountains than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our hard earned homes to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for related information.)

Tribulations Will be Small for the Faithful - Heber C. Kimball & Vaughn J. Featherstone

Heber C. Kimball said, "The trials in the last days will be numerous, **but to the faithful they will be of but [a] small moment,** for they will **live above these things**, they will **increase in power**." (Heber C. Kimball, June 29, 1856, Journal of Discourses 4:6)

Vaughn J. Featherstone said, "Our garments worn as instructed will clothe us in a manner as protective as temple walls. The covenants and ordinances will fill us with faith as living fire. **In a day of desolating sickness, scorched earth, barren waste, sickening plagues, disease, destruction and death, we as a people will rest in the shade of trees, we will drink from the cooling fountains. We will abide in places of refuge** from the storm, we will mount up as on eagles wings, we will be lifted out of an insane and evil world. We will be as fair as the sun and as clear as the moon. The Savior will come and will honor His people. **Those who are spared and prepared will be a temple loving people**. They will know him. They will cry out, 'blessed be the name of He that cometh in the name of the Lord. Thou art my God and I will bless thee, Thou art my God and I will exalt thee.' Our children will bow down at his feet and worship Him as the Lord of Lords, the King of Kings. They will bathe His feet with their tears and He will weep and bless them for having suffered through the greatest trials ever known to man. His bowels will be filled with compassion and His heart will swell as wide as eternity and He will love them. He will bring peace that will last a thousand years and they will receive their reward to

dwell with Him." (Vaughn J. Featherstone, Temple Statement - Given in the Manti Temple April 1987)

Secret Combinations & The New World Order: Scriptures

2 Ne. 26:14, 22: **14** But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.
22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

Moses 5:31: **31** And Cain said: Truly I am Mahan, the master of this great secret, that I may murder and get gain. Wherefore Cain was called Master Mahan, and he gloried in his wickedness.

Mormon 8:26-27: **26** And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.
27 And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

D&C 63:33-34: **33** I have sworn in my wrath, and decreed wars upon the face of the earth, and the wicked shall slay the wicked, and fear shall come upon every man;
34 And the saints also shall hardly escape; nevertheless, I, the Lord, am with them, and will come down in heaven from the presence of my Father and consume the wicked with unquenchable fire.

2 Ne. 10:11-16: **11** And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles,

and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.
12 And I will fortify this land against all other nations.
13 And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.
14 For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.
15 Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.
16 Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

(See also the Book of Revelation.)

Secret Combinations & The New World Order: Quotes

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Concerning the United States, the Lord revealed to his prophets that its greatest threat would be a vast, worldwide "secret combination" which would not only threaten the United States but also seek to "overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries." (Ezra Taft Benson, "The American Heritage of Freedom — A Plan of God", October 1961 General Conference.)

Gordon B Hinckley said, "We of this Church know something of such (terrorist organizations) groups. The Book of Mormon speaks of the Gadianton robbers, a vicious, oath-bound, and secret organization bent on evil and destruction. In their day they did all in their power, by whatever means available, to bring down the Church, to woo the people with sophistry, and to take control of the society. We see the same thing in the present situation." (General Conference, October 2001.)

Ezra Taft Benson said, “The Book of Mormon narrative is a chronicle of nations long since gone. But in its descriptions of the problems of today's society, it is as current as the morning newspaper and much more definitive, inspired, and inspiring concerning the solutions of those problems. I know of no other writing which sets forth with such clarity the tragic consequences to societies that follow courses contrary to the commandments of God. Its pages trace the stories of two distinct civilizations that flourished on the Western Hemisphere. Each began as a small nation, its people walking in the fear of the Lord. But with prosperity came growing evils. The people succumbed to the wiles of ambitious and scheming leaders who oppressed them with burdensome taxes, who lulled them with hollow promises, who countenanced and even encouraged loose and lascivious living. These evil schemers led the people into terrible wars that resulted in the death of millions and the final and total extinction of two great civilizations in two different eras. Yes, there is a conspiracy of evil. The source of it all is Satan and his hosts. He has a great power over men to 'lead them captive at his will, even as many as would not hearken' to the voice of the Lord. His evil influence may be manifest through governments; through false educational, political, economic, religious, and social philosophies; through secret societies and organizations; and through myriads of other forms. His power and influence are so great that, if possible, he would deceive the very elect. As the second coming of the Lord approaches, Satan's work will intensify through numerous insidious deceptions." Conference Report, Ezra Taft Benson, April 1978)

Charles W. Nibley said, Brethren and sisters, let me say in closing that we have it of record, that the prophet Joseph Smith said the time would come when, through secret organizations taking the law into their own hands, not being governed by law or by due process of law, but becoming a law unto themselves, when, by those disintegrating activities, the Constitution of the United States would be so torn and rent asunder, and life and property and peace and security would he held of so little value, that the Constitution would, as it were, hang by a thread. But he never said, so far as I have heard, that that thread would be cut. I believe, with Elder Richards, that this Constitution will be preserved, but it will be preserved very largely in consequence of what the Lord has revealed and what this people, through listening to the Lord and being obedient, will help to bring about, to stabilize and give permanency and effect to the Constitution itself. That also is our

mission. That also is what we are here for. I glory in it. I praise God with all my heart and soul that I am a member of it." (Conference Report, Charles W. Nibley, Oct 1923)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "I testify that wickedness is rapidly expanding in every segment of our society. It is more highly organized, more cleverly disguised, and more powerfully promoted than ever before. Secret combinations lusting for power, gain, and glory are flourishing. A secret combination that seeks to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries is increasing its evil influence and control over America and the entire world." (I Testify, Conference Report, Ezra Taft Benson, Oct 1988.)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Pride results in secret combinations which are built up to get power, gain, and glory of the world. This fruit of the sin of pride, namely secret combinations, brought down both the Jaredite and the Nephite civilizations and has been and will yet be the cause of the fall of many nations." (Conference Report, Ezra Taft Benson, Apr 1989

Bruce R McConkie said, "Bands of Gadianton robbers will infest every nation, immorality and murder and crime will increase, and it will seem as though every man's hand is against his brother." (Conference Report, Bruce R McConkie, Apr 1979)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Too often we bask in our comfortable complacency and rationalize that the ravages of war, economic disaster, famine, and earthquake cannot happen here. Those who believe this are either not acquainted with the revelations of the Lord, or they do not believe them. Those who smugly think these calamities will not happen, that they somehow will be set aside because of the righteousness of the Saints, are deceived and will rue the day they harbored such a delusion. The Lord has warned and forewarned us against a day of great tribulation and given us counsel, through His servants, on how we can be prepared for these difficult times. Have we heeded His counsel?..The revelation to produce and store food may be as essential to our temporal welfare today as boarding the ark was to the people in the days of Noah." (Elder Ezra Taft Benson, October 1980, General Conference, Prepare for the Days of Tribulation)

Ezra Taft Benson said, "In the prophecies there is no promise except to the

obedient. To a modern prophet the Lord said: “Therefore, what I say unto one, I say unto all: Watch, for the adversary spreadeth his dominions, and darkness reigneth; “And the anger of God kindleth against the inhabitants of the earth; “…I give unto you directions how you may act before me, that it may turn to you for your salvation. “I, the Lord, am bound when ye do what I say; but when ye do not what I say, ye have no promise.” (D&C 82:5-6, 9-10.)
May God give us the wisdom to recognize the threat to our freedom and the strength to meet this danger courageously.” Secret Combinations, (Ezra Taft Benson, *Conference Report,* Afternoon Meeting, p. 75. October 1961.)

Heber C Kimball said, "This government would dissolve pretty much all the laws passed by our legislature, and that the time would come when the government would stop the Saints from holding meetings. When this was done the Lord would pour out His judgments.” (Col. Robert Smith, friend to Heber C Kimball)

Gordon B. Hinckley said, “The Book of Mormon narrative is a chronicle of nations long since gone. But in its descriptions of the problems of today’s society, it is as current as the morning newspaper and much more definitive, inspired, and inspiring concerning the solutions of those problems. I know of no other writing which sets forth with such clarity the tragic consequences to societies that follow courses contrary to the commandments of God. Its pages trace the stories of two distinct civilizations that flourished on the Western Hemisphere. Each began as a small nation, its people walking in the fear of the Lord. But with prosperity came growing evils. The people succumbed to the wiles of ambitious and scheming leaders who oppressed them with burdensome taxes, who lulled them with hollow promises, who countenanced and even encouraged loose and lascivious living. These evil schemers led the people into terrible wars that resulted in the death of millions and the final and total extinction of two great civilizations in two different eras.” (Gordon B Hinckley, First Presidency Message, Ensign, August 2005.)

Ezra Taft Benson said, “Concerning the United States, the Lord revealed to his prophets that its greatest threat would be a vast, worldwide “secret combination” which would not only threaten the United States but also seek to “overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries.” (Ezra Taft

Benson, A Warning to the United States – Oct. 1961) (Cf. Ether 8:25)

Ezra Taft Benson said, “No true Latter-day Saint and no true American can be a socialist or a communist or support programs leading in that direction. These evil philosophies are incompatible with Mormonism, the true gospel of Jesus Christ.” (*Conference Report*, October 1961, pp. 69-75)

John A. Widtsoe said, "The Gadianton Robbers from the Book of Mormon are loose among us. The King-men and women, are running our government. And, worst of all, we are blindly electing them or appointing them so they can continue to destroy the things we cherish most." (John A. Widtsoe, Conference Report, 1944.)

Gordon B. Hinckley said, “The people succumbed to the wiles of ambitious and scheming leaders who oppressed them with burdensome taxes, who lulled them with hollow promises, who countenanced and even encouraged loose and lascivious living, who led them into terrible wars that resulted in the death of millions and the final extinction of two great civilizations in two different eras. No other written testament so clearly illustrates the fact that when men and nations walk in the fear of God and in obedience to his commandments, they prosper and grow, but when they disregard him and his word, there comes a decay which, unless arrested by righteousness, leads to impotence and death.” (Gordon B. Hinckley, Ensign, June 1988)

Apocrypha Scripture: Ezra’s Prophecy on America’s Decline & The Abominable World Government

Note: D&C 91 and the Bible Dictionary teach that the Apocrypha has many true things in it which will benefit those guided by the spirit.

Note: Many evidences indicate that the Ezra’s Eagle prophecy is about America in the end times. Yes scriptures have dual fulfillment, and there are some similarities, but scripture indicates that **Daniel had the same vision that Ezra had (2 Esdras 12:11).** The angel told Ezra to go talk to Daniel for he too had seen the same thing. Both center around where Adam-Ondi-Ahman happens (where “Michael stand[s] up”), and that is America.

Note: In this book, we are avoiding getting into interpretations of Ezra's vision. Just because some people's interpretations didn't unfold as they anticipated, doesn't mean the prophecy is uninspired.

Here is the text from the apocrypha (also known as Deuterocanonical) on the Ezra's Eagle prophecy. I'm using the King James Version from https://www.biblestudytools.com/kjva/.

2 Esdras chapters 11 (the vision) & chapter 12 (the interpretation):

2 Esdras Chapter 11: 1 Then saw I a dream, and, behold, there came up from the sea an eagle, which had twelve feathered wings, and three heads.

2 And I saw, and, behold, she spread her wings over all the earth, and all the winds of the air blew on her, and were gathered together.
3 And I beheld, and out of her feathers there grew other contrary feathers; and they became little feathers and small.
4 But her heads were at rest: the head in the midst was greater than the other, yet rested it with the residue.
5 Moreover I beheld, and, lo, the eagle flew with her feathers, and reigned upon earth, and over them that dwelt therein.
6 And I saw that all things under heaven were subject unto her, and no man spake against her, no, not one creature upon earth.
7 And I beheld, and, lo, the eagle rose upon her talons, and spake to her feathers, saying,
8 Watch not all at once: sleep every one in his own place, and watch by course:
9 But let the heads be preserved for the last.
10 And I beheld, and, lo, the voice went not out of her heads, but from the midst of her body.
11 And I numbered her contrary feathers, and, behold, there were eight of them.
12 And I looked, and, behold, on the right side there arose one feather, and reigned over all the earth;
13 And so it was, that when it reigned, the end of it came, and the place thereof appeared no more: so the next following stood up. and reigned, and had a great time;

14 And it happened, that when it reigned, the end of it came also, like as the first, so that it appeared no more.
15 Then came there a voice unto it, and said,
16 Hear thou that hast borne rule over the earth so long: this I say unto thee, before thou beginnest to appear no more,
17 There shall none after thee attain unto thy time, neither unto the half thereof.
18 Then arose the third, and reigned as the other before, and appeared no more also.
19 So went it with all the residue one after another, as that every one reigned, and then appeared no more.
20 Then I beheld, and, lo, in process of time the feathers that followed stood up upon the right side, that they might rule also; and some of them ruled, but within a while they appeared no more:
21 For some of them were set up, but ruled not.
22 After this I looked, and, behold, the twelve feathers appeared no more, nor the two little feathers:
23 And there was no more upon the eagle's body, but three heads that rested, and six little wings.
24 Then saw I also that two little feathers divided themselves from the six, and remained under the head that was upon the right side: for the four continued in their place.
25 And I beheld, and, lo, the feathers that were under the wing thought to set up themselves and to have the rule.
26 And I beheld, and, lo, there was one set up, but shortly it appeared no more.
27 And the second was sooner away than the first.
28 And I beheld, and, lo, the two that remained thought also in themselves to reign:
29 And when they so thought, behold, there awaked one of the heads that were at rest, namely, it that was in the midst; for that was greater than the two other heads.
30 And then I saw that the two other heads were joined with it.
31 And, behold, the head was turned with them that were with it, and did eat up the two feathers under the wing that would have reigned.
32 But this head put the whole earth in fear, and bare rule in it over all those that dwelt upon the earth with much oppression; and it had the governance of the world more than all the wings that had been.

33 And after this I beheld, and, lo, the head that was in the midst suddenly appeared no more, like as the wings.
34 But there remained the two heads, which also in like sort ruled upon the earth, and over those that dwelt therein.
35 And I beheld, and, lo, the head upon the right side devoured it that was upon the left side.
36 Then I head a voice, which said unto me, Look before thee, and consider the thing that thou seest.
37 And I beheld, and lo, as it were a roaring lion chased out of the wood: and I saw that he sent out a man's voice unto the eagle, and said,
38 Hear thou, I will talk with thee, and the Highest shall say unto thee,
39 Art not thou it that remainest of the four beasts, whom I made to reign in my world, that the end of their times might come through them?
40 And the fourth came, and overcame all the beasts that were past, and had power over the world with great fearfulness, and over the whole compass of the earth with much wicked oppression; and so long time dwelt he upon the earth with deceit.
41 For the earth hast thou not judged with truth.
42 For thou hast afflicted the meek, thou hast hurt the peaceable, thou hast loved liars, and destroyed the dwellings of them that brought forth fruit, and hast cast down the walls of such as did thee no harm.
43 Therefore is thy wrongful dealing come up unto the Highest, and thy pride unto the Mighty.
44 The Highest also hath looked upon the proud times, and, behold, they are ended, and his abominations are fulfilled.
45 And therefore appear no more, thou eagle, nor thy horrible wings, nor thy wicked feathers nor thy malicious heads, nor thy hurtful claws, nor all thy vain body:
46 That all the earth may be refreshed, and may return, being delivered from thy violence, and that she may hope for the judgment and mercy of him that made her.

2 Esdras Chapter 12: 1 And it came to pass, whiles the lion spake these words unto the eagle, I saw,
2 And, behold, the head that remained and the four wings appeared no more, and the two went unto it and set themselves up to reign, and their kingdom was small, and fill of uproar.
3 And I saw, and, behold, they appeared no more, and the whole body of the

eagle was burnt so that the earth was in great fear: then awaked I out of the trouble and trance of my mind, and from great fear, and said unto my spirit,
4 Lo, this hast thou done unto me, in that thou searchest out the ways of the Highest.
5 Lo, yet am I weary in my mind, and very weak in my spirit; and little strength is there in me, for the great fear wherewith I was afflicted this night.
6 Therefore will I now beseech the Highest, that he will comfort me unto the end.
7 And I said, Lord that bearest rule, if I have found grace before thy sight, and if I am justified with thee before many others, and if my prayer indeed be come up before thy face;
8 Comfort me then, and shew me thy servant the interpretation and plain difference of this fearful vision, that thou mayest perfectly comfort my soul.
9 For thou hast judged me worthy to shew me the last times.

10 And he said unto me, This is the interpretation of the vision:
11 The eagle, whom thou sawest come up from the sea, is the kingdom which was seen in the vision of thy brother Daniel.
12 But it was not expounded unto him, therefore now I declare it unto thee.
13 Behold, the days will come, that there shall rise up a kingdom upon earth, and it shall be feared above all the kingdoms that were before it.
14 In the same shall twelve kings reign, one after another:
15 Whereof the second shall begin to reign, and shall have more time than any of the twelve.
16 And this do the twelve wings signify, which thou sawest.
17 As for the voice which thou heardest speak, and that thou sawest not to go out from the heads but from the midst of the body thereof, this is the interpretation:
18 That after the time of that kingdom there shall arise great strivings, and it shall stand in peril of failing: nevertheless it shall not then fall, but shall be restored again to his beginning.
19 And whereas thou sawest the eight small under feathers sticking to her wings, this is the interpretation:
20 That in him there shall arise eight kings, whose times shall be but small, and their years swift.
21 And two of them shall perish, the middle time approaching: four shall be kept until their end begin to approach: but two shall be kept unto the end.
22 And whereas thou sawest three heads resting, this is the interpretation:

23 In his last days shall the most High raise up three kingdoms, and renew many things therein, and they shall have the dominion of the earth,
24 And of those that dwell therein, with much oppression, above all those that were before them: therefore are they called the heads of the eagle.
25 For these are they that shall accomplish his wickedness, and that shall finish his last end.
26 And whereas thou sawest that the great head appeared no more, it signifieth that one of them shall die upon his bed, and yet with pain.
27 For the two that remain shall be slain with the sword.
28 For the sword of the one shall devour the other: but at the last shall he fall through the sword himself.
29 And whereas thou sawest two feathers under the wings passing over the head that is on the right side;
30 It signifieth that these are they, whom the Highest hath kept unto their end: this is the small kingdom and full of trouble, as thou sawest.
31 And the lion, whom thou sawest rising up out of the wood, and roaring, and speaking to the eagle, and rebuking her for her unrighteousness with all the words which thou hast heard;
32 This is the anointed, which the Highest hath kept for them and for their wickedness unto the end: he shall reprove them, and shall upbraid them with their cruelty.
33 For he shall set them before him alive in judgment, and shall rebuke them, and correct them.
34 For the rest of my people shall he deliver with mercy, those that have been pressed upon my borders, and he shall make them joyful until the coming of the day of judgment, whereof I have spoken unto thee from the beginning.
35 This is the dream that thou sawest, and these are the interpretations.
36 Thou only hast been meet to know this secret of the Highest.
37 Therefore write all these things that thou hast seen in a book, and hide them:
38 And teach them to the wise of the people, whose hearts thou knowest may comprehend and keep these secrets.
39 But wait thou here thyself yet seven days more, that it may be shewed thee, whatsoever it pleaseth the Highest to declare unto thee. And with that he went his way.

40 And it came to pass, when all the people saw that the seven days were past, and I not come again into the city, they gathered them all together, from the least unto the greatest, and came unto me, and said,
41 What have we offended thee? and what evil have we done against thee, that thou forsakest us, and sittest here in this place?
42 For of all the prophets thou only art left us, as a cluster of the vintage, and as a candle in a dark place, and as a haven or ship preserved from the tempest.
43 Are not the evils which are come to us sufficient?
44 If thou shalt forsake us, how much better had it been for us, if we also had been burned in the midst of Sion?
45 For we are not better than they that died there. And they wept with a loud voice. Then answered I them, and said,
46 Be of good comfort, O Israel; and be not heavy, thou house of Jacob:
47 For the Highest hath you in remembrance, and the Mighty hath not forgotten you in temptation.
48 As for me, I have not forsaken you, neither am I departed from you: but am come into this place, to pray for the desolation of Sion, and that I might seek mercy for the low estate of your sanctuary.
49 And now go your way home every man, and after these days will I come unto you.
50 So the people went their way into the city, like as I commanded them:
51 But I remained still in the field seven days, as the angel commanded me; and did eat only in those days of the flowers of the field, and had my meat of the herbs

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF ESCAPE & GATHERING FOR SAFETY

Gathering: Scriptures

D&C 57:1: **1** Hearken, O ye elders of my church, saith the Lord your God, who have assembled yourselves together, according to my commandments, in this land, which is the land of Missouri, which is the land which I have appointed and consecrated for the gathering of the saints.

2 Ne. 30:10: **10** For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

Matt. 24:40-42: 40 Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 41Two *women shall be* grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left. 42 Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come.

Rev. 18:4: 4: And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.

Alma 26:5-8: **5** Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.
6 Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.
7 But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.
8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

Isaiah 26:20: 20 Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast.

D&C 84:2: **2** Yea, the word of the Lord concerning his church, established in the last days for the restoration of his people, as he has spoken by the

mouth of his prophets, and for the gathering of his saints to stand upon Mount Zion, which shall be the city of New Jerusalem.

D&C 101:64-67: **64** That the work of the gathering together of my saints may continue, that I may build them up unto my name upon holy places; for the time of harvest is come, and my word must needs be fulfilled.
65 Therefore, I must gather together my people, according to the parable of the wheat and the tares, that the wheat may be secured in the garners to possess eternal life, and be crowned with celestial glory, when I shall come in the kingdom of my Father to reward every man according as his work shall be;
66 While the tares shall be bound in bundles, and their bands made strong, that they may be burned with unquenchable fire.
67 Therefore, a commandment I give unto all the churches, that they shall continue to gather together unto the places which I have appointed.

D&C 63:54: **54** And until that hour there will be foolish virgins among the wise; and at that hour cometh an entire separation of the righteous and the wicked; and in that day will I send mine angels to pluck out the wicked and cast them into unquenchable fire.

D&C 45:68-72: **68** And it shall come to pass among the wicked, that every man that will not take his sword against his neighbor must needs flee unto Zion for safety.
69 And there shall be gathered unto it out of every nation under heaven; and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another.
70 And it shall be said among the wicked: Let us not go up to battle against Zion, for the inhabitants of Zion are terrible; wherefore we cannot stand.
71 And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion, singing with songs of everlasting joy.
72 And now I say unto you, keep these things from going abroad unto the world until it is expedient in me, that ye may accomplish this work in the eyes of the people, and in the eyes of your enemies, that they may not know your works until ye have accomplished the thing which I have commanded you;

Zephaniah 2:1-3: 1 Gather yourselves together, yea, gather together, O nation not desired; 2 before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of the LORD come upon you, before the day

of the LORD's anger come upon you. 3 Seek ye the LORD, all ye meek of the earth, which have wrought his judgment; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye shall be hid in the day of the LORD's anger.

Gathering: Quotes

Elder George A. Smith said, "**all the prophecies** have aimed at the **gathering** of the people, and **saving them in the last days**." (History of the Church, 6:18)

Orson Pratt, June 15, 1873, Journal of Discourses, Vol 15, p. 79: "We find, in the 40th chapter of the prophecies of Isaiah, that the people of Zion are to be raised up preparatory to the second advent of the Son of God. Isaiah uses an exclamation something like this—"O Zion, that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountain." It seems by this, that the people called Zion, wherever they might be, were to be removed from the regions they originally inhabited, and were to be located in a high mountain, or in a very elevated region. If you wish to know the time which this prophetic exhortation to the people of Zion had reference to, read the whole of the 40th chapter of Isaiah, and you will find that, at that period, the glory of God is to be revealed and all flesh is to see it together, evidently referring to the great day when the Son of God shall come in his glory, when every eye shall see him, and they also who pierced him, and all people, nations and tongues under heaven, who are spared unto that day, shall behold him descend in power and majesty to this earth. In his 40th chapter, the Prophet Isaiah has told us that then the mountains shall be broken down, the valleys exalted, the rough places made smooth, the glory of the Lord revealed and all flesh see it together. Then the iniquities of ancient Israel will have been sufficiently punished, for the Lord will have rewarded them double for all their sins. When that time arrives the people called Zion will be required to go into the high mountains, and they shall bring good tidings unto the inhabitants of the earth."

Heber C Kimball, Life of Heber C. Kimball, p. 450: "How is it now? You have the First Presidency, from whom you can get counsel to guide you, and you rely on them. The time will come when they will not be with you. Why? Because they will have to flee and hide up to keep out of the hands of their enemies. You have the Twelve now. You will not always have them, for they too will be hunted and will have to keep out of the way of their

enemies. You have other men to whom you look for counsel and advice. Many of them will not be amongst you, for the same reason. You will be left to the light within yourselves. If you don't have it you will not stand; therefore seek for the testimony of Jesus and cleave to it, that when the trying time comes you may not stumble and fall."

Neal A. Maxwell, September 5, 1982: "Furthermore, whether you realize it or not, you are a generation drenched in destiny. If you are faithful, you will prove to be a part of the winding-up scenes for this world, and as participants, not merely as spectators, though on later occasions you might understandably prefer to be the latter. Though we have rightly applauded our ancestors for their spiritual achievements (and do not and must not discount them now), those of us who prevail today will have done no small thing. The special spirits who have been reserved to live in this time of challenges and who overcome will one day be praised for their stamina by those who pulled handcarts." (Meekly Drenched in Destiny, https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/neal-a-maxwell/meekly-drenched-destiny/)

George Q. Cannon, Journal of Discourse, Vol. 26 p. 250: "We have these circumstances to contend with. We are mixed with the wicked. The tares and the wheat grow together, and will grow until the harvest. This seems to be designed in the providence of our Father. But the time will come when there will be a separation, a final separation, of the righteous from the wicked, and that separation will be brought about by the exercise of the Priesthood which God has bestowed. That Priesthood will draw up from the earth the pure, the holy, the worthy. It will draw them up to the society of God. Everything that is not pure will be left behind. Then we will feel and know the value of that tie."

Joseph F. Smith, Journal of Discourses, Vol.19, p. 193, September 30, 1877: "In various dispensations there are various differences in regard to certain requirements of the Gospel. For instance, in the day of Noah, when he preached the Gospel to the antediluvian world, he was given a special commandment, to build an ark, that in case the people would reject him and the message sent unto them, that himself and all who believed on him might be saved from the destruction that awaited them. In this dispensation there is a principle or commandment peculiar to it. What is that? It is the gathering the people unto one place. The gathering of this people is as necessary to be observed by believers, as faith, repentance, baptism, or any other ordinance. It is an essential part of the Gospel of this dispensation, as much so, as the necessity of building an ark by Noah, for his deliverance, was a part of the

Gospel of his dispensation. Then the world was destroyed by a flood, now it is to be destroyed by war, pestilence, famine, earthquakes, storms, and tempests, the sea rolling beyond its bounds, malarious vapors, vermin, disease, and by fire and the lightnings of God's wrath poured out for destruction upon Babylon. The cry of the angel unto the righteous of this dispensation is, "Come out of her O my people, that ye partake not of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues."”

John Taylor, The Government of God, Chapter 11: “Before the Lord destroyed the old world, he directed Noah to prepare an ark; before the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed, he told Lot to “flee to the mountains,” before Jerusalem was destroyed, Jesus gave his disciples warning, and told them to “flee out of it;” and before the destruction of the world, a message is sent; after this, the nations will be judged, for God is now preparing his own kingdom for his own reign, and will not be thwarted by any conflicting influence, or opposing power. The testimony of God is first to be made known, the standard is to be raised, the Gospel of the kingdom is to be preached to all nations, the world is to be warned, and then come the troubles. The whole world is in confusion, morally, politically, and religiously; but a voice was to be heard, “come out of her, my people, that you partake not of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.””

Harold B. Lee Conference Report, April 1948: “Thus, clearly, the Lord has placed the responsibility for directing the work of gathering in the hands of the leaders of the Church to whom he will reveal his will where and when such gatherings would take place in the future. It would be well before the frightening events concerning the fulfillment of all God's promises and predictions are upon us, that the Saints in every land prepare themselves and look forward to the instruction that shall come to them from the First Presidency of this Church as to where they shall be gathered and not be disturbed in their feelings until such instruction is given to them as it is revealed by the Lord to the proper authority.”

Heber C. Kimball, August 2, 1857, Journal of Discourses, Vol. 5, p. 134: “A great many suppose that when they get there they will be perfectly safe. You will, if you keep the com mandments of God; but if you cannot learn to keep the commandments of God in Great Salt Lake City, how can you learn to keep them when you have to flee to the mountains? And if you cannot keep them here, how do you expect to keep them in Jackson County?—for we are as sure to go back there as we exist.”

Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses, Vol. 18, p 67July 25, 1875: Read the fortieth chapter of Isaiah, where he speaks of the glory of the Lord being

revealed, and all flesh to see him when he comes the second time and how the mountains and hills should be lowered and the valleys be exalted; and in the same chapter the Prophet also says that, before that great and terrible day of the Lord, Zion is required to get up into the high mountains. Isaiah predicts this. Says he, in his fortieth chapter—"Oh Zion, thou that bringest good tidings, get thee up into the high mountains. Thus you see that the people who organize Zion through the everlasting Gospel which the angel brings, have good tidings to declare to all the inhabitants of the earth. But these people are required, according to this prophecy, to get up into the high mountains."

Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses, Vol. 3, p. 153, May 6, 1855: "It would be pleasing if all the Saints had strong faith and confidence, but sometimes many seem to falter in their feelings. I do not know how many I might find in this congregation who would have faith enough to believe that we could live on the tops of these high mountains, which are 6, 619 feet higher than the Temple Block, in case were called to go up there and live, and there was no other place for us; I do not know whether a great many in this congregation could have faith to believe that we could live there."

Joseph Smith, Documentary History of the Church, Vol. 1: "Verily, Verily, saith the Lord, your Redeemer, even Jesus Christ . . . Verily, I say unto you, that the day of vexation and vengeance is nigh at the doors of this nation, when wicked, ungodly, and daring men will rise up in wrath and might, and go forth in anger, like as the dust is driven by a terrible wind; and they will be the means of the destruction of the government and cause the death and misery of many souls; but the faithful among my people shall be preserved in holy places during all these tribulations." (Revelation given to Joseph Smith, July 17, 1831, west of Jackson County, Missouri, contained in a letter from W. W. Phelps to Brigham Young, dated August 12, 1861, Joseph Smith Collection, Church Historian's Office.)

Joseph Smith, Prophecy of Joseph Smith (1833): And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ, that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north country." (Source: Documentary History of the Church, Vol.1, p. 315-316, January 4, 1833)

Heber C. Kimball: "After a while the Gentiles will gather by the thousands to this place, and Salt Lake City will be classed among the wicked cities of

the world. A spirit of speculation and extravagance will take possession of the Saints, and the results will be financial bondage. Persecution comes next and all true Latter-day Saints will be tested to the limit. Many will apostatize and others will be still not knowing what to do. Darkness will cover the earth and gross darkness the minds of the people. The judgments of God will be poured out on the wicked to the extent that our Elders from far and near will be called home, or in other words the gospel will be taken from the Gentiles and later on carried to the Jews. The western boundary of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that as President Young tells us, when you return to that place, there will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail. Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to a test that will try the integrity of the best of them. The pressure will become so great that the more righteous among them will cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance comes." (First Counselor in the First Presidency, May 1868, in Deseret News, 23 May 1931; see also Conference Report, Oct. 1930, p. 58-59)

Joseph Smith said, "There will be here and there a Stake [of Zion] for the gathering of the Saints. Some may have cried peace, but the Saints and the world will have **little peace from henceforth**. Let this not hinder us from going to the Stakes; for **God has told us to flee**, **not dallying**, or we shall be scattered, one here, and another there. There your children shall be blessed, and you in the midst of friends where you may be blessed. The Gospel net gathers of every kind. I prophecy, that that **man who tarries after he has an opportunity of going, will be afflicted by the devil**. Wars are at hand; we must not delay; but are not required to sacrifice. We ought to have the building up of Zion as our greatest object. **When wars come, we shall have to flee to Zion**. **The cry is to make haste** . . . . The time is soon coming when **no man will have any peace but in Zion** and her stakes .... These things are at our doors. They will follow the Saints of God from city to city." (HC, 3:390-91)

Christians Heeded the Warning to flee Jerusalem before its 70AD destruction: Eusebius & Epiphanes

“The whole body, however, of the church at Jerusalem, having been commanded by a divine revelation, given to men of approved piety there before the war, **removed from the city**.” - Eusebius

“It is very remarkable that **not a single Christian perished** in the destruction of Jerusalem, …” – Epiphanes



Prophets on Fleeing to Live in Tents

Joseph Smith: “If—verily I say unto you—if the Church with one united effort perform their duties; if they do this, the work shall be complete—if they do not this in all humility, making preparation from this time forth, like Joseph in Egypt, laying up store against the time of famine, every man having his tent, his horses, his chariots, his armory, his cattle, his family, and his whole substance in readiness against the time when it shall be said: 'To your tents, O Israel! Let not this be noised abroad; let every heart beat in silence, and every mouth be shut.” (Joseph Smith JD Vol. 2 p145)

Brigham Young: “We are blessed in these mountains; this is the best place on earth for the Latter-Day Saints…..You cannot find another situation so well adapted for the Saints as are these mountains. Here is the place in which the Lord designed to hide His people…..It has been designed, for many generations, to hide up the Saints in the last days, until the indignation of the almighty be over.” (Brigham Young Deseret News, Vol. 11, no. 9, May 1, 1861) (and Journal of Discourses, Vol 3, p.153)

Brigham Young: “I am determined to build up the kingdom of God: and by and by there will be a gleaning of grapes, and it may be said, ‘To your tents,

O Israel'." (HC 7:239-242. https://byustudies.byu.edu/further-study-lesson/volume-7-chapter-19/)

Heber C. Kimball: "When the time comes that the Lord says, "Arise, and to your tents, O Israel;" then men must be pure inside and out; they must be for God, or they will have no part in the blessings conferred upon the righteous. We sometimes talk about cutting men off from the Church. Now, I want to know what is the use of retaining dead limbs upon a tree. If such limbs are allowed to continue, they impart death to the branches." (Heber C. Kimball, Journal of Discourses, Vol 9, Discourse 28, p. 154)

Note: Special thanks to the LDS Freedom Forum (https://ldsfreedomforum.com/viewtopic.php?t=43573) for collecting some of these quotes.

Note: I would think that the fact that we will be living the law of consecration in Zion (Genesis 47:14-26, D&C 42:30-39, Isaiah 30:23-24, Isaiah 35:7, Isaiah 58:10-11, D&C 119, 3 Nephi 24:8-12) indicates that we may have to, as Brigham Young said, all live in tents until everyone has a tent, then all upgrade to cabins, then all onward.



Patterns in the Scriptures of God Calling Out his People

Elder Bednar said, "In my judgment, **diligently searching to discover connections, patterns, and themes is in part what it means to "feast"** upon the words of Christ. This approach can open the floodgates of the spiritual reservoir, enlighten our understanding through His Spirit, and produce a depth of gratitude for the holy scriptures and a degree of spiritual

commitment that **can be received in no other way**. Such searching **enables us to build** upon the rock of our Redeemer **and to withstand** the winds of wickedness in these latter days." (speech on the 4th of February, 2007)

One pattern in the scriptures is the calling out of the righteous from among the wicked, prior to the destruction of a wicked city or wicked group of people. The Lord never fails to call them out, away from the destruction, so he can protect them. Here are some patterns of God calling his people out from some place to move them to another to protect them:

•The first story in the Book of Mormon, Lehi and Nephi were fleeing before the destruction of Jerusalem. Also Ammon, Alma, Mosiah, and Mulek.
•Noah and his family. The Lord "sealed" the ark to keep those who did not prepare out.
•The Jaredites were led to the promised land.
•Abraham (more than once) before getting into Egypt
•Lot fled Sodom and Gomorrah
•Joseph and Mary fled to Egypt.
•Moses took the children of Israel into the wilderness and then on to the promise land.
•The Early Saints fled to Utah to get away from persecution.

49 Examples of Gathering to Places of Safety

Author unknown:

The Lord NEVER removes the wicked prior to destruction - but He often DOES remove the righteous. (49 examples from scriptures)
Meanwhile - do you think you will shelter in place if WAR comes to your city in the way of invading armies - something that this country has not had to experience in any of the wars since becoming a Nation?
If you live in a large metropolis and you lose power and food supplies - will it be safe to stay with gangs roaming the streets?
If a deadly plague comes, will you leave to seek a less populated area?

Here is a list of at least 49 times that the righteous have to leave.

1. Brother of Jared
2. Lehi

3. Mulek
4. Saints in Europe coming to Utah. Many ancestors answered the call of Joseph Smith to immigrate to America and join with the saints in Utah. Left their homelands and relatives
5. Alma fleeing wicked King Noah
6. Alma's fleeing from Lamanite bondage. Mosiah 24
7. Puritans and Pilgrims
8. Children of Israel fleeing Egypt
9. Enoch. Moses 7:27
10. Mary and Joseph to Egypt
11. Saints fleeing from Jerusalem and Titus in 70 A.D
12. Limhi's people fleeing Mosiah 22:6-1 People of Limhi deliver themselves from bondage by departing into the wilderness with tents, flocks, families. They couldn't do it by the sword--were out-numbered. Went out the back pass. Mosiah 22:2
13. Nephi fleeing from Laman and Lemuel
14. Ammon and his Anti-Nephi-Lehi's fleeing the Lamanites Alma 27
15. Mosiah flees Omni 1:12
16. Joseph of Aramathea in Jewish legend driven from Jerusalem in a boat with Mary, Martha, Lazarus, Mary Magdalene and others. (Fascinating Story
17. The ten tribes fleeing from bondage to the north
18. Abraham from Ur of the Chaldees. Hebrew 11:8
19. Another Jewish legend of Jeremiah fleeing to Egypt and then to England and Ireland before the destruction of Jerusalem.
20. Lot from Sodom and Gomorrah
21. The Nephites flee from their homes and gather together to fight the Lamanites and Gadiantons, pooling all their supplies for 7 years
22. Alma and Amulek flee Ammoniah. Alma 15:16
23. Zoramites cast out and flee to Jershon. Alma 35
24. The people of Ammon vacate Jershon so the Nephites can battle the Lamanites there. Alma 35:13 25. Ishmael and his family join Lehi in fleeing Jerusalem. 1 Nephi
26. Noah flees the world on an ark.
27. Jacob flees to Egypt to get food.
28. The saints flee Kirtland to go to Missouri
29. Then they flee Missouri to go to Nauvoo
30. Then they flee Nauvoo to Salt Lake
31. Adam and Even have to leave the Garden of Eden to start a new life. The pattern was set when Adam and Eve were sent out of the garden of Eden and into the wilderness, a journey that must have been quite an education in the school of hard knocks
32. Hyrum Smith received a revelation saying his life was in danger and to move his family from Palmyra to Colesville, N.Y. He packed that night and

left the next morning. "Life of Joseph Smith by His Mother
33. Father Smith's life was in jeopardy. He was warned to flee but didn't leave soon enough and was thrown into prison where he spent a month. After his release he immediately moved his family to Waterloo, NY and most of the Smith family would never see Palmyra again. "Life of Joseph Smith by his Mother
34. Joseph and Emma flee Palmyra with the gold plates to live in Harmony, PA.
35. Joseph flees from Harmony to Colesville or Fayette?
36. No sooner had the early saints settled themselves with good herds and good homes in Salt Lake City, UT than they were called to leave it all and settle St. George, Arizona and other places in between. One group of great grandparents were called to St. George to settle there and then again were called to colonize Arizona making 3 callouts.
37. The saints fleeing U.S. marshals into Mexico to save their families.
38. Moroni flees the rest of his life from the Lamanites.
39. Zoramites find out which people believe Alma's and Amulek's words and cast them out of the land. They go to Jershon. Alma 35:6-9. Verse 14 "Those who repented were driven out of the land."
40. Peter, James, and John, "And straight way they forsook their nets and followed him." Mark 1:16-18
41. Jesus fleeing Nazareth when they tried to kill him, never to return to his home town.
42. Omar is warned to flee because Akish and his secret band are going to kill him so Akish can marry Jared's daughter and give Jared the kingdom. Ether 9:3
43. The people in the city Moroni fled to the city Nephihah. Alma 51:24
44. Jacob fled when Simeon his son killed those who had abducted his daughter Dinah.
45. Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, fled with "the residue of the people of God" and "came out from the land, which was called Shulon, and dwelt in a land of promise..." Moses 6:17
46. 2000 stripling preschoolers left the Order of Nehor and Amulon to be taught by their mothers following the missionary Ammon.
47. The saints at Haun's Mill were told to leave by Joseph Smith.
48. And the prophet did send out a letter to the nations calling for the Jews to return to Jerusalem. If they had listened they would have been spared the holocaust
49. The saints fled from Johnston's Army back in Brigham Young's day.

Book of Mormon Pattern to Escape: Examples of Ammon & Alma

Mosiah 22:11-16 (Ammon Escapes): 11 And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did **depart by night into the wilderness** with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.
12 And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.
13 And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.
14 And it came to pass that **Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records,** and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.
15 And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;
16 And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

Mosiah 24:10-25 (Alma escapes): 10 And it came to pass that so great were **their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God**.
11 And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.
12 And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.
13 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.
14 And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their

afflictions.
15 And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.
16 And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: **Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.**
17 And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.
18 Now it came to pass that **Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.**
19 And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.
20 And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had **traveled all day** they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.
21 Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.
22 And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.
23 And now the Lord said unto Alma: **Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee**; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.
24 And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.
25 And after they had been in the **wilderness twelve days they arrived** in the land of Zarahemla; and king **Mosiah did also receive them with joy**.

Note: Are your records ready to go if you had to, like these people?

Note: If a call ever comes to go, don't think twice. Stuff is just stuff. God will provide. When God says go, there's a good reason, even if you don't see it yet. Even if you've already survived a few things. Some have foreseen that there will be people who ignore a prophetic direction to flee because they've already weathered several storms, and think they'll be okay. Then comes major destruction.

The Call to Flee Nauvoo – A Foreshadow of Our Day: 3 Waves of Retreat

By my acquaintance, Brother Smith of Colorado, shared with permission:

These details are from notes I took from a BYU Church History class in 2003 or 2004 (the professor was Susan Easton Black).

After Joseph Smith's death, Brigham Young was busy preparing the Church for an exodus from Nauvoo to the Rocky Mountains. The Church members, in general, knew they were going to leave, but didn't know when. The "wise" were preparing to flee. The leaders of the Church gave the saints a list of things they needed to get before it was time to go, and when that time came, only those that had obeyed and got the things on that list were allowed to leave in the first wave of Saints.

One of the great endeavors -- beginning 10 December 1845 -- was that the Temple was very busy endowing as many members as possible.

According to Sis. Black, everyone thought Brigham Young was going to call the Saints to flee in the Spring of 1846. But on a much earlier, **February** 4th, 1846, he gave the call to "Flee Babylon by land or by sea." To Brigham Young, Babylon represented was the United States. This time is when songs like "Ye Elders of Israel" were written with the words: "Oh Babylon, Oh Babylon, we bid thee farewell; we're going to the Mountains of Ephraim to dwell!"

To give you an idea of how quickly they left, the temple was going to close immediately, but at the request of some Saints, they fit in some more

endowments -- the last of which was performed 7 Feb, 1846 -- just three days later.

The **prepared saints had purchased wagons**, but they were not initially covered. But when Orson Hyde went on a political mission to Washington D.C. while advocating for the Presidency of Joseph Smith, Joseph Smith had instructed him to buy 5,000 yards of canvas -- which was supposed to be used for building a tabernacle. Because a tent temple wouldn't provide protection, the tabernacle was never built. And because they had all this extra canvas, they cut it up and placed it on top of the wagons that first left for the valley. Thus **their wagons became "portable tabernacles."** These saints had the power of God attend them.

The Saints were **warned to flee, because they were in real danger**. Sis. Black made it a point to say that there were actually three waves of departing Saints. The first group left in February (earlier than most everyone thought) in portable tabernacles (their wagons) and with the general authorities. The **second group left in April**, but they had no general authorities with them. The **third group left in September**, freezing and running **for their lives**. This third group was poor, sick, and they struggled mightily through that winter.

One other thing of note: It was on the 7th of September, 1846 (which was a Monday) when a Major Parker gave the order that the Mormons must depart Nauvoo. He was sent with an army to enforce the expulsion of the Mormons. On 10 September, their force totaled more than one thousand. The Saints put up a remarkable fight, but on 17 September, the remaining saints fled during a winter so bitterly cold the Mississippi River was frozen over. Carrying their only possessions with them, these saints walked on foot across the frozen river, exiting the western border of the United States. Thus, whether they prepared and followed the prophet or not, they were all eventually forced to leave "Babylon."

****

Now let me just highlight some of the shadows I see for our day:

- The same-sex marriage issue today will likely cause persecution of the saints similar to what the saints in Nauvoo experienced. (You must read Elder Robert D. Hale's prophecy in the Oct 2013 General Conference about future persecution we will suffer – just like the persecutions of the early

Saints – and how to be strong; https://www.lds.org/general-conference/2013/10/general-conference-strengthening-faith-and-testimony?lang=eng)

- Brigham Young gave the Saints a list of things to gather in order to be eligible to leave with the first wave of saints. President Thomas S. Monson gave us a similar list of preparations which we may need to follow in order to leave with the first wave of Saints (see the September 2014 First Presidency Message, "Are We Prepared?"; https://www.lds.org/ensign/2014/09/are-we-prepared?lang=eng).

- The great work at the time in Nauvoo was Temple work -- particularly to endow as many members as possible -- and the temples were opened non-stop, 24 hours a day. We too have seen a hastening of temple work leading to the call to flee, but just like with Brigham Young, the time will come when temples will be closed (perhaps due to persecution) and the work will be halted for a time.

- Many believe the Call to Gather will occur in the Spring, just as most believed in Brigham Young's day. What remains to be seen is if our call to flee comes sooner, as it came in February for the Nauvoo Saints. Christ warns us to be ready (Matt 24:43).

- Just like in Brigham's day, most of the Saints who flee will go to the Rocky Mountains for safety. Here are two prophecies: Brigham Young: "An inland Empire will be established in these valleys of the mountains, which will be a place of refuge for millions of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgements of God comes upon the earth, and the righteous come here for safety. Our people will go East, West, North and South, but the day will come, when they will be glad to come back. We will be shut out from the rest of the world." [Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock] Prophecy of Heber C. Kimball: "I am very thankful that so many of the brethren have come in with handcarts; my soul rejoiced, my heart was filled and grew as big as a two-bushel basket. Two companies have come through safe and sound. Is this the end of it? No; there will be millions on millions that will come much in the same way, only they will not have handcarts, for they will take their bundles under their arms, and their children on their backs, and under their arms and flee" (Source: Journal of Discourses, 4:106).

- Once the call from Brigham Young came to flee, **they left almost immediately within days**. This is similar to various dreams and visions of the Call to Gather in our day.

- The early Saints who left in the first call to gather were provided canvas covers on their wagons. In our day, many people who have had dreams/visions about the gathering saw that there were thousands of white canvas tents that were provided by the Church (for just one example, see "Dream of Plagues," published in The Contributor. August 1884, 5:411, see also http://visionsandtribulation.blogspot.com/2013/12/the-dream-of-plagues.html). There are accounts of people that work for the Church that have seen warehouses full of tens of thousands of white canvas tents the Church owns. As are the temples today, these tents will be like tabernacles of safety (as was shown in the Dream of Plagues).

- The Nauvoo saints fled in three waves. Dreams and visions of the future tell there will be three waves of saints who flee in our day. Just as was the case in Nauvoo, these people also describe that the third group of fleeing Saints will be destitute and walking, taking only what they can carry with them. It is yet to be seen if these saints will also flee in the dead of a terribly cold winter. But those who have had dreams of this often (but not always) describe a terribly cold, early, and long winter following the call to gather. As Christ forewarned in His prophesy of the future calamities of Jerusalem and of the Latter-days, "Pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day" (Matt 24:20).

- The Nauvoo Saints fled an army commissioned to expel the Mormons. Dreams and visions of our day show that ALL people were fleeing invading foreign armies (primarily Chinese in the West, and Russian in the East).

Wheat Gathered Out BEFORE Tares Burned: JST & D&C on Tares Driving the Church into the Wilderness

"Gather ye together first the wheat into my barn; and the tares are bound in bundles to be burned." (Joseph Smith Translation of Matthew 13:30)

"…the tares choke the wheat and drive the church into the wilderness." D&C 86: 1-3

Note: Thus we see that our flight to the New Jerusalem will likely be out of necessity due to persecution!

Escape to Places of Safety are Prepared – Henry B. Eyring & H. Aldridge 2005

"The giant earthquake, and the tsunami it sent crashing into the coasts around the Indian Ocean, is just the beginning and a part of what is to come, terrible as it was. You remember the words from the Doctrine and Covenants which now seem so accurate: (he quotes D&C 88:88-91) Fear shall come upon all people. But you and I know that the **Lord has prepared places of safety to which he is eager to guide us**....It will be our choice whether or not to move up or stay where we are. But the Lord will invite and guide us upward by the direction of the Holy Ghost...." (Henry B. Eyring - Raise the Bar, BYU-Idaho Talk – January 25, 2005)

"We must both learn what these signs are and then identify them correctly when they occur. They can and will strengthen our faith in Christ and His prophets, if we know the scriptures. Just as in the days of Noah, **a way is already prepared for the escape of the Lord's elect Latter-Day Saints, if they are in tune with His prophets**." (Elder H. Aldridge, Second Quorum of the Seventy, LDS Business College Devotional, February 8th, 2005)

Valleys of the Rocky Mountains will be Refuge for Millions When Judgement Comes – Quotes

Brigham Young said, "**An inland Empire will be established in these valleys of the mountains, which will be a place of refuge for millions of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgments** of God comes upon the earth, and the **righteous come here for safety**. Our people will go East..., West, North and South, but the day will come, when they will be

glad to come back. We will be **shut out from the rest of the world**." (Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock. (Note: Researcher Duane Crowther, when citing this quote in his Prophecy book on page 58 of version 39 of his book, states that he has a copy of notarized statements pertaining to the validity of this and other prophecies recorded by Bullock.))

Joseph Smith said, "They are proud and will not acknowledge the kingdom of God, or come unto it until they see the power which it will have. **Peace and safety in the Rocky Mountains** will be protected by a cordon band of the White Horse and the Red Horse." (Joseph Smith's White Horse Prophecy, recorded by Edwin Rushton and Theodore Turkley.)

Orson Pratt said, "The hand of the Lord will be over us to sustain us, and we will spread forth. He will multiply us in the land; He will make us a great people, and strengthen our borders, and send forth the missionaries of this people to the four quarters of the earth to publish peace and glad tidings of great joy and proclaim that there is still a place left in the **heart of the American continent where there are peace and safety and refuge** from the storms, **desolations and tribulations** coming upon the wicked." (JD, 12:345.)

J. Golden Kimball said**,** "I prophesy that before many of you go to the other side **you will have a burning desire in your hearts to return to the place where the leaders of the Church have counseled the Saints to settle, and you will give anything** in the world to be able to live there. "(President J. Golden Kimball of the First Council of Seventy, Conference Report, October, 1926, p. 58.)

Heber C. Kimball said, "I am very thankful that so many of the brethren have come in with handcarts; my soul rejoiced, my heart was filled and grew as big as a two-bushel basket. Two companies have come through safe and sound. Is this the end of it? No; there will be millions on millions that will come much in the same way, only they will not have handcarts, for they will take their bundles under their arms, and their children on their backs, and under their arms and flee" (Source: Journal of Discourses, 4:106).

Note: We must find safety in the west before there will be safety in the east.

Missouri is yet to be cleansed. Heber C Kimball (as reported by Amanda H. Wilcox in Salt Lake City in May 1868) (which was after the Civil War): "The western boundries of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that, as President Young tells us, when we return to that place, 'There will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.'" (Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox, n.p., n.d., p. 6.)

Joseph Smith: Gathering to Appointed Places Only Way to be Saved in Last Days, No Time to Cover Earth Before These Things, Escape War in Zion

We Will Fail Without A Place of Deliverance, Gather to Appointed Places: "...for without Zion, and a place of deliverance, we must fall; because the time is near when the sun will be darkened, and the moon turn to blood, and the stars fall from the heaven, and the earth reel to and fro. Then, if this is the case, and if we are not sanctified and gathered to the places God has appointed, with all our former professions and our great love for the Bible, we must fall; we cannot stand; we cannot be saved; for **God will gather out his saints** from the Gentiles, and **then comes desolation** and destruction, and **none can escape except the pure in heart who are gathered**." (Joseph Smith, The teaching of the prophet Joseph Smith, Section 2, P.71) (Also in DHC 2:52)

Gathering Only Way for Saints to be Saved in Last Days: "In addition to all temporal blessings, there is no other way for the Saints to be saved in these last days, than by gathering...." (Joseph Smith DHC 4:272)

No Time to Cover Earth Before Era of Only Safety in Zion's Stakes – Joseph Smith: "We ought to have the building up of Zion as our greatest object. When wars come, we shall have to flee to Zion. The cry is to make haste. The last revelation says, Ye shell not have time to have gone over the earth until these things come. It will come as did the cholera, war, and earthquakes; one pestilence after another, until the Ancient of days comes, then judgement will be given to the Saints…. The time is soon coming when

no man will have any peace but in Zion and her stakes." (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith, p. 160)

Church Leaders Oversee the Gathering – Harold B. Lee

"Thus, clearly, the Lord has placed the responsibility for **directing** the work of **gathering** in the hands of the **leaders of the Church** to whom **he will reveal** his will where and when such gatherings would take place in the future. It would be **well before the frightening events** concerning the fulfillment of all God's promises and predictions are upon us, that the Saints in every land prepare themselves and **look forward to the instruction that shall come to them from the First Presidency of this Church as to where they shall be gathered** and not be disturbed in their feelings until such instruction is given to them as it is revealed by the Lord to the proper authority." (Harold B. Lee, Gen. Conf. April 1948)

Only This People via Priesthood will Be Mostly Safe – Wilford Woodruff

"Can you tell me where the people are who will be shielded and protected from these great calamities and judgments which are even now at our doors? I'll tell you. The priesthood of the God who honor their priesthood, and who are worthy of their blessings are the only ones who shall have this safety and protection. They are the only mortal beings. No other people have a right to be shielded from these judgments. They are at our very doors; not even this people will escape them entirely. They will come down like the judgments of Sodom and Gomorrah. And none but the priesthood will be safe from their fury." (Wilford Woodruff, Young Women's Journal, Aug 1894, p. 512.)

Scriptures: My People Will I Preserve; They Shall Be Gathered Together in their Impenetrable Place

My People Will I Preserve – Moses 7:59-62: “And the day shall come that the earth shall rest, but before that day the heavens shall be darkened, and a veil of darkness shall cover the earth; and the heavens shall shake, and also the earth; and great tribulations shall be among the children of men, but my people will I preserve; And righteousness will I send down out of heaven; and truth will I send forth out of the earth, to bear testimony of mine Only Begotten; his resurrection from the dead; yea, and also the resurrection of all men; and righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with a flood”.

Note - Our social media missionary work today. We are in the "hastening." Elder Bednar and Elder Stevenson have called for using social media to flood the world with the gospel. Note also that the gospel has indeed been taken to all the world via the internet, at least on some level.

They Shall Be Gathered Together in Their Impenetrable Place – Alma 26:5-8: "Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh **they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them**; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them. But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day. Blessed be the name of the our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever."

Scriptures: Come Out (Exodus), Hide Until Indignation Past, Woman (Church) into Wilderness 3.5 Years, Joy in Wilderness

Come Out (Exodus) – Rev. 18:4: "Come out of her my people . . . that ye receive not of her **plagues**."

Note: "Come out" in Greek means "Exodus."

Note: Here we see that the gathering is specifically associated with avoiding PLAGUES.

Hide for a Little Moment Until the Indignation Past – Isa. 26:20-21: 20 Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast. 21 For, behold, the Lord cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain."

Woman (Church) into Wilderness 3.5 Years – Rev. 3:14: "And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent."

Joy in the Wilderness – Isa. 51:3: "For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody."

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE LATTER-DAY MISSION TO BUILD ZION



Note: Many of the quotes shared in this section on building Zion from early church leaders were compiled by Jesse Fisher in his masterpiece book, "Champions for Zion: Remarkable Teachings on Building Zion by Early LDS Leaders." I've worked with Fisher and he encourages sharing these teachings freely. His book shares many more quotes and further analysis than is presented here. See BuildingZion.org, jesse@buildingzion.org

When We Will Live the Law of Consecration in Zion We Will Be Blessed: Scriptures

Definition and Covenant of Consecration:

D&C 42:30–42: **30** And behold, thou wilt remember the poor, and consecrate of thy properties for their support that which thou hast to impart unto them, with a covenant and a deed which cannot be broken.
31 And inasmuch as ye impart of your substance unto the poor, ye will do it unto me; and they shall be laid before the bishop of my church and his counselors, two of the elders, or high priests, such as he shall appoint or has appointed and set apart for that purpose.
32 And it shall come to pass, that after they are laid before the bishop of my church, and after that he has received these testimonies concerning the consecration of the properties of my church, that they cannot be taken from

the church, agreeable to my commandments, every man shall be made accountable unto me, a steward over his own property, or that which he has received by consecration, as much as is sufficient for himself and family.
33 And again, if there shall be properties in the hands of the church, or any individuals of it, more than is necessary for their support after this first consecration, which is a residue to be consecrated unto the bishop, it shall be kept to administer to those who have not, from time to time, that every man who has need may be amply supplied and receive according to his wants.
34 Therefore, the residue shall be kept in my storehouse, to administer to the poor and the needy, as shall be appointed by the high council of the church, and the bishop and his council;
35 And for the purpose of purchasing lands for the public benefit of the church, and building houses of worship, and building up of the New Jerusalem which is hereafter to be revealed—
36 That my covenant people may be gathered in one in that day when I shall come to my temple. And this I do for the salvation of my people.
37 And it shall come to pass, that he that sinneth and repenteth not shall be cast out of the church, and shall not receive again that which he has consecrated unto the poor and the needy of my church, or in other words, unto me—
38 For inasmuch as ye do it unto the least of these, ye do it unto me.
39 For it shall come to pass, that which I spake by the mouths of my prophets shall be fulfilled; for I will consecrate of the riches of those who embrace my gospel among the Gentiles unto the poor of my people who are of the house of Israel.
40 And again, thou shalt not be proud in thy heart; let all thy garments be plain, and their beauty the beauty of the work of thine own hands;
41 And let all things be done in cleanliness before me.
42 Thou shalt not be idle; for he that is idle shall not eat the bread nor wear the garments of the laborer.

The Principle of Stewardship and Equality:

D&C 51:3–6: 3 Wherefore, let my servant Edward Partridge, and those whom he has chosen, in whom I am well pleased, appoint unto this people their portions, every man equal according to his family, according to his circumstances and his wants and needs.
4 And let my servant Edward Partridge, when he shall appoint a man his

portion, give unto him a writing that shall secure unto him his portion, that he shall hold it, even this right and this inheritance in the church, until he transgresses and is not accounted worthy by the voice of the church, according to the laws and covenants of the church, to belong to the church.
5 And if he shall transgress and is not accounted worthy to belong to the church, he shall not have power to claim that portion which he has consecrated unto the bishop for the poor and needy of my church; therefore, he shall not retain the gift, but shall only have claim on that portion that is deeded unto him.
6 And thus all things shall be made sure, according to the laws of the land.

Equality and Temporal Welfare:

D&C 78:3–7: **3** For verily I say unto you, the time has come, and is now at hand; and behold, and lo, it must needs be that there be an organization of my people, in regulating and establishing the affairs of the storehouse for the poor of my people, both in this place and in the land of Zion—
4 For a permanent and everlasting establishment and order unto my church, to advance the cause, which ye have espoused, to the salvation of man, and to the glory of your Father who is in heaven;
5 That you may be equal in the bonds of heavenly things, yea, and earthly things also, for the obtaining of heavenly things.
6 For if ye are not equal in earthly things ye cannot be equal in obtaining heavenly things;
7 For if you will that I give unto you a place in the celestial world, you must prepare yourselves by doing the things which I have commanded you and required of you.

The Storehouse and Distribution of Blessings:

3 Nephi 24:8–12: **8** Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.
9 Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.
10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.
12 And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

D&C 82:17–19: **17** And you are to be equal, or in other words, you are to have equal claims on the properties, for the benefit of managing the concerns of your stewardships, every man according to his wants and his needs, inasmuch as his wants are just—
18 And all this for the benefit of the church of the living God, that every man may improve upon his talent, that every man may gain other talents, yea, even an hundred fold, to be cast into the Lord's storehouse, to become the common property of the whole church—
19 Every man seeking the interest of his neighbor, and doing all things with an eye single to the glory of God.
20 This order I have appointed to be an everlasting order unto you, and unto your successors, inasmuch as you sin not.
21 And the soul that sins against this covenant, and hardeneth his heart against it, shall be dealt with according to the laws of my church, and shall be delivered over to the buffetings of Satan until the day of redemption.
22 And now, verily I say unto you, and this is wisdom, make unto yourselves friends with the mammon of unrighteousness, and they will not destroy you.

The Law of Tithing as the Standing Application of Consecration:

D&C 119: **1** Verily, thus saith the Lord, I require all their surplus property to be put into the hands of the bishop of my church in Zion,
2 For the building of mine house, and for the laying of the foundation of Zion and for the priesthood, and for the debts of the Presidency of my Church.
3 And this shall be the beginning of the tithing of my people.
4 And after that, those who have thus been tithed shall pay one-tenth of all their interest annually; and this shall be a standing law unto them forever, for my holy priesthood, saith the Lord.
5 Verily I say unto you, it shall come to pass that all those who gather unto the land of Zion shall be tithed of their surplus properties, and shall observe

this law, or they shall not be found worthy to abide among you.
6 And I say unto you, if my people observe not this law, to keep it holy, and by this law sanctify the land of Zion unto me, that my statutes and my judgments may be kept thereon, that it may be most holy, behold, verily I say unto you, it shall not be a land of Zion unto you.
7 And this shall be an ensample unto all the stakes of Zion. Even so. Amen.

Temporal Example: Joseph's Administration in Egypt:

Genesis 47:12–27: **12** And Joseph nourished his father, and his brethren, and all his father's household, with bread, according to *their* families.
13 ¶ And *there was* no bread in all the land; for the famine *was* very sore, so that the land of Egypt and *all* the land of Canaan fainted by reason of the famine.
14 And Joseph gathered up all the money that was found in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, for the corn which they bought: and Joseph brought the money into Pharaoh's house.
15 And when money failed in the land of Egypt, and in the land of Canaan, all the Egyptians came unto Joseph, and said, Give us bread: for why should we die in thy presence? for the money faileth.
16 And Joseph said, Give your cattle; and I will give you for your cattle, if money fail.
17 And they brought their cattle unto Joseph: and Joseph gave them bread *in exchange* for horses, and for the flocks, and for the cattle of the herds, and for the asses: and he fed them with bread for all their cattle for that year.
18 When that year was ended, they came unto him the second year, and said unto him, We will not hide *it* from my lord, how that our money is spent; my lord also hath our herds of cattle; there is not ought left in the sight of my lord, but our bodies, and our lands:
19 Wherefore shall we die before thine eyes, both we and our land? buy us and our land for bread, and we and our land will be servants unto Pharaoh: and give *us* seed, that we may live, and not die, that the land be not desolate.
20 And Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh; for the Egyptians sold every man his field, because the famine prevailed over them: so the land became Pharaoh's.
21 And as for the people, he removed them to cities from *one* end of the borders of Egypt even to the *other* end thereof.

22 Only the land of the priests bought he not; for the priests had a portion *assigned them* of Pharaoh, and did eat their portion which Pharaoh gave them: wherefore they sold not their lands.
23 Then Joseph said unto the people, Behold, I have bought you this day and your land for Pharaoh: lo, *here is* seed for you, and ye shall sow the land.
24 And it shall come to pass in the increase, that ye shall give the fifth *part* unto Pharaoh, and four parts shall be your own, for seed of the field, and for your food, and for them of your households, and for food for your little ones.
25 And they said, Thou hast saved our lives: let us find grace in the sight of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants.
26 And Joseph made it a law over the land of Egypt unto this day, *that* Pharaoh should have the fifth *part;* except the land of the priests only, *which* became not Pharaoh's.
27 ¶ And Israel dwelt in the land of Egypt, in the country of Goshen; and they had possessions therein, and grew, and multiplied exceedingly.

Blessings of Obedience and Prosperity:

Isaiah 30:23–24: **23** Then shall he give the rain of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day shall thy cattle feed in large pastures.
24 The oxen likewise and the young asses that ear the ground shall eat clean provender, which hath been winnowed with the shovel and with the fan.

Isaiah 35: **1** The wilderness and the solitary place shall be glad for them; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.
2 It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing: the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon, they shall see the glory of the Lord, *and* the excellency of our God.
3 ¶ Strengthen ye the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees.
4 Say to them *that are* of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come *with* vengeance, *even* God *with* a recompence; he will come and save you.
5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.
6 Then shall the lame *man* leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert.

7 And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the habitation of dragons, where each lay, *shall be* grass with reeds and rushes.
8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it *shall be* for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err *therein.*
9 No lion shall be there, nor *any* ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk *there:*
10 And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

Isaiah 58:10–12: **10** And *if* thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness *be* as the noonday:
11 And the Lord shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.
12 And *they that shall be* of thee shall build the old waste places: thou shalt raise up the foundations of many generations; and thou shalt be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell in.

Celestial Requirements and Zion:

D&C 105:2–5: **2** Behold, I say unto you, were it not for the transgressions of my people, speaking concerning the church and not individuals, they might have been redeemed even now.
3 But behold, they have not learned to be obedient to the things which I required at their hands, but are full of all manner of evil, and do not impart of their substance, as becometh saints, to the poor and afflicted among them;
4 And are not united according to the union required by the law of the celestial kingdom;
5 And Zion cannot be built up unless it is by the principles of the law of the celestial kingdom; otherwise I cannot receive her unto myself.
6 And my people must needs be chastened until they learn obedience, if it must needs be, by the things which they suffer.

Moses 7:18-21: **18** And the Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, and dwelt in righteousness; and there was no

poor among them.
19 And Enoch continued his preaching in righteousness unto the people of God. And it came to pass in his days, that he built a city that was called the City of Holiness, even Zion.
20 And it came to pass that Enoch talked with the Lord; and he said unto the Lord: Surely Zion shall dwell in safety forever. But the Lord said unto Enoch: Zion have I blessed, but the residue of the people have I cursed.
21 And it came to pass that the Lord showed unto Enoch all the inhabitants of the earth; and he beheld, and lo, Zion, in process of time, was taken up into heaven. And the Lord said unto Enoch: Behold mine abode forever.

Latter-day Zion: Foretold, Expected, & Commanded - Quotes from Early Leaders

Wilford Woodruff quoting Robert Mason said, "When you read the Bible do you ever think that what you read there is going to be fulfilled? The teachers of the day spiritualize the Bible, but when you read in the Bible about the dreams, visions, revelations and predictions of **Ezekiel, Isaiah, Jeremiah, or any other** of the Prophets or Apostles, relative to the gathering of Israel and the building up of Zion, where they say that Israel shall be gathered upon litters, swift beasts and dromedaries, you may understand that **it means just what it says, and that it will be fulfilled upon the earth in the last days**." - October 1856 General Conference Wilford Woodruff

Wilford Woodruff : He has set His hand to establish Zion—the great Zion of God—about which the prophets have said so much. No prophet has spoken more pointedly on this subject than Isaiah. Our drivings from Missouri, our persecutions, our travels along the Platte River, the manner of our coming to the mountains of Israel, our return again to the land of Zion and the building of the Temple in Jackson County have all been spoken of by Isaiah as well as by all the prophets who have spoken concerning the Zion of the latter days. – Wilford Woodruff, December 12, 1869

Daniel H. Wells: "Here is the Mission of the Saints to go and aid in the gathering of the poor, to labor here for the building of the Temple . . . and

prepare to redeem Zion and to build up the waste places thereof, and to establish the principles of righteousness and truth upon the earth." - Elder Daniel H. Wells, April 7, 1862

Brigham Young: . . .we will roll on the Kingdom of our God, gather out the seed of Abraham, build the cities and temples of Zion, and establish the Kingdom of God to bear rule over all the earth, and let the oppressed of all nations go free. - Brigham Young, July 8, 1855

Brigham Young: I have **Zion in my view constantly** – Brigham Young, 1862

Wilford Woodruff: I do not pretend to know how many tribulations or how much **suffering we shall yet have to endure before Zion is established** in her beauty and glory; but I do know that Zion is not going to be moved out of her place. The Lord, however, will chastise us until we become purified before Him. He will plead with His strong ones, and what He has said concerning Zion will come to pass. I hope that we may exercise wisdom in all things, that we may escape these afflictions. - Wilford Woodruff, 29 July 1889

Brigham Young: You were **annoyed with the ungodly conversation and filthy deeds of your neighbors**, your peace was destroyed, and you could not enjoy that **happiness held out to you in the Gospel**; yet you felt the influence of the spirit of truth burning in your heart, which kindled in you a longing desire to mingle with the Saints; you would exclaim . . ."Oh! **that I had means to gather** up my little family, and **journey** to the place of the gathering of the Saints of the Most High." This was your feeling, and this your prayer. You **anticipated deliverance** from hell, to find a heaven with the Saints; you expected to exchange confusion for a Zion of order and beauty . . . starvation for plenty . . . I think I have drawn a faithful picture of what were the thoughts of the majority of this people, before they were gathered to the body of the Church. - Brigham Young, 1853

Brigham Young: You hear brethren talk of coming to Zion to enjoy the blessings of this land; but do you not see that it is the short-sightedness of men which causes their disappointment when they arrive here? They read in the Bible, in the Book of Mormon, and Book of Doctrine and Covenants, about Zion, and what it is to be; but brother Park and others could not realize, before they came here, that **they were the ones to help to build up Zion**. They gather here with the spirit of Zion resting upon them, and

expecting to find Zion in its glory, whereas their own doctrine should teach them that they are coming here to make Zion. - Brigham Young, 185

Brigham Young: . . .we will roll on the Kingdom of our God, gather out the seed of Abraham, build the cities and temples of Zion, and establish the Kingdom of God to bear rule over all the earth, and let the oppressed of all nations go free. - Brigham Young, July 8, 1855

George Q. Cannon: As a people we are expecting the day to come when Jesus will descend in the clouds of Heaven; but **before** this day comes we must be prepared to receive him. The organization of society that exists in the heavens must exist on the earth; the same condition of society, so far as it is applicable to mortal beings, must exist here. And for this purpose God has revealed this Order; for this purpose He is bringing us into our present condition. A great many of the Latter-day Saints scarcely understand the persistency with which the Presidency of the Church has labored to bring about the **oneness of the people in temporal things**; and this cooperative movement is an important step in this direction and is designed to prepare them for the ushering in of this Order to which I have been alluding. It has already produced greater union, and it will produce still greater union than anything that has been witnessed among us; and if we carry it out in the spirit in which it has been taught to us it will produce immense results.

George Q. Cannon: **[W]hen Zion is organized properly, it will be found to be as admirably adapted to the [economic] wants of the children of men as the organization of the Church is today to the [spiritual]** wants of the people. There will be nothing lacking. In every particular it will be found adequate to the wants of humanity. The **evils under which mankind groan today, are attributable to the false organization of society**. The evils under which we groan as a people and from which we suffer are not due to any lack of knowledge as the method or the means that will correct these evils, but they are due to the fact that we ourselves fail to conform to the organization which God has prescribed, which God has revealed. – Elder George Q Cannon 1883

George Q. Cannon: Now, there are many points upon which we need correction. **We are guilty of many things that are not in accordance with the mind and will of God. There is a certain policy connected with the building up of Zion, a policy which God has sought to enforce upon us from the beginning until the present time**. It is to a great extent the same

policy that He urged upon and endeavored to enforce in the midst of Israel, when He led Israel out of Egypt. When He inspired Moses to take the steps that He did towards the emancipation of the children of Israel from the thralldom of the Egyptians, He had a definite purpose in view, and that was to make them a nation of His own, a people who should acknowledge Him as their God, and He wished to make a distinct race of them. For forty years He led them through the wilderness teaching them, counseling them, pleading with them, training them, in order **to relieve them as far as possible from the old traditions** with which they were burdened . . . Now, God in like manner has designed in these days in laying the foundation of Zion to establish a new order of things on the earth; to gather us out from the nations of the earth; to make us a peculiar people; to make us a holy and a pure people upon whom He could place His name and through whom He can accomplish His great designs and purposes on the earth; to make us a distinct people from every other people that lives upon the face of the earth, and through us to establish and perpetuate a new order of things on the earth which shall be **preparatory to** the ushering in of the full reign of righteousness through our Lord Jesus Christ. **It is for this that the heavens have been opened**. - August 26, 1883, President George Q. Cannon



Zion is to be Built Before Christ Returns – Quotes from Early Leaders

Brigham Young: "It now remains with us to bear off this kingdom, build up Zion, and establish the law thereof, **until** Christ shall reign King of nations . . ." - Brigham Young June 7, 1857 (the earliest mention of this idea during the Utah territorial period)

Orson Pratt: “Jeremiah tells us where [the ten tribes] will go; he tells us there is to be a place called Zion before these tribes come out of the north countries, and when they come with a great company, the blind and the lame with them, and the Lord God leads them with supplication and with tears and with prayers, bringing them forth from those dreary, desolate, cold arctic regions: when that day shall come there shall be a Zion prepared to receive these ten tribes, before they finally go back to Palestine. Is there anything in the Scriptures about this? Yes. In the same chapter of Jeremiah we read that “they shall come and sing in the height of Zion.” Zion, then, will have to be built up before they come; Zion will have to be reared somewhere and prepared to receive them; and it will be a holy place, and it will be a **holy people who will build up Zion**, so much so that the Lord will **bring these ten tribes in** to the height of Zion, into the midst of it. (Jer. 31:6-8)” - April 1875 General Conference

Note: the claims in the above quote can be discerned from the chapter headings of Revelation chapters 7 and 8.

Wilford Woodruff: Somebody or other has got to build up Zion . . . But before Christ comes, a people have got to be prepared by being sanctified before the Lord. Temples have got to be built; Zion has got to be built up; there must be a place of safety for the people of God while his judgments are abroad in the earth . . . - April 1876 General Conference

Wilford Woodruff : The kingdom of God is here, and the Lord will sustain it. But I can bear record as my brethren have, that this kingdom will stand; and that the Zion of God will remain upon the earth until Jesus shall come to receive us unto himself. - October 1889 General Conference, Wilford Woodruff as prophet.

Our Priesthood Duty to Build the Latter-day Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders

Wilford Woodruff: We have to build up Zion, a temporal work here upon the face of the earth, and we have got to establish righteousness and truth. - Elder Wilford Woodruff, April 1867 General Conference

Note: John Taylor spoke of building Zion in all but 2 of the 80 sermons he gave.

Erastus Snow: I do not mean that we shall cease feeding the hungry, no matter whether he is Saint or sinner; but cease to feed and build up the wicked who will not labor with us to develop the resources of the country and help to build up Zion. God has called us to turn away from the folly of sustaining and building up Babylon—the worshippers of mammon—those who have no interest in common with us in establishing Zion and building up the Kingdom of our God upon the earth. - Erastus Snow, April 1868 General Conference

Brigham Young: We are under obligations to establish the Zion of our God upon the earth, and establish and maintain its laws, so that the law of the priesthood of the Son of God may govern . . . the people. - Brigham Young, December 8, 1867

Heber C. Kimball: Every man that has received the Priesthood, whether an Apostle, Prophet, High Priest, Elder, Bishop, Priest, or Teacher—all should live as one man— be of one heart and one mind. - Heber C. Kimball, July 1, 1860

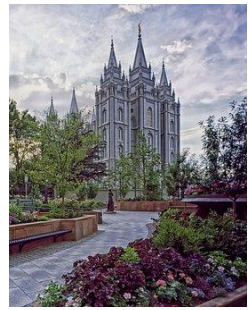
Brigham Young: Read the revelations in the Book of Doctrines and Covenants given through Joseph, and you will find that the burden of the gathering of the House of Israel, the building up of Zion, and the sanctifying of the people, and the preparing for the coming of the Son of Man is upon the elders of this church. - President Brigham Young, July 23, 1867

Wilford Woodruff: We ought not to treat lightly the holy priesthood, or attempt to use it for any other purpose under the whole heavens other than to build up the Zion of God. (Wilford Woodruff, July 3, 1880)

George Q. Cannon: Joseph said in the beginning that it was the duty of the Elders of this Church to labor constantly to build up Zion and not to build up that which is opposed to Zion. That embodies in these few words the policy that we should observe. (George Q. Cannon, August 26, 1883)

Wilford Woodruff: The Latter-day Saints cannot stand still; we cannot become stereotyped. God has decreed that his Zion must progress . . . It becomes us, as Latter-day Saints, to realize these things as they are, and also our position and calling before God. We must build up the Zion and kingdom of God on the earth, or fail in the object of our calling and

receiving the Priesthood of God in these latter days. - Wilford Woodruff, April 1873 General Conference



The Saints Gathered to Utah to Build Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders

Wilford Woodruff: I would to God that the eyes of the Latter-day Saints were open far more than they are to those things that rest upon them! The Lord is looking to them alone to build up his Zion here in the mountains of Israel, and to prepare the bride, the Lamb's wife, for the coming of the Great Bridegroom. - Wilford Woodruff, January 12, 1873

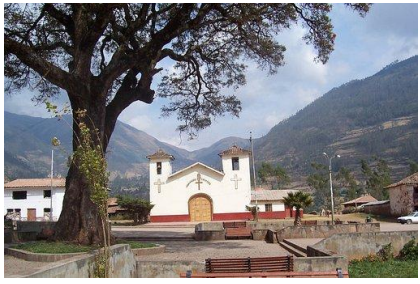
Brigham Young: We are gathered together in the tops of these mountains for the express purpose of building up Zion, the Zion of the last days, the glory of which was seen by the prophets of the Almighty from the days of old. - Brigham Young, January 2, 1868

Brigham Young: They strive to practice what they preach, and the Saints in the South are no exception to this rule. They are seeking to live their religion, to serve God, to perfect themselves in the knowledge of the truth, and to build up **a** Zion here in this Territory. - Brigham Young, Jr., April 1884 General Conference

John Taylor: Then again, did **Enoch build up a Zion? So we are doing**. What is it? The Zion of God. What does it mean? The pure in heart in the first place. In the second place those who are governed by the law of God—the pure in heart who are governed by the law of God. Shall we build up a Zion? We shall; but we shall not, every one of us, have our own way about it. We shall feel that we need the will of God; and we shall feel that we

require the Priesthood, under His direction, to guide and direct us, **not men who are seeking to aggrandize themselves**; but men who are seeking to build up the Church and Kingdom of God upon the earth; men of clean hands and pure hearts, every one honoring his Priesthood and magnifying it . . . **Now, this is what we are building up, and they built up a similar thing before the flood;** and the Elders went forth in those days as they now go forth; and they baptized people and laid hands upon them, and gathered them to Zion; and after a while that Zion was caught up from the earth. And we will build up a Zion: that is what we are aiming at. And that Zion also, when the time comes, will ascend to meet the Zion from above, which will descend, and both, we are told, will fall on each other's necks and kiss each other. These are some of the things we are after. And we are traveling about to teach the people. Why? Because we want all to have the spirit of Zion. We sing sometimes and talk about Zion, that she shall arise, and the glory of God shall rest upon her. We want to lift up Zion. (President John Taylor, October 20, 1881) p70

Orson Pratt: "Thus you see that the people who organize Zion through the everlasting Gospel which the angel brings, have good tidings to declare to all the inhabitants of the earth. But these people are required, according to this prophecy, **to get up into the high mountains**. You Latter-day Saints are four thousand three hundred feet above the level of the ocean, scattered over four hundred miles of Territory, north and south, and you are extending your settlements continually, and are building up some two hundred towns, cities and villages in the mountains of the great American desert, **fulfilling the prophecies** of the holy Prophets." - Orson Pratt March 9, 1873



Desire & Focus on Building Zion Now – Quotes from Early Leaders

Brigham Young: I have **Zion in my view constantly** – Brigham Young, 1862

Parly P. Pratt: [W]e shall have all the skill, and all the power, and all the wisdom, and all the treasures, and all the means necessary to build up Zion and do all things necessary to accomplish the purposes of God whereunto we are called." - Elder Parley P. Pratt, April 1856 General Conference.

Abraham O. Woodruff: We ought to desire to build up the **material Zion**; and while we may not be commanded in these things, we should, as the revelation which I have read says, be willing to do many things of our own free will and choice. - Abraham O. Woodruff, 1899 General Conference

Ezra Taft Benson: My dear brethren and sisters, **we must prepare to redeem Zion**. It was essentially the sin of pride that kept us from establishing Zion in the days of the Prophet Joseph Smith. It was the same sin of pride that brought consecration to an end among the Nephites. Pride is the great stumbling block to Zion. I repeat: Pride is the great stumbling block to Zion. We must cleanse the inner vessel by conquering pride. - President Ezra Taft Benson, April 1989 General Conference

George Q. Cannon: To build up Zion should be the thought of every heart—to labor to establish the cause of God in the earth, to be a [covenant] people. - George Q. Cannon, August 26, 1883

Brigham Young: There is not one thing wanting in all the works of God's hands to make a Zion upon the earth when the people conclude [ie. decide] to make it. - Brigham Young, February 23, 1862

Brigham Young: [D]o you want to be useful? If you do, take a course to be so, for this will bring us to the point where we can build up Zion and be of one heart and of one mind, and it will lead us to do all that we do in the name, in the love, and in the fear of our God. By so doing, if the fear of God is upon us, and we work with an eye single to the building up of Zion, our labors will be blessed. - Brigham Young, February 10, 1867

Brigham Young: [T]he man who is faithful to his calling and to this holy Priesthood, never goes hunting for gold or silver unless he is sent. Such men are found following their legitimate pursuits, working in their fields, in their workshops and gardens, making beautiful their habitations; in other words, engaged building up and assisting to establish the Zion of God on the earth, with their minds centered on the true riches and not upon the things of this world. - Brigham Young, June 17, 1877, two months before his passing.



Orson Pratt: Much patience and forbearance will need to be exercised before the Saints will get completely rid of their old traditions, Gentile notions, and whims about property, so as to come to that perfect law required of them in the revelations of Jesus Christ. But the day will come when there will be no poor in Zion, but the Lord will make them equal in earthly things, that they may be equal in heavenly things; that is, according to His notions of equality, and not according to our narrow, contracted views of the same. - Orson Pratt, April 1855 General Conference

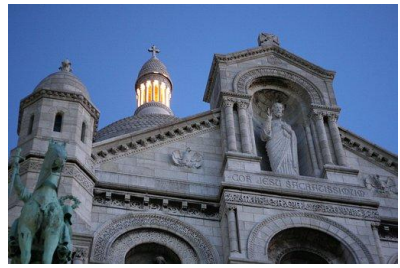
Brigham Young: I do not wish you to carry away a wrong impression of our true situation before the heavens relative to perfection. For you to be perfect, in one sense of the word, is to be prepared to inherit eternal glory in the presence of the Father and the Son. Should any mortal attain to this state of perfection, he could not longer remain among his fellow mortals. I do not want you so very perfect, but I am anxious that we should commence the growth of Zion in ourselves, and when we do this, we shall **cease to willingly hold fellowship with that which is evil**. But so long as we **willingly hold fellowship with that which tends to death and destruction, we cannot progress** as we should in the work of perfection in ourselves, nor in building up and beautifying Zion. - Brigham Young, February 23, 1862

Wilford Woodruff: [Selfishness] produces disunion and is inconsistent with the profession of a Saint of God. We should labor, each and every one of us to put such feelings from our hearts, and then we, in our family organizations, should strive to promote the general interest of the members

thereof; but the interest of Zion and the kingdom of God should be first with us all the time, for we are all members of that kingdom and its welfare is ours. - Wilford Woodruff, May 6, 1870

Gordon B. Hinckley said 121 years later in the October 1991 General Conference. He stated, “If we are to build that Zion of which the prophets have spoken and of which the Lord has given mighty promise, **we must set aside our consuming selfishness**. We must **rise above our love for comfort and ease**, and in the very process of effort and struggle, even in our **extremity**, we shall **become better acquainted with our God**.”

Brigham Young: The Lord is building up Zion, and is emptying the earth of wickedness, gathering his people, bringing again Zion, redeeming his Israel, sending forth his work, withdrawing his Spirit from the wicked world, and commencing to build up his kingdom. Can this be done without revelation? No. You will not make a move, or do anything—plant corn, build a hall or a temple, make a farm, or go to the States—no, not a thing towards building up Zion, without the power of revelation. - Brigham Young, July 28, 1861



Orson F. Whitney: How was this miracle of Enoch's city accomplished? Not by an empty and vain profession of righteousness; not by men seeking themselves, and their own honor and glory; not by heaping up gold and silver and precious stones; not by making a golden calf and bowing down and worshiping it; not by the rich grinding under heel the poor; not by the proud despising the humble; not by the poor hating and envying the rich. It was not done by loving the things of this world. But it was by the practice of the grand principle of self-denial, the principle of sacrifice—the foundation stone of the great fabric of human salvation. - Orson F. Whitney, September 22, 1889

George A. Smith: [A]ll that the Latter-day Saints have to do is to live within the confines of God's holy law and up to their privileges. Are we

doing so? Are we walking in accordance with these principles? Let us ask ourselves these questions, and if any of us are remiss, let us immediately commence to reform, humble ourselves before God, and be ready to sacrifice ourselves and all we have, if necessary, for the building up and redemption of Zion and for our salvation. - George A. Smith, May 5, 1870

Daniel H. Wells: We hold ourselves ready to go at a moment's warning to the uttermost parts of the earth to subserve the principles of our holy religion, by making them known to others, to save Israel and bring out those the Lord has scattered, to aid in building up Zion, and in building temples of the Most High, wherein we may go and receive the blessings of eternity. We hold our property—our possessions—on the altar, ready at a moment's notice to be handed over to subserve the cause of Zion. - Daniel H. Wells, February 22, 1857

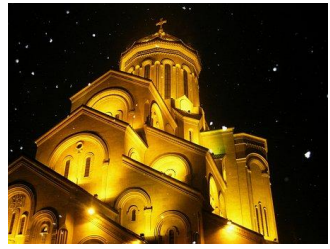
Lorenzo Snow: Hence we learn that the Saints in Jackson County and other localities, refused to comply with the order of consecration, consequently they were allowed to be driven from their inheritances; and should not return until they were better prepared to keep the law of God, by being more perfectly taught in reference to their duties, and learn through experience the necessity of obedience. And I think we are not justified in anticipating the privilege of returning to **build up the Center Stake of Zion, until we shall have shown obedience to the law of consecration**. One thing, however, is certain, we shall not be permitted to enter the land from whence we were expelled, till our hearts are prepared to honor this law, and we become sanctified through the practice of the truth. - Lorenzo Snow, October 1873 General Conference

Lorenzo Snow: The Lord, in Kirtland, established a United Order. He called certain individuals, and united them by revelation, and told them how to proceed . . . He told those people and the Church afar off, to listen and hearken to what he required of men in this Order, and of every man who belonged to the Church of the living God—that all that they received above what was necessary for the support of their families, was to be put in the Lord's storehouse, for the benefit of the whole Church. This is what is required of every man in his stewardship. And this is a law that is required to be observed by every man who belongs to the Church of the living God. Now, this is one of the main features of the United Order. We are not going

to stop here, in these valleys of the mountains. Many of us expect to go forth and build up the Center Stake of Zion; but before we are called, we must understand these things, and conform to them more practically than many of us do at the present time. - Lorenzo Snow, April 21, 1878



Brigham Young: Suppose we bring a few illustrations in regard to the present feelings and knowledge of the elders of Israel. We need not go back to Nauvoo or Kirtland, to find illustrations among our merchants, but take them as we find them here. If they enter upon their business without God in their thoughts, it is "How much can I get for this? And how much can I make on that? And how much will the people give for this and for that? And how last can I get rich? **And how long will it take me to be a *millionaire*?" Which thoughts should never come into the mind of a merchant who professes to be a Latter-day Saint**. But **it should be, "What can I do to benefit this people?**" And when they live, act, and do business upon this principle, and think, "What can I do to benefit the kingdom of God on the earth, to establish the laws of this kingdom, to make this kingdom and people honorable, and bring them into note, and give them influence among the nations, so that they can gather the pure in heart, build up Zion, redeem the House of Israel, and perhaps assist (though I do not thinks there will be any need of it), to gather the Jews to Jerusalem and prepare for the coming of the Son of Man?" - Brigham Young, February 3, 1867



Building Zion is Not Just Spiritual – Quotes from Early Leaders

Brigham Young: You know the old theory is that the kingdom of God, and all pertaining to it, is spiritual and not temporal; that is the traditional notion of our brother Christians. But a person may merely think until he goes down to the grave, and he will never be the means of saving one soul, not even his own, unless he adds physical labor to his thinking. He must think, and pray, and preach, and toil and labor with mind and body, in order to build up Zion in the last days. - Brigham Young, October 1855 General Conference

George Q. Cannon: There is that terrible tradition, that has such strong hold of all our minds, that the Priesthood of God and the religion of Jesus Christ have nothing to do particularly with temporal matters. It is a tradition almost as old as Christianity. It has come down to us for generations and centuries, and is fully interwoven in the hearts, minds and feelings of the children of men, and it is an exceedingly difficult thing to get them to comprehend that temporal things and spiritual things are alike in the sight of God; that there is no line of demarcation between the two; that the religion of Jesus Christ applies to one as much as another, and comprehends within its scope, temporal equally with spiritual matters. - George Q. Cannon, November 13, 1870

Daniel H. Wells: To build up Zion is a temporal labor; it does not consist simply in teaching: teaching is to instruct us how to properly apply our labor . . . Bone and sinew is required to build up the kingdom of God in the last days. - Daniel H. Wells, September 10, 1861

Heber C. Kimball: As members of the body of Christ we are called upon to labor and to do our part towards building up his kingdom, and should all have equal interest in that kingdom. We manifest our attachment to the principles of progress and improvement, both of which are intimately connected with the building up of Zion, when we plant orchards and vineyards, and when we make good gardens, good farms, and when we build good houses; in doing all of which we get a liberal reward as we go along. Then let us stretch forth our hands and build up the towns and cities of Zion. - Heber C. Kimball, September 2, 1863

L. Tom Perry: The Prophet had a design to build a community of Saints. He had three major objectives: first, economic; second, educational; and third, spiritual . . . The second basic principle is that of work. Work is just as important to the success of the Lord's economic plan as the commandment to love our neighbor. - L. Tom Perry, April 2001 General Conference

Brigham Young: It is the **duty of the brethren to know how to build a house, how to make a garden**, and how to do everything that can be accomplished by the ingenuity given to man. Why? That we may know how to build and beautify Zion. - Brigham Young, June 3, 1860

Brigham Young: Let every [tradesman] and every scientific man of all classes and occupations, and every woman, improve to the best of their ability, faithfully living their religion, and we shall be none too well qualified to build up Zion when that time arrives. **I never saw a stonemason who thoroughly understood his trade**. We have not a quarryman who fully understands getting out rock for the Temple walls. Then **how, amid such ignorance, are you going to properly lay the foundation of the New Jerusalem**—the Zion of our God? - Brigham Young, June 3, 1860

Brigham Young: No man is going to inherit a celestial glory, who trifles with the principles thereof. The man who does not labor from day to day and from hour to hour for building up this Kingdom and bringing forth the fulness of the Kingdom of God on the earth, and the establishment of Zion, will sooner or later, fall and go out of the Church. - Brigham Young, June 29, 1864

Orson Hyde: Then I say let the blacksmith attend to his blacksmithing and let him charge a reasonable price for his labor, and not, as has been the custom, charge three or four prices. Let the joiner do likewise, working constantly at that which will most conduce to the building up of Zion, and let the farmer raise the grain. Where you find a man who has plenty of grain to serve him from three to five years . . . tell him to go to work and build for his family a comfortable dwelling house, and point out to him that he is in this way finding employment for the mechanics, making his family comfortable and building up Zion. - Orson Hyde, October 1862 General Conference

George A. Smith: We can get up in our meeting and sing—"The cities of Zion soon shall rise." but how are they going to rise? We are going to build

them, so that they will rise far above the clouds; and to accomplish this we are going to build them on the high mountains. We are not only going to sing building them, but we are going to do the labor requisite to carry out our designs. - George A. Smith, October 20, 1861

Wilford Woodruff: We have it to do, **we can't build up Zion sitting on a hemlock slab singing** ourselves away to everlasting bliss; we have to cultivate the earth, to take the rocks and elements out of the mountains and rear Temples to the Most High God; and this temporal work is demanded at our hands by the God of heaven . . . This is the great dispensation in which the Zion of God must be built up, and we as Latter-day Saints have it to build. - Wilford Woodruff, October 1873 General Conference



Brigham Young: I sometimes think that I would be willing to give anything, to do almost anything in reason, to see one fully organized Branch of this kingdom—one fully organized Ward. "But," says one, "I had supposed that the kingdom of God was organized long ago." So it is, in one sense; and again, in another sense it is not. Wheresoever this Gospel has been preached and people have received it, the spiritual kingdom is set up and organized, **but is Zion organized? No. Is there even in this Territory a fully organized Ward? Not one**. It may be asked, "Why do you not fully organize the Church?" Because **the people are incapable** of being organized. I could organize a large Ward who would be subject to a full organization, by selecting families from the different Wards, but at present such a Branch of the Church is not in existence. - Brigham Young, October 1862 General Conference

Brigham Young: What is my feeling today? The same as it has been for years concerning houses, lands and possessions. I say to the people, "If you will **give me for my property half what it has cost me I will devote that means for the gathering** of the poor and the building of Zion upon the earth, and will **start again with nothing**. I have **done it before**, and I am willing to do it again . . . - Brigham Young, November 13, 1870

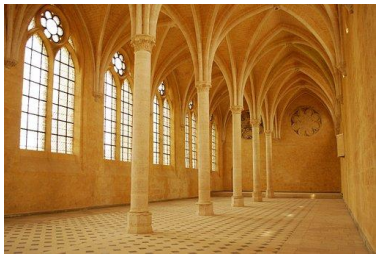
Jedediah M. Grant: Do not think you will be without your trials here, that you are to be a stereotyped edition to sit upon stools, singing glory to God, and that that is all you have to do. I have often said to the English brethren and sisters that were I in England . . . I would tell them the first things they might expect to meet in Zion, viz: **to leap into the mire and help** to fill up a mud hole, to make adobies with their sleeves rolled up, and be spattered with clay from head to foot; and that some would be set to ditching in Zion, to making ditch fence ankle deep in mire; and that they might expect to eat their bread by the sweat of their brow, as in their native country. - Jedediah M. Grant, September 25, 1854

Brigham Young: Go to **work and say nothing about wages**, but feel that "this is Zion; and what can I do to build it up, without asking any man to pay me one dollar?" Let that be your chief joy and delight, and **you will never lack** for work, food, or raiment. - Brigham Young, September 2, 1860

Wilford Woodruff: I want salvation, I wish to inherit eternal life, I wish to get back to the presence of God from whence I came, when I have finished my probation in the flesh. And I believe that I desire nothing in this respect but what you also wish. Then I know that **it requires my diligence and my constant labor and study**, the little time I have to spend in the flesh, to do all I can to build up Zion and to establish the Church and the kingdom of God upon the earth. - Wilford Woodruff, April 1878 General Conference

Brigham Young: I can say with all propriety that, if we had strictly followed the counsels that have been given from the commencement until today, instead of being in such poverty, as we are in one sense, we would be a self-sustaining, independent people, **commanding millions just as easy as we now command thousands**. But how unwise, how foolish some of our brethren are! I am ashamed of them, and their condition is deplorable. **Instead of beautifying their homes and improving their farms, and helping to reclaim the community and build up the Zion of the latter days, they have done—what? Dug holes** in the ground? [i.e. become miners] - Brigham Young, June 17, 1877

Brigham Young: But a person may merely think until he goes down to the grave, and **he will never be the means of saving one soul, not even his own, unless he adds physical labor to his thinking**. He must think, and pray, and preach, and toil and labor with mind and body, in order to build up Zion in the last days. - Brigham Young, October 1855 General Conference



Brigham Young: The **best business to pursue that was ever introduced on the face of the earth is to follow the path of eternal life. Why, it gives us fathers, mothers, wives, friends, houses and lands.** Jesus said they who followed Him would have to forsake these things. I reckon some of us have done it already; and all who will live faithful, may have the privilege of so doing. **Many of this people have sacrificed all** they possessed on this earth, **over and over again**, for the **truth's sake**; and if Jesus gave us the truth in relation to this, we shall be entitled to fathers, mothers, wives, children, gold and silver, houses, lands and possessions a **hundred-fold**. But we do not want the spirit of the world with all this. What is the advantage of following the path of life? It makes good neighbors, and fills everybody with peace, joy and contentment. Is there contention in a family that follows in the path of eternal life? Not the least. Is there quarrelling among neighbors where this course is followed? No. Any going to law one with another? Such a thing is unknown. I say praise to the Latter-day Saints, as far as these things are concerned. – Remarks by President Brigham Young in the New Tabernacle, Salt Lake City, April 6, 1869. Reported by David W. Evans

Leave Behind Babylon's Selfish Principles & Build Zion – Quotes from Early Leaders

Brigham Young: Are we going to be prepared for the coming of the Son of Man? Are we going to be prepared to enter into the fullness of the glory of the Father and the Son? Not so long as we live according to the principles of Babylon. Now we are every man for himself. One says: "This is **my property**, and I am for increasing it." Another says; "This is mine," Another: "I will do as I please; I will go where I please and when I please; I

will do this, that, or the other; and if I have a mind to raise grain here and take it to market and give it away, it is none of your business." **It will be said to all such persons, who profess to be Latter-day Saints—"I never knew you; you never were Saints**." - Brigham Young, April 18, 1874

Erastus Snow: For the last dozen years many of this people have been going on in the way that our fathers and the world generally walk in; and instead of building up Zion, have been after their personal and individual interests. - Erastus Snow, May 8, 1874

Lorenzo Snow: In the Gentile world, where the Gospel first reached us, our manner of training, our habits and our education, all went to influence our minds to look after self, and never to let our contemplations or meditations go beyond that which pertained to ourselves. In making any exertion that would in any way tend to benefit ourselves, to exalt ourselves, and assist us in amassing riches, or in gathering information that would confirm or aid in the bringing about this object, we considered we were doing first-rate, for that was the object of life with us . . . This is what our parents taught us to a great extent, and it mattered, with us, but very little, how or what course was pursued if we could gain those things we desired, if we could secure to ourselves those things which were necessary for our own comfort, and for our own individual temporal convenience. - Lorenzo Snow, March 1, 1857

Brigham Young: Have we separated ourselves from the nations? Yes. And what else have we done? Ask ourselves the question, Have we not brought Babylon with us? Are we not promoting Babylon here in our midst? Are we not fostering the spirit of Babylon that is now abroad on the face of the whole earth? I ask myself this question, and I answer, Yes, yes, to some extent and there is not a Latter-day Saint but what feels that we have too much of Babylon in our midst. The spirit of Babylon is too prevalent here. What is it? Confusion, discord, strife, animosity, vexation, pride, arrogance, self will and the spirit of the world. Are these things in the midst of those called Latter-day Saints? Yes, and we feel this. - Brigham Young, April 18, 1874

John Taylor: The world is going to the devil just as fast as it can go. Corruption, fraud, chicanery, deception, evil and iniquity of every kind prevail, so that you cannot trust a man in any place, you cannot rely upon his word, you cannot rely upon any instrument of writing that he gets up, and there is nothing you can rely upon. Every day's news brings accounts of

defalcations, frauds, infamies, rottenness and corruptions of every kind, enough to sink a nation from the presence of God and all honorable beings. And this is not only so in the United States, but other nations, in ours especially. **We, as a people, have come out from Babylon**, but **we have brought a great amount of these infernal principles with us**, and we have been grabbing, grasping, pinching, squeezing, hauling, horning and hooking on every side, and it seems as though every man was for himself and the devil for us all. That is about the position we are in today. - John Taylor, 1874

Erastus Snow: The United Order is designed to help us to be self-reliant and to teach us to understand what it costs to produce that which we consume. One of the chief obstacles in the way of our progress towards **becoming a self-sustaining people** is the lack of this understanding among the people. **They cling to the habits and customs of Babylon** that they have learned abroad—the **laborer wishing to eat up the capitalist, and the capitalist constantly guarded for fear he should . . . succumb to the demands of [labor's] operatives**. This is the way of the world, and the warfare that is going on all the time; and why? Because they comprehend not how to promote their mutual interests; covetousness of capital on one hand, and covetousness of labor on the other, **each trying to enrich itself at the expense of the other**. - Erastus Snow, June 3, 1877

Brigham Young: If you have the right to buy and sell and get gain, to go here and there, to do this and that, to build up the wicked and the ungodly, or their cities, you have rights that I have not got. **I have the right to build up Zion, but I have no right to build up a city in wickedness**. - Brigham Young, April 1867 General Conference

Brigham Young: We have gone just as far as we can be permitted to go in the road on which we are now traveling. One man has his **eye on a gold** mine, another is for a silver mine, another is for marketing his flour or his wheat, another for selling his cattle, another to raise cattle, another to get a farm, or building here and there, and trading and trafficking with each other, **just like Babylon, taking advantage wherever we can**, and all going just as the rest of the world. Babylon is here, and we are following in the footsteps of the inhabitants of the earth, who are in a perfect sea of confusion. Do you know this? You ought to, for there are none of you but what see it daily; it is a daily spectacle before your eyes and mine, to see the Latter-day Saints trying to take advantage of their brethren. There are Elders

in this Church who **would take the widow's last cow, for five dollars, and then kneel down and thank God** for the fine **bargain** they had made. - Brigham Young, April 18, 1874

Franklin D. Richards: Does it not make your souls rejoice in the Lord, that He has established His people, and to realize that you are blessed above measure in having a name and a place in this city or territory? **You are better off this afternoon in this place, in rags, and begging your bread, than in England, Scotland, or Wales, earning one hundred pounds per annum**. You would there be dwelling among the cloudy mists of Babylon, where you dare not say your souls were your own. You could make but little advancement in your holy religion there; but here [in Utah] you can receive words of life from those whom God has appointed to lead His people into the way of salvation. - Franklin D. Richards, October 1853 General Conference

Brigham Young: Suppose that every person who comes into these valleys should come with a determination to be led by the Lord, from day to day; suppose they should say, "I will serve my God and keep His commandments . . . and this will I do from this time, henceforth and forever;" and then let each one faithfully maintain such a determination, and we could truly say that we have the Territory of Zion, and the spirit, light, glory, and power thereof, and that the God of Zion dwells with this people. But if we bring our old traditions with us . . . and say**, "I will do so and so, this is the path I will pursue, and I am determined to walk in it, regardless of everything else," then we may expect to be overthrown**, and the spirit of the holy Gospel will depart from us. Then you would soon learn that there was no temporal**, no natural prospect for this people to escape from utter destruction** - Brigham Young, April 1855 General Conference



Zion Includes Economic Independence from Babylon – Quotes from Early Leaders

Brigham Young: There are certain rules in life and certain principles to be observed by this people. They must cease trading with those who would destroy us. To be called out from the wicked, and then take a course to call the wicked to us, how inconsistent it is! If the Lord were to say, "I will let the wicked drive you again, and I will call you to another place, where there is no one to disturb you;" how long would it be until the course taken by many would call the wicked in among us again, to seek to destroy us? The Latter-day Saints must stop this course, or they will bring evil upon themselves, and we will have to leave. These are the things we have to learn. We have the privilege of choosing now. It is in our hands, it is within our power, whether we will stay in these mountains and build up the Zion of our God, **or make the wicked and ungodly fat by our labor and give them our possessions**. This many are doing, by **running in debt to our enemies**, and pursuing a course that is wrong. If they do not cease it they will have cause to weep and mourn. - Brigham Young, 1868

George A. Smith: Man's wants are very numerous, but his necessities are really very few, and we should abridge our wants, and go to work and manufacture everything we can within ourselves; and what we cannot manufacture we can import, and save ourselves the 40, 120, 400, or 1,000 percent that we are now paying for our merchandise, and so **stop building up those who are laying a foundation, openly and above board, for our destruction**. And furthermore, **cease to fellowship every man that will not build up Zion.** Amen. - George A. Smith, October 1868 General Conference

John Taylor: But the ship of Zion is onward; the "little stone" is hewn out of the mountain without hands, and will roll until it fills the whole earth . . . But let us unite closer together, and harmonize our temporal interests, until we shall manufacture everything we need to make us independent of the world. - President John Taylor, September 22, 1878



Erastus Snow: How long do you think it would take if we were all producers, and converting the raw materials into useful articles, to become a self-sustaining people? And then if we heard of Babylon's downfall, we would not of necessity lift up our hands and cry, **"O Lord spare her a little longer, we are not ready for her to go down, we should suffer from the want** of boots and shoes, and for our clothing, and our machinery, and so forth." The United Order is designed to help us to be self-reliant and to teach us to understand what it costs to produce that which we consume. One of the chief obstacles in the way of our progress towards becoming a self-sustaining people is the lack of this understanding among the people. They cling to the habits and customs of Babylon that they have learned abroad. - Erastus Snow, June 3, 1877

John Taylor: What has been the teachings to this people for years? To be self-sustaining. - John Taylor, April 1867 General Conference

Daniel H. Wells: We have a great deal to do to destroy wickedness and establish righteousness upon the earth, and to prepare ourselves for the establishment of Zion, that she may become the head upon the earth . . . Do we feel that we will do right and hold ourselves and all that we possess upon the altar of the kingdom of God? Do we feel that we should be **diligent and economical**, that we should seek unto the elements that we are surrounded with, and take that course that will make us the **most independent people upon the earth**? If we should bless the earth and ask God to bless it, that it may bring forth for our support and sustenance, and that we may have power to draw forth and combine the elements, and thus make us independent of every nation, kindred, tongue, and people. - Daniel H. Wells, September 30, 1860

George A. Smith: We have been talking about the United Order, and getting up tanneries, shoe shops, &c., and [initial] steps have been taken in some of the settlements with these objects in view; but it takes time to carry out and successfully accomplish such projects. But we can produce these

things within ourselves, and it is our duty to do it, and instead of manifesting a disposition to oppose anything of this kind, we should exert all the influence and energy we possess to bring it about, and to make ourselves self-sustaining . . . the work of making Zion self-sustaining must be regarded as part of the work of the Lord; for it is an obligation devolving upon us to provide within ourselves labor and the [necessities] of life. We must take hold of this matter, brethren and sisters, with all our hearts, and **never let ourselves rest until Zion is independent of her enemies and all the world**. - George A. Smith, October 1874 General Conference



L. Tom Perry: The Prophet had a design to build a community of Saints [i.e. Zion]. He had three major objectives: first, economic; second, educational; and third, spiritual. The Prophet **Joseph Smith's desire was that the Saints should become economically self-sufficient** . . . A treasured remnant of our heritage of economic self-sufficiency is the Church Welfare Services program. - April General Conference in 2001, Elder L. Tom Perry

D&C 78: 3-6: 3 For verily I say unto you, the time has come, and is now at hand; and behold, and lo, it must needs be that there be an organization of my people, in regulating and establishing the affairs of the storehouse for the poor of my people, both in this place and in the land of Zion— 4 For a permanent and everlasting establishment and order unto my church, to advance the cause, which ye have espoused, to the salvation of man, and to the glory of your Father who is in heaven; 5 That you may be equal in the bonds of heavenly things, yea, and earthly things also, for the obtaining of heavenly things. 6 For if ye are not equal in earthly things ye cannot be equal in obtaining heavenly things;

D&C 78: 13-14: 13 Behold, this is the preparation wherewith I prepare you, and the foundation, and the ensample which I give unto you, whereby you may accomplish the commandments which are given you; 14 That through

my providence, notwithstanding the tribulation which shall descend upon you, that the church may stand independent above all other creatures beneath the celestial world;



John Taylor: We raise a large amount of wool here, what do we do with it? We export a great deal of it to the States. We have got a large amount of excellent timber here, what do we do for our furniture? We send to the States for a great deal of it. Where do we get our pails and our washtubs, and all our cooper ware from? We send to the States for it. Where do we get our brooms from? From the States; and so on all the way through the catalogue, and millions on millions of **dollars are sent out** of the Territory every year, for the purchase of articles, most of which we could manufacture and raise at home. **This is certainly very poor economy, for we have thousands and thousands of men who are desirous to get some kind of employment, and they cannot get it. Why? Because other people are making our shoes**, hats, clothing, bonnets, silks, artificial flowers, and many other things that we need. This may do very well for a while in an **artificial state** of society; but the moment any reverse comes that kind of thing is upset, and all our calculations are destroyed. - John Taylor, May 7, 1874

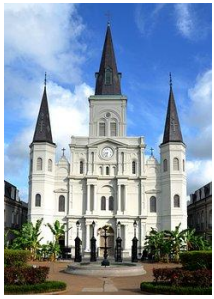
George Q. Cannon: But this is only one article. When we sit down to our tables, and take a survey, we find many articles that are thus imported. It may be, and frequently is said by a certain class of persons that articles can be **imported much cheaper** than they can be manufactured here. This is urged by them as a reason for importing; but it is a delusion and a snare, and the man who utters such a sentiment is an **ignoramus**. He knows **nothing about the true principles** of building up a people and kingdom. That which is manufactured here, **though it cost ten times** the amount it would cost in the east, **is the cheaper**, for that is the commencement of independence. The man or the family who carries on home manufacture is laying the foundation

for true and lasting independence. - George Q. Cannon, April 1868 General Conference

Heber C. Kimball: And I know another thing, that a great many people are becoming so proud—well, perhaps it is not pride, but they have got so that they cannot dress and clothe themselves with anything that is not brought here by the merchants. Many will bring in their wool, and their linsey, and their good clothing that they make here from the wool, and give it to clothe the Indians, for they are too proud to wear it themselves. But **the day will come when the merchants of the earth will lift up their heads and their voices, and cry out, "We have no place to sell our merchandise**." - Heber C. Kimball, November 26, 1854

Brigham Young: Are you going to prepare for [Babylon's fall]? We say we are the people of God and are building up the kingdom of God. We say we are gathered out of the nations to establish Zion. **Let us prove it by our works, and we will then manufacture that which we wear**. Do we make clothing enough for me and you to wear? Yes; plenty. - Brigham Young, February 2, 1870

Brigham Young: I am satisfied that the people now begin to learn that they can make their own clothing, and that those who do not learn will run the risk of being uncomfortably clad. **But would this people, by their wisdom, ever have brought themselves to that independence that God will, by his providence, in a seeming chastisement? I say seeming, for it is no chastisement: it is a blessing to this people, and one of the greatest that can be bestowed upon us, to cut the thread between us and our enemies, and oblige us to sustain ourselves** in everything that we can produce with our labor, skill, and economy. The Lord can bring this about, or cause the Devil to do it, just as he pleases. - Brigham Young, March 28, 1858



Zion Requires Economic Unity – Quotes from Early Leaders

Lorenzo Snow: Now, perhaps **I do not believe as some do in regard to the United Order— that everybody is to come together and throw all their substance into a heap**, and then come and take of it as they please, or that one man who does not understand temporal affairs at all should be placed as a steward over extensive concerns. I believe that **there is an order** in these things—a pleasing and an agreeable order—and that these things are arranged by the Lord in such a way that when people properly understand them they will be satisfied and admire them. It is because we do not get to understand the requirements of God that we are dissatisfied. God fixes these matters up and arranges them in such a way as will tend to the exaltation of every Latter-day Saint who is disposed to honor them. It is **because of our ignorance that we are displeased with the requirements of the Lord**. - Apostle Lorenzo Snow October 19, 1879

Wilford Woodruff: We are one of heart and mind, as it regards faith, repentance, baptism, or the first principles of the gospel of Jesus Christ; but **the same unity must exist in our midst in all our temporal labors**—in building temples, tabernacles, cities, towns, villages, canals, cultivating the earth, or any other labor, if we ever accomplish the object for which we have been raised up. **No people, unless they are united together, can ever build up Zion and establish the Kingdom of God** on the earth. - Wilford Woodruff, April 1867 General Conference

Brigham Young: I have looked upon the community of the Latter-day Saints in vision and beheld them organized as one great family of heaven, each person performing his several duties in his line of industry, working for the good of the whole **more than for individual aggrandizement**; and in this I have beheld the most beautiful order that the mind of man can contemplate, and the grandest results for the upbuilding of the kingdom of God and the spread of righteousness upon the earth. Will this people ever come to this order of things? Are they now prepared to live according to that patriarchal order that will be organized among the true and faithful before God receives His own? We all concede the point that when this mortality falls off; and with it its cares, anxieties, love of self, love of wealth, and love of power, and all the conflicting interests which pertain to this flesh, that then, when our spirits have returned to God who gave them, we will be

subject to every requirement that He may make of us, that we shall then live **together as one great family**; our interest will be a general, a common interest. - January 12, 1868, President Brigham Young



Note: Jesse Fisher, who has done extensive research on economic teachings of early church leaders (see his book Champions for Zion), states that **we do not find a single statement among all the Zion-building quotes that even hinted that redistribution of wealth was ever contemplated** among the early LDS leaders. Rather, their focus is redirected to God and accomplishing His will, instead of their own will and benefit. The leaders encouraged them to re-focus their wealth-building skills and capital into productive projects which would help the territory be self-sufficient, provide honest work, manufacture what the territory needed, and build economic unity among the Saints.

George Q. Cannon: The intention is to use the skill of the businessman in elevating those who are not businessmen, to bring up the poor from their level to the broad upper level, not to pull down the upper level to the plane of the lower. That is not the design, but it is that we shall work for each other's good . . . - President George Q. Cannon, October 1874 General Conference

Daniel H. Wells: But do we realize that God's kingdom in the latter days is to all intents and purposes a temporal kingdom? And do we realize that if we had stayed in the world [back East] we could have served him spiritually there as well as here? But what kind of a kingdom would that have been for the Savior to rule over when he comes? **When he comes, he is going to reign over a temporal kingdom**, composed of men and women who do his will on the earth. Everything that pertains to us in our life is temporal, and over us and all we possess our Heavenly Father and his Son Jesus Christ will reign, as well as over all the kingdoms of the world when they become the kingdoms of our God and his Christ. **To build up Zion is a temporal labor** . . . - Daniel H. Wells, September 10, 1861

Lorenzo Snow: When one goes into cooperation [i.e. economic unity] with proper spirit and proper views, to superintend or **operate in any of its departments, he has a lawful claim to the Spirit of inspiration, to aid him in his calling**. We read that Jacob, through his honesty of purpose, fair-dealing, and freedom from selfishness, was assisted by an holy Angel with information how to increase and multiply his flocks. It is far better to build up the kingdom of God, in its temporal interests, by the Spirit of God and the wisdom of God, than by the spirit of man and the wisdom of man; on the latter principle we shall always fail, but on the former the results will always be successful. - Lorenzo Snow, October 1873 General Conference



George Q. Cannon: I have endeavored to describe to you the influence we wield because of our union in spiritual matters. The same remark will apply exactly to our union in temporal matters. Let this people be **united in temporal** matters; let it be known that we work together for one another's good, that we labor, as a people to **benefit the whole and not the individual**, and that our influence is in this direction; and I tell you that the same influence, the same power, that wield now as a spiritual organization will be felt in our temporal affairs, in our financial affairs, in all the affairs in fact which attract our attention. - George Q. Cannon, April 1878 General Conference

Orson Pratt: Again, how great would be the benefit to a body of people—to say nothing of households and families—located for instance, in one region of the country, a people who were united together according to the law of God, desiring to advance each other's welfare and happiness, and each man was required to love his neighbor as himself; a people who knew how to so conduct their, temporal affairs that each man's neighbor might be benefited as well as himself; and each one **looking not only for his own welfare or that of his own household, but for the welfare of the whole community,** with whom he was associated, producing at last that unity and oneness which the Lord requires in the numerous revelations which he has given. - Orson Pratt, August 25, 1878

Brigham Young: Can you go to work and make a people of one heart and mind while they are possessed of the spirit of the world? You cannot . . . **How can they devote their lives to the building up of the Kingdom of God when they do not delight in it, but delight in building themselves up, in making gain**, and in gathering around them the riches of the world? The Latter-day Saints, in their conduct and acts with regard to financial matters, are like the rest of the world. The course pursued by men of business in the world has a tendency to make a few rich, and to sink the masses of the people in poverty and degradation. Too many of the Elders of Israel take this course. No matter what comes they are for gain—for gathering around them riches; and when they get rich how are those riches used? Spent on the lusts of the flesh, wasted as a thing of nought, and they who were once rich are left in poverty, as they are this day . . . Instead of being united in our feelings to build up all, each one takes his own course; whereas, if we were united, we would get rich ten times faster than we do now. - Brigham Young, April 1867 General Conference



Brigham Young: You were **annoyed with the ungodly conversation and filthy deeds of your neighbors**, your peace was destroyed, and you could not enjoy that **happiness held out to you in the Gospel**; yet you felt the influence of the spirit of truth burning in your heart, which kindled in you a longing desire to mingle with the Saints; you would exclaim . . ."Oh! **that I had means to gather** up my little family, and **journey** to the place of the gathering of the Saints of the Most High." This was your feeling, and this your prayer. You **anticipated deliverance** from hell, to find a heaven with the Saints; you expected to exchange confusion for a Zion of order and beauty . . . starvation for plenty . . . I think I have drawn a faithful picture of what were the thoughts of the majority of this people, before they were gathered to the body of the Church. - Brigham Young, 1853

Brigham Young: You hear brethren talk of coming to Zion to enjoy the blessings of this land; but do you not see that it is the short-sightedness of men which causes their disappointment when they arrive here? They read in the Bible, in the Book of Mormon, and Book of Doctrine and Covenants, about Zion, and what it is to be; but brother Park and others could not realize, before they came here, that **they were the ones to help to build up Zion**. They gather here with the spirit of Zion resting upon them, and expecting to find Zion in its glory, whereas their own doctrine should teach them that they are coming here to make Zion. - Brigham Young, 185

Economic Cooperatives Are a Steppingstone to Zion & Bring Blessings – Quotes from Early Church Leaders

Note from Jesse Fisher's Champions of Zion: **Early Utah-era LDS leaders saw that the Saints were quickly dividing into classes of rich and poor**. They saw the **values of Babylon were being brought into Utah** by immigrating Saints. They were determined to establish Zion, but knew that the Saints had blown their opportunity under Joseph's tutelage to live the celestial-level law of economics. However, the **LDS leaders found an intermediate step between Babylon's telestial-level economics and Zion's celestial-level United Order. That "stepping stone" was Cooperative Free Enterprise— pursuing mutual economic independence and self-sufficiency in a cooperative fashion in a free market.** The Church leaders fully embraced the cooperative as a means to **prepare the Saints for the higher** economic law.

Note from Jesse Fisher's Champions of Zion: Drawing upon Arrington's book "Great Basin Kingdom": the most impressive example of Cooperative Free Enterprise among the Saints: Brigham City, Utah. Under the direction of Apostle Lorenzo Snow, Brigham City, over the span of 10 years, became a world-renown cooperative community. At their peak, all 2,000 inhabitants owned shares in and were employed in one of 40-odd manufacturing cooperatives in town. It was estimated that they produced 85% of all the consumer goods their community needed. In fact, during the world-wide banking panic of 1873, Brigham City had its best year ever. Arrington noted

that Lorenzo Snow began this economic miracle by establishing a single marketing co-op in Brigham City. The co-op bought goods produced locally and sold them locally. The profits were used to organize local producers into new cooperatives which manufactured consumer goods needed there in Brigham City. This process was repeated until everything produced in Brigham City was sold through the co-op. The **town was so prosperous that they built homes for all the widows** and would **give food and work to passing** indigents…. Again pointing to GBK of Arrington: The goal was threefold: to curb the drain of money out of Utah by non-member merchants, to help Utah become more self-sustaining, and to prevent the rise of a wealthy class in Utah…. Arrington said, "Cooperative farming, cooperative herding, cooperative processing and manufacturing of grain, dairy products, leather, wool, cotton, and silk—**cooperation in each activity and in each community was the dominant organizational pattern** of Mormon economic life . . ."

George A. Smith: We are **looking forward to the day when we shall return to Jackson** County . . . That will one day be the Center Stake of Zion, the center spot of the New Jerusalem which God is to build on this land. We can only be prepared for that work by being united . . . Can we not unite a little in erecting a [cooperative] factory, in establishing a store? Can we not learn, step by step, the principles of unity, which will enable us to be the people of God, like the Zion of Enoch, and prepare us for a dwelling with the blest? Every step we take of this kind is in the right direction. Sustain our **Cooperative stores, and cease to sustain those who do not build up Zion**. Elder George A. Smith in the October 1873 General Conference



Brigham Young: I want to impress one thing on the minds of the people, which will be for their advantage if they will hear it. When you start your Cooperative Store in a ward, you will find the men of capital stepping forward, and one says, "I will put in ten thousand dollars;" another says, "I will put in five thousand." But I say to you, bishops, do not let these men

take five thousand, or one thousand, but call on the brethren and sisters who are poor and tell them to put in their five dollars or their twenty-five, and let those who have capital stand back and give the poor the advantage of this quick trading. This is what I am after and have been all the time. - Brigham Young, 1869

George Q. Cannon: A great many of the Latter-day Saints scarcely understand the persistency with which the Presidency of the Church has labored to bring about the oneness of the people in temporal things; and this cooperative movement is an important step in this direction . . . It has already produced greater union, and it will produce still greater union than anything that has been witnessed among us; and if we carry it out in the spirit in which it has been taught to us it will produce immense results. (George Q. Cannon in the April 1869 General Conference)

Brigham Young: This cooperative movement is only a **stepping stone to what is called the Order of Enoch**, but which is in reality the Order of Heaven. - Brigham Young, April 1869 General Conference

Lorenzo Snow: I view cooperation, when properly understood and practiced, as being a steppingstone to the Order of Enoch, and will enable the Saints who receive it in a proper spirit, to gradually prepare themselves to enter, in due time, more fully into the practice of principles necessary to accomplish the building up of the kingdom of our God. - Lorenzo Snow, October 1873 General Conference

Wilford Woodruff: Cooperation, it is well known to every Saint who has his eyes and ears open, has **brought much good to Israel** . . . - Wilford Woodruff, May 1870

George Q. Cannon: [C]o-operation and its necessity . . . has required days, weeks, and it may be said years of preaching to bring this principle home to the minds of the Latter-day Saints, so that they could see and understand its **beauty and propriety**, and the advantages which would result from its adoption in our midst. - George Q. Cannon, November 1870

John Taylor: But I will promise the Latter-day Saints that if they will go into these [cooperative enterprises] allowing God to dictate in the interests of Israel and the building up of his Zion on the earth, and take themselves and their individual interests out of the question, feeling they are acting for him and his kingdom, they will **become** the **wealthiest of all people**, and

God will bless them and **pour out wealth and intelligence** and all the blessings that earth can afford; but if you will not, you will go downward, and keep going the downward road to disappointment and poverty in things spiritual as well as temporal. I dare prophesy that, in the name of the Lord. - President John Taylor, March 1879



George Q. Cannon: No one man, until quite recently, has had sufficient means to carry on any great undertaking; but by the masses of the people uniting under **a cooperative plan, and putting their funds in the hands of those who are judicious and good business men,** we can establish every kind of manufacture that is necessary in this country to make us self-sustaining. - George Q. Cannon, April 1875 General Conference

Charles C. Rich: If we do not so cooperate, others may come in who have no interest in our prosperity, who will trade and traffic, and when they become wealthy would leave us and **spend their means elsewhere**. This has been our experience in years past with those who have come among us with their merchandise. We can prevent this in the future by our cooperative institutions. It is right and proper that we should combine for self-defense against this world, and so protect our general interests. - Charles C. Rich, November 1877

Brigham Young: [C]ooperation was referred to by Brother Taylor. The man or woman who is opposed to this is opposed to God . . . **We cannot do his will, nor be his disciples unless we are one**. We must have the same faith and feelings for the building up of the kingdom of God, and for the salvation of ourselves and others, jointly, together, or we shall fail in our attempts to accomplish the work which the Lord has given us to do. - Brigham Young, June 1873

Erastus Snow: It is not great dividends that are going to make either the United Order, or any of our cooperative associations prosperous, permanent

and successful, but honesty and straightforward business habits, and contentment with 12 - Cooperation is a Stepping Stone to Zion 170 reasonable profits and rewards for our labors. - Erastus Snow, April 1875 General Conference

John Taylor: We took a vote at the **Priesthood** meeting, yesterday, and so far as I could discern, the brethren all **voted to sustain cooperation** . . . - President John Taylor, September 1878

Brigham Young: I was present at the time the revelation came for the brethren to give their surplus property into the hands of the Bishops for the building up of Zion. . . . If we are disposed to enter into covenant one with another, and have an agreement made according to the laws of our land, and we are **disposed to put our property into the hands of trustees**, and work as we are directed . . . **the Lord has not the least objection in the world**, and would be perfectly willing for us to do it, and I should like, right well, for us to try it. - Brigham Young, April 1873 General Conference

Abraham O. Woodruff: We ought to **desire to build up the material Zion**; and while we may not be commanded in these things, we should, as the revelation . . . says, be willing to do **many things of our own free will** and choice. - Elder Abraham O. Woodruff (Wilford's son), October 1899 General Conference

Brigham Young: Suppose we should say to a few of the Latter-day Saints, if we could find those who would answer the purpose, "How would you like to build up a stake of Zion, a little city of Enoch? How would you like this? Would you like to enter into a covenant, and into bonds, according to the law of our land, and let us **bind ourselves together to go into a systematic cooperative system**, not only in merchandising, but in farming and in all mechanical work, and in every trade and business there is; and we will classify the business throughout, and we will gather together a few hundred families, and commence and keep the law of God, and preserve ourselves in purity." How would the latter-day Saints like it? Do you think there could any be found who would be willing to do this?... Brigham Young, October 1872 General Conference

George Q. Cannon: Now we are brought face to face with this question, shall we take these counsels to heart, **shall we listen to the voice of God through his servants which we have heard now these 42 years** in these valleys, and follow the direction which they have given concerning the

people of Zion, or shall we make a new departure? Shall we throw aside all that we have heretofore been taught as the correct course and policy to be adopted **in building up the kingdom of God**, shall we throw it aside, cast it behind us and adopt some new principles, some new policy and practice **concerning the Zion** of our God in the earth? - George Q. Cannon, September 1889

Brigham Young: I will tell you that which I expect will hurt the feelings of many of you: Among this people, called Latter-day Saints, **when the devil has got the crowns, sovereigns, guineas and the twenty dollar pieces, it has been all right; but let the Lord get a sixpence and there is an eternal grunt** about it. – Remarks by President Brigham Young in the New Tabernacle, Salt Lake City, April 6, 1869. Reported by David W. Evans

Brigham Young: What I have in my mind with regard to this cooperative business is this— There are very few people who cannot get twenty-five dollars to put into one of these cooperative stores. There are hundreds and thousands of women who, by prudence and industry, can obtain this sum. And we say to you **put your capital into one of these stores. What for? To bring you interest for your money. Put your time and talents to usury. We have the parable before us.** If we have one, two, three or five talents, of what advantage will they be if we wrap them in a napkin and lay them away? None at all. Put them out to usury. **These cooperative stores are instituted to give the poor a little advantage as well as the rich**. I have said to my brethren, in starting these stores in different places, "If you want help I will find means to put in to give the thing a start;"… - Remarks by President Brigham Young in the New Tabernacle, Salt Lake City, April 6, 1869. Reported by David W. Evans

A Possible Last Days Chiastic Timeline, Based on Restoration Events

By Jesse Fisher, shared with permission.

Historic Events in Order:

A. Christ appears to Joseph Smith. (1820)

B. Translation of the Book of Mormon completed. (1829)

C. First missionaries called to preach to the Lamanites. (1830)

D. Location of the New Jerusalem revealed to Joseph Smith. (1831)

E. Joseph Smith leads Zion's Camp to help Saints expelled from Jackson County. (1834)

F. Twelve Apostles ("traveling councilors") are called and sent to preach to all nations. (1835)

G. Christ, Moses, Elias, & Elijah give keys to Joseph Smith & Oliver Cowdery. (1836)

H. Joseph & Hyrum Smith martyred at Carthage Jail. (1844)

I. Brigham Young leads many Saints into Salt Lake Valley. (1847)

J. Saints are gathered to Utah to build Zion for 40 years. (1850s-1880s)

K. Babylon makes war against the Saints & its economy absorbs them. (1887+)

Prophecied Last Days events that appear to align with historic events in reverse order:

K'. Babylon falls and releases its economic hold on the Saints. (Rev.18)

J'. Some Zion society will be built for people to flee to for safety. (D&C 45:68)

I'. Man "like as Moses" leads Saints "out of bondage". (D&C 103:16-17)

H'. Two witnesses killed & resurrected in Jerusalem. (OR, Joseph & Hyrum resurrect)

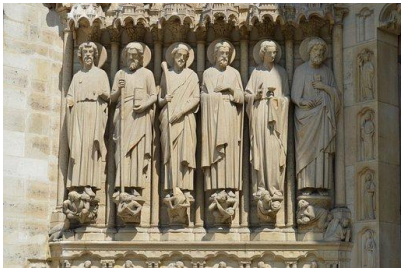
G'. Christ & Patriarchs take back the keys at Adam-ondi-Ahman. (TPJS, p.157)

F'. 144,000 High Priests sent out for last time, 12,000 from each tribe. (D&C 77:11)
E'. Redemption of Zion by the "armies of Israel". (D&C 105:28-31)
D'. New Jerusalem established. (Moses 7:62)
C'. Lamanites embrace the Gospel (and/or Return of Lost Tribes?).
B'. Sealed portion of the Book of Mormon translated and/or published.
A'. Christ appears in glory.

Items B E G and I are the strongest points.

It's possible that the first Zion's Camp was merely a foreshadowing of the "real" Zion's Camp prophesied in D&C 105:28-31.

This chiasm could also show that Utah's Zion-building was no failure.



Zion Shrugged: Thoughts on Why We Haven't Built Economic Zion Yet by Jesse Fisher

(From Champions for Zion)

So . . . where's the Zion they were building? (It's been over 130 years)

Should we blame our current Church leaders? From the records, it appears that the problem wasn't the leaders. It was the rank and file members.

The Forces arrayed against Utah's Zion-building effort: Leaders, members, immigrants, government:

- Leaders: The leaders simply tired of trying to “herd cats” and finally threw in the towel.
- Members: Although [pioneer] spiritual legacy is remarkable--sacrificing life and limb to join the Church and move West—their economic legacy haunts us to this day.
- Immigrants: The constant influx of immigrants with old-world economic values also worked against Zion-building.
- Government: The United States Government conquered the Church [economically] in the late 1880s… the government's anti-polygamy crackdown forced the leaders of most of the co-ops, the surviving United Orders, and the Zion Boards of Trade into prison or into hiding. Those entities then either collapsed or drifted into private hands.

. . . and Brigham may have rushed things a tad much:

- After converting the entire Utah economy from Competitive to Cooperative Free Enterprise, the Saints only had about 10 years for the values of cooperation, mutual benefit, and economic unity to soak into the local culture. After those brief 10 years, Brigham believed the Saints were ready to make the step up to celestial economics. So he organized them all into United Orders. Sadly, the vast majority of the Saints weren't ready, and Brigham's efforts met with drastic failure. Nearly all of the 200+ Orders he established failed within a year of launching…
- It is [Fisher’s] belief that if President Young had been satisfied for the Saints to remain on the terrestrial level of economics for at least a generation, the chances of the Saints being able to then successfully make the shift to celestial-level economics would have been greatly increased.
- Remember the children of Israel and how many problems they had with the generation that had been used to the way things had been done in Egypt? Same problem. The older generation had to die off before the new values could be completely embraced on a community level. Economic values and traditions can't be changed overnight, or even, apparently over-decade.

Were the early LDS Leaders simply wrong [about economics, cooperation, certain Zion, etc.]? No, this is revelation.

Fortunately, the LDS Church is taking baby steps towards Zion.

• The Perpetual Education Fund introduced by President Hinckley in 2001 is definitely a higher level of economic organization. Saints in poor countries are able to attend school by drawing on monies from the Fund. Then after graduating college and landing good-paying jobs, they pay their loans back into the Fund. That's economic cooperation.

• The new Self-Reliance program is two steps in one. First, the outward goal of the program is to help families achieve economic self-reliance. As wards and communities, it's much easier to build Zion with people who have the training or skills to provide for themselves. Second, the team focus of the program gets members used to working together for their mutual benefit—a very Zion-like value.

• The Church has also been involved in poorer countries with programs to give their members economic training and even micro-loans to start their own businesses. They usually do this through LDS Charities and by partnering with non-government organizations



The Law Of Zion – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary

Hyrum Andrus was a faithful Joseph Smith scholar and BYU professor who shared lectures on doctrines of the gospel.

Full lecture at: https://youtu.be/BwQwIs_ih5U. These are highlights of the lecture as I understand them, be sure to see the full lecture. From Andrus' Book of Mormon lecture 16.

The Lord may appear to his prophet from time to time, but he will never come to the saints until they are living the law of consecration until they have built Zion.

Sanctified Christian free enterprise with individual stewardships, not collective machinery, is how we consecrate. It's not communism.

You will never become a joint heir with Christ and be exalted if you don't learn consecration, no matter how many times you go to the temple.

George Q. Cannon was one of the great theologians of the church. He loved Joseph Smith and he understood the doctrine.

There was a covenant made with Enoch and renewed with Noah related to the rainbow; it was manifest by the bow and indicated the presence of God. Below it was mortality and each layer of the rainbow represented a different level of heaven. God tells Noah when I look on the rainbow I'll remember the covenant I made with Enoch, that when men obey all of God's commandments there will be glorious Zion.

The church is a construction crew. It's job is to do work. It brings people to Christ and then sanctifies them in Christ. Christ is the king of Zion. Once the saints are perfected in the Holy Order, the church construction crew has no more work to do, so it is dissolved just like a normal construction crew; after they finish a project they go away.

You must be born again as a child of Christ to take upon you His name.

That's how you become an heir with Him. He becomes your father by adoption.
The Church of Christ is to babysit the children of Christ. Is a nurturing program, it is a program to take the gospel to the world, and it is also the organized mechanism of constructing temples. If you want the blessings of the temple you have to serve in the church. The son's and daughters of Christ do not remain children forever, they grow up and become parents themselves.

One becomes spiritually parents by the program of the temple, the program of Adam. Those who become part of the gospel become sons and daughters of Abraham as Abraham is not only a father physically, but a father spiritually under Christ. Abraham is called the father of the faithful - this is spiritual parenthood. As sons of Abraham, we must lead our families in spiritual matters.

Parents should be consulted before their children are called to priesthood offices.

The order of building Zion as taught by Joseph Smith (teachings page 340) is the spirit of Elias, then Elijah, then Messiah last.

Elias is a forerunner, a preparatory gospel. Gabriel (who is Noah the great patriarch) after the flood comes and announces the birth of John the Baptist as recorded in the Book of Luke, and says John the Baptist will come in the spirit and power of Elias to prepare to turn the hearts of the children to the fathers, etc. This is the spirit of missionary work.

Then comes the power of Elijah, the building of the temple, which is also symbolic of building the Holy Order all the way up to the capstone, placing the seals of the Melchizedek priesthood upon all of Israel. This takes people and puts them into families, sealing marriages and children. They are thus organized and this places the seals of the priesthood on them and makes everything ready. He uses the gentile science of genealogy to extend these same blessings to past generations.

Home teachers (aka ministers) are to help the children learn how to become sons and daughters of Christ, and help the parents know how to be spiritual

leaders.

Finally Messiah comes to his Temple, which is last of all; he puts the capstone on, meaning giving the glory and making the saints priests and kings indeed. Christ will come to the Jackson County Temple to put the capstone on.

In the initiatory ordinance we are anointed to become kings and priests, but for that to actually come to pass we have to have an even greater endowment of the spirit. The endowment is not just to learn a few things and get involved in some symbolism; there's living power in there. This is why we endow missionaries before they leave, because they need that power, and this is why Christ told the disciples to tarry at Jerusalem until you are endowed with power. You don't share the gospel merely by telling a story, you preach by power. A radiant and lightning witness, a spiritual power comes after being endowed in the temple.

Sit down with your wife in the celestial room and talk about how you can better live your covenants. We must get the posture of consecration and live on a consecrated plane.

The law of Zion has its center in the temple.

What is the law of the Gospel? It is summarized in The sermon on the Mount - that is what we covenant to obey. The sermon on the mount teaches us to go the second mile to love our enemies. The primary purpose of the gospel is not to change your behavior, it's to change your hearts and give you a new soul. To make you a new creature, and then your conduct will follow. The old law dealt with external acts, the new law deals with the inner soul, and it is hard.

Christ tells the Nephites unless you keep what I've taught you now, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven. So we see that if we do not keep the law of Christ, this higher inner change, we will not enter the kingdom of heaven. To the Christian world in general the Sermon on the Mount is a great ideal that we never attain, but Christ said we better attain it. The fact that He commanded us all to be perfect implies that He gave us the wherewithal to do that.

3 Nephi 12:1-2 is the foundational beatitude, and it is different than what we hear in the New Testament Sermon on the Mount. It is that we give heed to the 12 Apostles He has chosen. That by them, you are baptized and cleansed by the Holy Spirit.

Some don't want to learn; they're like skinny calves; they don't know where to go to be nurtured. A true Latter-day Saint is one who hungers for truth. When you really hunger for the truth the spirit can lay it out for you in whole sentences explaining things. Be in the attitude like when fasting for 3 days without food or water and being offered food; that's the amount of hunger we need to have for spiritual truth. Like the man who asked Socrates how to be a philosopher, and Socrates held him under the water and told him he needed to want to learn like he wanted air. Hungering and thirsting for righteousness are the principles by which we become saints.

When no one has a stewardship and people are all just taking orders of what to do that day in the community in the shared economy, that is Christian communism, and it is not the Lord's way; that is not how the law of consecration works. We need to have stewardships. The right way is to have Christian free enterprise under the covenants of the Gospel. Brigham City led by Lorenzo Snow did fairly well at this but other areas like the Salt Lake City program, the Provo program, the Parowan program, and Orderville, all of these places were doing more of a Christian communism thing without stewardships (and it didn't work out).

When a person consecrates, that person is in position to be an heir. Joseph Smith taught the need for a balance between the bishop and the church. The bishop should not be a king who makes all the decisions, and the people shouldn't be able to walk all over the bishop and get whatever they want. There must be some mutual discussion, etc.

Joseph Smith said a man is bound by the law of the church to consecrate everything to the bishop before he becomes a legal heir in Zion. The saint consecrates his wealth his land and himself to building the kingdom of God in Zion, and thus becomes a legal heir in Zion.

Consider giving up what you have to become an heir with a billionaire. You

then have the same right to draw upon that account as he does, you're gaining access to all the Father has. We then will have all things in common. You can change the word from 'common' to 'Christ,' we have all things in Christ.

As an heir you have three major rights - first is the right of stewardship. After you've consecrated everything to the bishop, you sit down with the bishop and discuss what type and size of stewardship you should have. There will be a council of 12 high priests wherein six would represent the interest of the individual and the other six would represent the interest of the church. There would be discussion, it would not be one capitulating completely to the others will.

D&C 42 says you have the right to stand in your stewardship, meaning you have the right to govern it, to control it, to be in charge of it. Once you have got your harvest, you've produced your product, you don't turn it into the storehouse, you sell it on the open market. D&C says don't take from your brother, pay. There is competition in an open market, not cutthroat, however. So, if you can make a better product, you can sell it better. You can get out of the stewardship what you justly need/want for your situation.

You account at years end with the bishop on your stewardship concerning what you've gained. And it goes to the storehouse.

Consecration is not a one-time thing; you regularly contribute to the treasury. And the order must consent for withdrawals. The treasurer is accountable too, he can't just give money to anyone.

In Mosiah 18, Alma 1, and 4 Nephi we see examples of living the law of consecration.

It's united-order-ism. It's its own thing. It's unlike any other system we know of. Mutual covenant and friendship are what make consecration work. When this is all in place they will look back at us and think that we were in the dark ages economically. The law of consecration is the path to wealth. It works so well that many lose the faith and get too into materialism.

The law of consecration is a means to an end; the end is to establish Zion.

The law of Zion is what ushers in the millennial order.

The Holy Order is that of kings and priests like King Benjamin and King Mosiah; then we can have political truth and justice like the Nephites had, the standard of liberty. See Mosiah 29.

There should be total separation of church State and economics. The founding fathers never intended to establish two political parties; something more in line would be a Theo-democratic government. Joseph Smith invited all the world to live under the Constitution.

You don't have to convert the whole world before you can raise the ensign and usher in the millennial kingdom. We won't even convert a fraction of the world before the kingdom becomes universal. The way we help the poor starving children all around the world is by raising an ensign politically economically etc. so people can see the right way and come to it. Poor countries have no truth in these matters, this is why they suffer.

The Lord is more concerned about the Latter-day Saints who are walking in darkness at noonday than he is concerned about the crud going on in Babylon.

The Idea of Zion - Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary

Hyrum Andrus was a faithful Joseph Smith scholar and BYU professor who shared lectures on doctrines of the gospel.

See the full lecture at https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5ODPcnMe5QQ

The Millennium can't happen until there is a Zion people.
Don't ask when the millennium will be, ask when Zion will be. Zion will be established and Christ will dwell there years even decades before the millennium.

Note – We know Zion comes before millennium, but we don't know how long between the two. Surely there will be a season of missionary work going out from Zion, and a cleansing of the world before the millennium is considered fully ushered in. For all intents and purposes, where there is Zion, there is Christ, so the Saints will experience the blessings of the millennium before the rest of the world.

If you aren't Zion, you aren't celestial. Till we have a cloud and fire on our dwellings, we aren't Zion, we aren't saints. We are 'aints and complaints, focused material things.

Without the temple, the fullness of priesthood attained there (which requires marriage), one cannot have the glory of Zion. The temple is the focus, church is the sideshow. Joseph Smith said those who don't get all the temple ordinances will not get the fullness of glory. The temple is the beginning of the glory which will rest on Zion and her municipals. The cloud by day and fire by night is by the temple (and spreads to every dwelling of the saints). Even the trees and grass and flowers will be full of glory in Zion.

Only the Church of the Firstborn goes up with Jesus in the cloud at His coming in glory. Some others endure the day, but they don't get to go up with Christ.

There are no great big personalities in the church, none are great, but some do have gifts of the spirit and apply themselves unto it in brotherhood.

Note – Joseph Smith was a good example in this, he didn't insist on a title, just "brother Joseph."

3 Nephi 20:22 speaks of the New Jerusalem in America existing prior to Christ's coming in glory.

Note – Henry B. Eyring has recently reminded the saints that Zion must be built before the Lord's return, and he called upon us to be the people to do it.

The D&C Revelation about the New Jerusalem says that they would build the foundation and bare record of the place, but they wouldn't build it yet because there had to be much tribulation first, and only after that would the saints get to have all that glory, an amount of glory that is hard to fathom.

Zion is not a foreign thing, it is merely the infusion of God's law into everything we do. Each occupation will be needed in Zion. It is the sanctification of every profession, including lawyers.

In the church women do not administer in priesthood ordinances, but in the temple and the Zion order they do. Joseph Smith said it is in connection with their husbands.

The saints will be cleansed and prepared by a holocaust.
The Lord is going to turn things around, the mountains will be low and the valleys will be high, so yes there will still be mountains in the millennium, the Lord is a mountain man.

Ephraim as who gets the richer blessing not because of favoritism, but because he has born the heat of the day; he has been through the refiner's fire.

In building the New Jerusalem, the pure-blooded gentiles will assist the Indians who will assist those who have the priesthood keys, namely Ephraim. It is a rank misconception if we think that the Indians are going to be in charge of and basically doing the entire job of building the New Jerusalem.

The sealing on the forehead with the name of the father, Joseph Smith said in teachings page 321 that this is symbolic of getting all the ordinances, getting all of the blessings and glory.

The New Jerusalem isn't just a city, it's a complex of cities of 15,000 to 20,000 members per city.

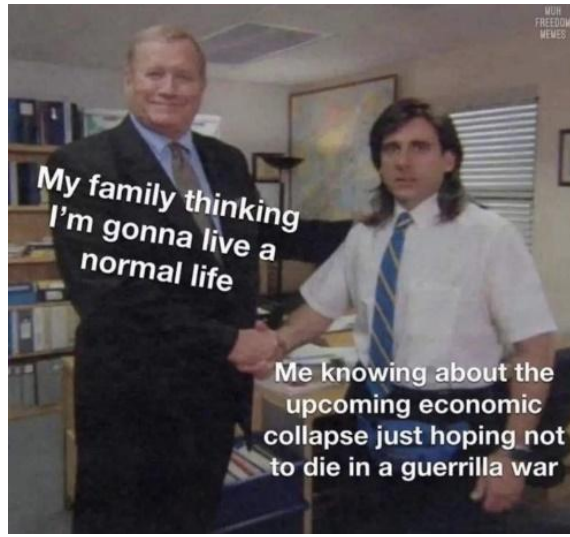
Note - For reference, Santaquin UT has about 12k, Payson UT has about 20k., so we are looking at these approximate sizes. Keeping it small like in the old testament city organization. See Cleon Skousen "The Majesty of God's Law" for more on this.] The Zion cities will be between the mountain ranges (the lecture also mentioned how far north, I missed that part). This revelation to Joseph Smith has been lost but we have record of someone who referenced it.
[Another note: There is evidence that when Joseph said all of America is

Zion from north to south, he was referring to northern states and southern states of the US area, not to the continents of central and south America.]

Zion is a covenant society based on having people who make covenant to Christ and they use their freedom in that way. (This concept is from Andrus' D&C: A Volume of Modern Scripture lecture (see https://youtu.be/MtdaCRemW-M)



TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF DISASTER: ECONOMIC COLLAPSE, CIVIL WAR, PLAGUE, INVASION, UTAH EARTHQUAKE



Economic Collapse: Scriptures

Rev. 18:2, 10-11, 17-18: **2** And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird.
10 Standing afar off for the fear of her torment, saying, Alas, alas, that great city Babylon, that mighty city! for in one hour is thy judgment come.
11 And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more:
12 The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls, and fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet, and all thyine wood, and all manner vessels of ivory, and all manner vessels of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble,
13 And cinnamon, and odours, and ointments, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and slaves, and souls of men.
17 For in one hour so great riches is come to nought. And every shipmaster, and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off,
18 And cried when they saw the smoke of her burning, saying, What city is like unto this great city!

Hel. 13:21, 23: **21** Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.
23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

D&C 88:88–91: **88** And after your testimony cometh wrath and indignation upon the people.
89 For after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes, that shall cause groanings in the midst of her, and men shall fall upon the ground and

shall not be able to stand.
90 And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea heaving themselves beyond their bounds.
91 And all things shall be in commotion; and surely, men's hearts shall fail them; for fear shall come upon all people.

D&C 1:35: **35** For I am no respecter of persons, and will that all men shall know that the day speedily cometh; the hour is not yet, but is nigh at hand, when **peace shall be taken** from the earth, and the devil shall have power over his own dominion.

D&C 1:17: **17** Wherefore, I the Lord, knowing the **calamity** which should come upon the inhabitants of the earth, called upon my servant Joseph Smith, Jun., and spake unto him from heaven, and gave him commandments;

Isaiah 24:1–3: **1** Behold, the LORD maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof.
2 And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury, so with the giver of usury to him.
3 The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the LORD hath spoken this word.

Revelation 18:11–13, 17: **11** And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her; for no man buyeth their merchandise any more:
12 The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls, and fine linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet, and all thyine wood, and all manner vessels of ivory, and all manner vessels of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble,
13 And cinnamon, and odours, and ointments, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and slaves, and souls of men.
17 For in one hour so great riches is come to nought. And every shipmaster,

and all the company in ships, and sailors, and as many as trade by sea, stood afar off,



Economic Collapse: Quotes

Heber C Kimball said (paraphrasing): One dreamed that given the choice between a bag of gold and a cat, a person would choose the cat as you can eat a cat. See Crowther's Prophecy book p.64 for the complete quote and reference.

Thomas S. Monson "Models to Follow" General Conference October 2002: "A just man and perfect in his generations," one who "walked with God," was the prophet Noah. He warned that failure to heed his message would bring floods upon those who heard his voice, and yet they hearkened not to his words. Noah heeded God's command to build an ark, that he and his family might be spared destruction. He **followed God's instructions**…Said President Spencer W. Kimball: "As yet **there was no evidence** of rain and flood, were **warnings considered irrational**… but **time ran out**. The disobedient were drowned. Noah had the unwavering faith to follow God's commandments. May we ever do likewise. May we remember that the wisdom of God oft times appears as foolishness to men; but the greatest lesson we can learn in mortality is that when God speaks and we obey, we will always be right."

M. Russell Ballard "Standing for Truth and Right" General Conference October 1997: "The Book of Mormon teaches that secret combinations engaged in crime present a serious challenge, not just to individuals and families but to entire civilizations. Among today's secret combinations are gangs, drug cartels, and organized crime families. The secret combinations

of our day function much like the Gadianton robbers of the Book of Mormon times. They have secret signs and code words. They participate in secret rites and initiation ceremonies. Among their purposes are to "murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness**, contrary to the laws of their country** and also the **laws of their God**." If we are not careful, today's secret combinations can obtain power and influence just as quickly and just as completely as they did in the Book of Mormon times. Do you **remember the pattern?** The secret combinations began among the "more wicked part" of society, but eventually "seduced the more part of the righteous" until the whole society was polluted.

L. Tom Perry "Be the Best of Whatever You Are", BYU Speeches March 12, 1974: The final area I would like to touch on is our obligation to the earth and the nation in which we live. I have just returned from one of the great nations of the world. This country is in one of its most difficult periods. After suffering during World War ll, the people went into a great rebuilding program. As they accomplished and things became easy again, they started to relax and wanted only to enjoy life. Their great interest became the pub and the television. If an industry was in difficulty, rather than attempting to solve the problem, it was much easier and more secure to turn it over to the government and nationalize it. One by one, the government found itself operating more and more businesses. …The **economic pressures caused the government to fall** and a general election was called. Unfortunately, the election just highlighted problems rather than solving them. There had been such a lack of interest for so long that the elections failed to turn up new leadership. The vote was split between the two major parties; Neither had the majority to rule. A small third party was now in control and could bargain for the best deal. The ability to organize the government rested in its hands. Radical leaders could now demand positions of importance and power in the new government far beyond what they were entitled to as representatives of the people. This is a classic example, to me, of what occurs when complacency and the desire for security supersede the desire for freedom and the willingness to sacrifice for its preservation. **We currently find ourselves in a situation where we have experienced a period of unprecedented prosperity**. It has caused us to become soft and spoiled. We have again reached the point where we demand much more than we are willing to give and have become self-

centered and worldly. We turn to things of man rather than to things of God. **We know the ultimate outcome of such a course**.



Marion G. Romney General Conference October 1973: Unfortunately, there has been fostered in the minds of some an expectation that when we experience hard times, when we have been unwise and extravagant with our resources and have lived beyond our means, we should look to either the church or government to bail us out.

Ezra Taft Benson said, "Forgotten by some of our members is an underlying principle of the church welfare plan "that no true Latter-day Saint will, while physically able, voluntarily shift from himself the burden of his own support." (Teachings of Ezra Taft Benson, pg. 638-639

Brigham Young June 5, 1853 Journal of Discourses Vol 1, pg 250: **The time will come that gold will hold no comparison in value to a bushel of wheat.** Gold is not to be compared with it in value. Why would it be precious to you now? Simply because you could get gold for it? Gold is good for nothing, only as men value it. It is no better than a piece of iron, a piece of limestone, or a piece of sandstone, and it is not half so good as the soil from which we raise our wheat, and other necessities of life. The children of men love it, are greedy for it, and are ready to destroy themselves, and those around them, over whom they have influence, to gain it."

Ezra Taft Benson, "Prepare Ye", Ensign Magazine, Jan 1974: "We must do more to get our people prepared for the difficult days we face in the future. Our major concern should be their spiritual preparation so they will respond with faith and not fear, 'if ye are prepared ye shall not fear' (D&C 38:21). Our next concern should be for their temporal preparation. **When the economies of nations fail**, when famine and other disasters prevent people from buying food in stores, the saints must be prepared to handle these emergencies. This is a matter of concern for area, region, and stake

councils."

President J. Rueben Clark, Jr said, "Let us avoid debt as we would a plague…Let every head of every household see to it that he has on hand enough food and clothing, and, where possible, fuel also, for at least a year ahead…Let every head of household aim to own his own home, free from mortgage. Let us clothe ourselves with these proved and sterling virtues—honesty, truthfulness, chastity, sobriety, temperance, industry, and thrift; let us discard all covetousness and greed." (J. Reuben Clark, Jr., April 1937 General Conference)

Neal A. Maxwell ("*Notwithstanding My Weakness,"* Salt Lake City: Deseret Book Co., 1981, p. 57.): "An **economic depression would be grim**, but it would not change the reality of immortality. The inevitability of the second coming is not affected by the unpredictability of the stock market. … A case of cancer does not cancel the promises of the temple endowment. All that matters is gloriously intact. The promises are in place. It is up to us to perform."



Another American Civil War: Scriptures

D&C 45:68-69: **68** And it shall come to pass among the wicked, that every man that will not take his sword against his neighbor must needs flee unto Zion for safety.
69 And there shall be gathered unto it out of every nation under heaven; and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another.

1 Nephi 22:13-14: **13** For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the

borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;
14 And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Alma 50:21: **21** And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

D&C 87:1–8 :(Note: This section is the Revelation on War, Dec. 25, 1832) (Note: This prophecy first fulfilled in the U.S. Civil War, but also points toward further civil strife spreading worldwide.): **1** Verily, thus saith the Lord concerning the wars that will shortly come to pass, beginning at the rebellion of South Carolina, which will eventually terminate in the death and misery of many souls;
2 And the time will come that war will be poured out upon all nations, beginning at this place.
3 For behold, the Southern States shall be divided against the Northern States, and the Southern States will call on other nations, even the nation of Great Britain, as it is called, and they shall also call upon other nations, in order to defend themselves against other nations; and then war shall be poured out upon all nations.
4 And it shall come to pass, after many days, slaves shall rise up against their masters, who shall be marshaled and disciplined for war.
5 And it shall come to pass also that the remnants who are left of the land will marshal themselves, and shall become exceedingly angry, and shall vex the Gentiles with a sore vexation.
6 And thus, with the sword and by bloodshed the inhabitants of the earth shall mourn; and with famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven, and the fierce and vivid lightning also, shall the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God, until the consumption decreed hath made a full end of all nations;
7 That the cry of the saints, and of the blood of the saints, shall cease to come up into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, from the earth, to be avenged of their enemies.

8 Wherefore, stand ye in holy places, and be not moved, until the day of the Lord come; for behold, it cometh quickly, saith the Lord. Amen.

D&C 112:24–26: **24** Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth, a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation; and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth, saith the Lord.
25 And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord;
26 First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.

Matthew 24:6–7: 6 And ye shall hear of wars and rumours of wars: see that ye be not troubled: for all *these things* must come to pass, but the end is not yet.
7 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places.

2 Nephi 1:6–7 (If America rejects God, captivity and civil collapse follow.):
6 Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.
7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

Another American Civil War: Quotes

Wilford Woodruff quoting Heber C. Kimball: [Heber C. Kimball] "prophesied that when the final last struggle came to this nation it would be at the Hill Cumorah where both of the former Nations

[Jaredite and Nephite] were destroyed" *(abt. Heber C. Kimball)* Wilford Woodruff's Journal 6:305, December 17, 1866

A. Milton Musser (Citing Joseph Smith) *Civil War Starts in Chicago:* "My brother Noah Packard says that he heard the Prophet Joseph say that the **next great (U.S. civil) war,** after the war of the rebellion, (the civil war of the 1860's between the North and South) would **commence** in a little town now called **Chicago**, but at that time it would have grown to be a very large city. And another brother told me that the Prophet said that the **cause** of the **next great trouble** of the United States would be the **depreciation of the currency** of the United States. I believe I have given you all the facts in as short and concise a manner as possible." (A. Milton Musser papers, LDS Church Archives, letter from Nephi Packard to A. Milton Musser, July 24, 1896.)

Note: In other words, the second civil war is probably started over the depreciation of the US currency.

David Whitmer: "Question: When will the **temple be built in Independence**? Answer: **Right after the great tribulation is over**. Question: What do you mean by that? Answer: A **civil war** more bloody and cruel than the rebellion. It will be the smashing up of this nation, about which time the second great work has to be done, **a work like Joseph** did, and the **translation of the sealed plates** and peace all over." (Interview by Dr. Poulson with David Whitmer, printed in the Deseret News on Friday, August 16, 1878.)

Elder Orson Pratt said**,** *"The Whole Republic will be in general commotion and warfare: "*That war, we must remember, was only one solitary judgment, compared with what will come, and that, too, in the near future. It has been revealed that the time will come in the history of our nation, that one State will rise against another, one city against another, even every man's hand shall be against his neighbor, until the whole Republic will be in general commotion and warfare. How and when this will take place, the Lord, in his wisdom, has not told us; but it is sufficient for us to say, that he has told us of the facts that such and such will be the case. For aught we know, the fulfillment of this prophecy may grow out of politics. If the people are very nearly equally divided in politics, this feeling may run so high, in years to come, as to be the direct cause of war. And if this should be the case, it would very naturally spread to every neighborhood in the Union.

One class of political opponents would rise up against the other class in the same city and country, and thus would arise a war of mobocracy." (Discourse by Elder Orson Pratt, delivered in the Eighteenth Ward Meetinghouse, Salt Lake City, Sunday Afternoon, Feb. 25, 1877.)

President John Taylor said**,** *"More ruin, more devastation than ever they have seen before: "*Need we be surprised that they should trample underfoot the Constitution of the United States? No; Joseph Smith told us that they would do it. Many around me here knew long ago that they would do this thing and further knew that the last people that should be found to rally around that sacred instrument and save it from the grasp of unrighteous men would be the Elders of Israel! ...Were we surprised when the last terrible war took place here in the United States? No; good Latter-day Saints were not, for they had been told about it. Joseph Smith had told them where it would start, that it should be a terrible time of bloodshed and that it should start in South Carolina. But I tell you today the end is not yet. You will see worse things than that, for God will lay his hand upon this nation, and they will feel it more terribly than ever they have done before; there will be more bloodshed, more ruin, more devastation than ever they have seen before.*"* (Discourse by President John Taylor, delivered at the General Conference, Held in the Tabernacle, Salt Lake City, October 6, 1879.)

President Brigham Young said, "I heard **Joseph Smith say**, nearly thirty years ago, "They shall have mobbing to their hearts content, if they do not redress the wrongs of the Latter-day Saints. Mobs will not decrease, but will increase until the **whole government becomes a mob**, and eventually it will be **State against State, city against city, neighborhood against neighborhood. It will be Christian against Christian**, and man against man, and those who will **not take up the sword against their neighbors, must flee to Zion**." (Des. News, Vol. 2, May 1, 1861)

Elder Orson Pratt said, "What then will be the condition of that people, when this great and terrible war shall come? It will be very different from the war between the North and the South. Do you wish me to describe it? I will do so. It will be a war of **neighborhood against neighborhood, city against city, town against town, county against county, state against state**, and they will go forth destroying and being destroyed and **manufacturing will, in a great measure, cease, for a time**, among the American nation. Why? Because in these terrible wars, they will not be privileged to manufacture, there will be too much bloodshed--too much mobocracy--too much going forth in bands and destroying and pillaging the

land to suffer people to pursue any local vocation with any degree of safety. What will become of millions of the farmers upon that land? They will **leave their farms and they will remain uncultivated**, and they will **flee before the ravaging armies** from place to place; and thus will they go forth burning and pillaging the whole country; and that great and powerful nation, now consisting of some forty millions of people, will be wasted away, unless they repent." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses 20:150-151)

President Brigham Young said**,** "Do you think there is calamity abroad now among the people? All we have yet heard and all we have experienced is scarcely a preface to the sermon that is going to be preached. Then the testimony of the Elders ceases to be given, and the Lord says to them, "**Come home; I will now preach My own sermons** to the nations of the earth," all you now know can scarcely be called a preface to the sermon that will be preached with **fire and sword, tempests, earthquake, hail, rain, thunders and lightnings, and fearful destruction**. What matters the destruction of a few railway cars? You will hear of **magnificent cities, now idolized by the people, sinking in the earth**, entombing the inhabitants. The seas will heave itself beyond its bounds, engulfing mighty cities. **Famine will spread** over the nations, and nation will rise up against nation, kingdom against kingdom, and **states against states, in our own country** and in foreign lands; and they will destroy each other, **caring not for the blood and lives of their neighbors, of their families, or for their own lives**. They will be **like the Jaredites who preceded the Nephites** upon this continent, and will destroy each other **to the last man**, through the anger that the devil will place in their hearts, because they have rejected the words of life and are given over to Satan to do whatever he listeth to do with them. You may think that the little you hear of now is grievous; yet the faithful of God's people will see days that will **cause them to close their eyes because of the sorrow** that will come upon the wicked nations. **The hearts of the faithful will be filled with pain and anguish for them**." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses, 8:123) (Also cited as Remarks by President BrighamYoung, made in the Bowery, Great Salt Lake City, July 15, 1860.)

President Brigham Young said**,** "According to my definition of the word, there is not a strictly and fully civilized community now upon the earth. Is there murder by wholesale to be found in a strictly civilized community? Will a community of civilized nations rise up one against another, nation against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, using against each other every destructive invention that can be brought to bear in their wars? When will they be civilized? Then the Lord shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people; and they shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruninghooks; when nations shall not lift up sword against nation, neither learn war any more. When the world is **in a state of true civilization, man will have ceased to contend against his**

fellow-man, either as individuals, parties, communities, sects, or nations. This state of civilization **will be brought about by the holy Priesthood** of the Son of God; and men, with full purpose of heart, will seek unto him who is pure and holy, even our great Creator–our **Father and God; and he will give them a law that is pure–a government and plan of society possessed by holy beings in heaven**. Then there will be no more war, no more bloodshed**, no more evil-speaking and evil-doing**; but all will be contented to follow in the path of truth, which alone is calculated to **exalt and dignify the whole man, mentally and physically, in all his operations, labors, and purposes**. Short of this, mankind cannot be said to be truly civilized." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 8:6-7)

Wilford Woodruff said, "*Can America escape destruction?* "When I contemplate the condition of our nation, and see that wickedness and abominations are increasing, so much so that the whole heavens groan and weep over the abominations of this nation and the nations of the earth, I ask myself the question, can the American nation escape? The answer comes, No; its destruction, as well as the destruction of the world, is sure; just as sure as the Lord cut off and destroyed the two great nations that once inhabited this continent of North and South America because of their sin, so will he them destroy, and sooner or later they will reap the fruits of their own wicked acts, and be numbered among the past. I cannot help it; I would to God they would repent, that their eyes might be opened to see their condition; but the devil has power over them; he rules the children of men, he holds Babylon in his own hand, and leads the people withersoever he will. There are changes awaiting us, they are even nigh at our very doors, and I know it by the revelations of Jesus Christ; I know it by the visions of heaven, I know it by the administrations of angels, and I know it by the inspiration of heaven, that is given to all men who seek the Lord; and the hand of God will not stay these things. We have no time to lose." (Wilford Woodruff, Journal of Discourses, Vol. 21:301)

Spencer W. Kimball spoke of no more stores. *He said,* "The little gardens and a few trees are very valuable. I remember when the sisters used to say, `well, but we could buy it at the store a lot cheaper than we could put it up.' But that isn't quite the answer, is it, Sister Spafford? Because **there will become a time when there isn't a store**." (General Conference, April 1974)

Note: Have we stopped believing in plain declarations like this? If we believe, let us act like it, and prepare!

Joseph Smith spoke *of* family against family. He said, *"*I saw men hunting

the lives of their own sons, and brother murdering brother, women killing their own daughters, and daughters seeking the lives of their mothers. I saw armies arrayed against armies. I saw blood, desolation, fires. The Son of man has said that the mother shall be against the daughters, and the daughter against the mother. These things are at our doors. They will follow the Saints of God from city to city. Satan will rage, and the spirit of the devil is now enraged. I know not how soon these things will take place; but with a view of them, shall I cry peace? No; I will lift up my voice and testify of them. **How long you will have good crops, and the famine be kept off,** I do not know; when the fig tree leaves, know then that the summer is nigh at hand." (Joseph Smith, Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith,161)

Elder Orson Pratt said, "The time will come when there will be no safety in carrying on the peaceable pursuits of farming or agriculture. But these will be neglected, and the **people will think themselves well off if they can flee from city to city**, from town to town **and escape with their lives**. Thus will the Lord visit the people, if they will not repent." (Journal of Discourses, 12:344)

Joseph Smith said, "And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ, that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will **sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north** country." (*History of the Church,* 1:315.)

Heber C. Kimball spoke of saints being prevented from holding meetings. He said, "...this government would dissolve pretty much all the laws passed by our legislature, and that the time would come when the government would stop the Saints from holding meetings. When this was done the Lord would pour out His judgments." (Life of Heber C. Kimball, pp. 452-453)

Elder Moses Thatcher, June 16, 1882: "I have seen the end of this nation and it is terrible. I will tell you in the name of the LORD that a secret band will sap the life out of this nation."

Elder Orson Pratt said, "God has sent forth His warning message in the midst of this nation, but they have rejected it and treated His servants with contempt; the **Lord has gathered out His people from their midst, and has planted them here in these mountains**; and He will **speedily fulfill**

the prophecy in relation to the overthrow of this nation, and their destruction. We shall be obliged to have a government to preserve ourselves in unity and peace; for they, through being wasted away, will not have the power to govern; for state will be divided against state, city against city, **town against town, and the whole country will be in terror and confusion; mobocracy will prevail** and there will be no security, through this great Republic, for the lives or property of the people." (Des. News, Oct. 2, 1875)

Elder Orson Pratt said, "The day will come when the **nations of Europe will have warred among themselves** sufficiently long, and those despotic **governments are torn down**, and when the hand of oppression and tyranny has been eased up, and when the **principles of religious liberty have become more fully and more widely spread**, that the **Elders of this Church will traverse all these nations**; and then we shall have use for these **Seventies** that have been organizing so long. By-and-by the **Spirit of God will entirely withdraw from those Gentile nations**, and leave them to themselves. Then **they will find something else to do besides warring against the Saints in their midst**–besides raising their sword and fighting against the Lamb of God; for then war will commence in earnest, and **such a war as probably never entered into the hearts of men in our age to conceive of**. No nation of the Gentiles upon the face of the whole earth but what will be engaged in **deadly war, except the Latter-day Kingdom**. They will be fighting one against another. And when that day comes, the **Jews will flee to Jerusalem**, and those nations will almost use one another up, and those of them who are **left will be burned**; for that will be the **last sweeping judgment** that is to go over the earth to cleanse it from wickedness." (Journal of Discourses, 7:186, 188)

Elder Orson Pratt said, “When that day shall come (when the missionaries will be called home) there shall be wars, not such wars as have come in centuries and years that are past and gone, but a desolating war. When I say desolating, I mean that it will lay these European nations in waste. Cities will be left vacated, without inhabitants. The people will be destroyed by the sword of their own hands. Not only this but many other cities will be burned; for when contending armies are wrought up with the terrible anger, without the Spirit of God upon them, when they have not that spirit of humanity that now characterizes many of the wars amongst the nations, when they are left to themselves, there will be no quarter given, no prisoners taken, but a war of destruction, of desolation, of the burning of the cities and villages, until the land is laid desolate. But what about the American nation? That war that destroyed the lives of some fifteen or sixteen hundred thousand people was nothing compared to that which will eventually

devastate that country. The time is not very far distant in the future, when the Lord God will lay His hand heavily upon that nation. What then will be the condition of that people, when this great and terrible war shall come? It will be very different from the war between the North and the South. Do you wish me to describe it? I will do so. It will be a war of neighborhood against neighborhood, city against city, town against town, county against county, state against state, and they will go forth, destroying and being destroyed and manufacturing will, in a great measure, cease, for a time among the American nation. Why? Because in these terrible wars, they will not be privileged to manufacture, there will be too much bloodshed, too much mobocracy, too much going forth in bands and destroying and pillaging the land to suffer people to pursue any local vocation with any degree of safety. What will become of millions of the farmers upon that land? They will leave their farms and they will remain uncultivated,and they will flee before the ravaging armies from place to place; and thus will they go forth burning and pillaging the whole country; and that great and powerful nation, now consisting of some forty millions of people, will be wasted away, unless they repent. They must perish, unless they repent. They will be wasted away, and the fullness of the wrath of Almighty God will be poured out upon them, unless they repent. Their cities will be left desolate. A time is coming when the great and populous city of New York–the greatest city of the American Republic–will be left without inhabitants. The houses will stand, some of them, not all. They will stand there, but unoccupied, no people to inherit them. lt will be the same in regard to numerous other cities." (1879, Journal of Discourses, 20:150-152)

Elder Jedediah M. Grant said, "Consequently, when we see nation stirred up against nation, and on the other hand see other nations exerting a powerful influence to bring about negotiations of peace, shall we say they can bring it about? Do we expect they can stay the onward course of war? The prophet of God has spoken it all, and we expect to see the work go on–and see all things fulfilled as the prophets have declared by the spirit of prophecy in them. Three days before the Prophet Joseph started for Carthage, I well remember his telling us we should see the fulfillment of the words of Jesus upon the earth, where He says the father shall be against the son, and the son against the father; the mother against the daughter, and when a man's enemies shall be those of his own household. The Prophet stood in his own house when he told several of us of the night the visions of heaven were opened to him, in which he saw the American continent drenched in blood, and he saw nation rising against nation. He also saw the father shed the blood of the son, and the son shed the blood of the father; the mother put to death the daughter, and the daughter the mother; and natural affection forsook the hearts of the wicked; for he saw that the Spirit of God should be withdrawn from the inhabitants of the earth, in consequence of

which there should be blood upon the face of the whole earth, except among the people of the Most High. The Prophet gazed upon the scene his vision represented, until his heart sickened and he besought the Lord to close it up again. When we hear of war in foreign lands–when we hear of the revolutions among nations afar off, we necessarily infer that distresses incident to war and the hottest of the battle will not come nigh unto us. lt is natural for man to make favorable conclusions as to his own safety, when danger threatens, but the Prophet saw in the vision, that war and distress of nations will not only occur in Europe, in Asia, and in the islands of the sea, but he saw it upon the American Continent–in the region of country where he first introduced the doctrine of the Son of God; so we may look for calamity in our own borders, in our own nation, as well as in the nations of foreign climes." (1854, Journal of Discourses, 2:146-47)

Orson Pratt said, “But what about the American nation. That war that destroyed the lives of some fifteen or sixteen hundred thousand people was nothing, compared to that which will eventually devastate that country. The time is not very far distant in the future, when the Lord God will lay his hand heavily upon that nations. "How do you know this? inquires one." I know from the revelations which God has given upon this subject. I read these revelations, when they were first given. I waited over twenty-eight years and saw their fulfillment to the very letter. Should I not, then, expect that the balance of them should be fulfilled? That same God who gave the revelations to his servant Joseph Smith in regard to these matters, will fulfil every jot and every tittle that has been spoken, concerning that nation. What then will be the condition of that people, when this great and terrible war shall come? It will be very different from the war between the North and the South. Do you wish me to describe it? I will do so. It will be a war of neighborhood against neighborhood, city against city, town against town, county against county, state against state, and they will go forth destroying and being destroyed and manufacturing will, in a great measure, cease, for a time, among the American nation. Why? Because in these terrible wars, they will not be privileged to manufacture, there will be too much bloodshed--too much mobocracy--too much going forth in bands and destroying and pillaging the land to suffer people to pursue any local vocation with any degree of safety. What will become of millions of the farmers upon that land? They will leave their farms and they will remain uncultivated, and they will flee before the ravaging armies from place to place; and thus will they go forth burning and pillaging the whole country; and that great and powerful nation, now consisting of some forty millions of people, will be wasted away, unless they repent.” (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses

20:151)

Nephi Packard said, "My brother, Noah Packard, says that he heard the **Prophet Joseph say** that the next great [u.S. civil] war after the war of the rebellion [the Civil War of the 1860's between the North and the South] would commence in a little town now called Chicago but at that time it would have grown to be a very large city. And another brother told me that the Prophet said that the cause of the next great trouble of the United States would be the depreciation of the currency of the United States. I believe I have given you all the facts in as short and concise manner as possible." (A. Milton Musser papers, LDS Church Archives, letter from Nephi Packard to A. Milton Musser, July 24, 1896.)

Plague: Scriptures

D&C 45:31-32: **31** And there shall be men standing in that generation, that shall not pass until they shall see an overflowing scourge; for a desolating sickness shall cover the land.
32 But my disciples shall stand in holy places, and shall not be moved; but among the wicked, men shall lift up their voices and curse God and die.

D&C 5:18-19: **18** And their testimony shall also go forth unto the condemnation of this generation if they harden their hearts against them;
19 For a desolating scourge shall go forth among the inhabitants of the earth, and shall continue to be poured out from time to time, if they repent not, until the earth is empty, and the inhabitants thereof are consumed away and utterly destroyed by the brightness of my coming.

D&C 97:23-26: **23** The Lord’s scourge shall pass over by night and by day, and the report thereof shall vex all people; yea, it shall not be stayed until the Lord come;

24 For the indignation of the Lord is kindled against their abominations and all their wicked works.
25 Nevertheless, Zion shall escape if she observe to do all things whatsoever I have commanded her.
26 But if she observe not to do whatsoever I have commanded her, I will visit her according to all her works, with sore affliction, with pestilence, with plague, with sword, with vengeance, with devouring fire.

Rev. 16:1-3, 8-11, 21: **1** And I heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth.
2 And the first went, and poured out his vial upon the earth; and there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and *upon* them which worshipped his image.
3 And the second angel poured out his vial upon the sea; and it became as the blood of a dead *man:* and every living soul died in the sea.
8 And the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun; and power was given unto him to scorch men with fire.
9 And men were scorched with great heat, and blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory.
10 And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain,
11 And blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.
21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, *every stone* about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great.

Rev 8:7, 10-12: 7 The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.
10 And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;

11 And the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.
12 And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.

D&C 29:17–21: **17** And it shall come to pass, because of the wickedness of the world, that I will take vengeance upon the wicked, for they will not repent; for the cup of mine indignation is full; for behold, my blood shall not cleanse them if they hear me not.
18 Wherefore, I the Lord God will send forth flies upon the face of the earth, which shall take hold of the inhabitants thereof, and shall eat their flesh, and shall cause maggots to come in upon them;
19 And their tongues shall be stayed that they shall not utter against me; and their flesh shall fall from off their bones, and their eyes from their sockets;
20 And it shall come to pass that the beasts of the forest and the fowls of the air shall devour them up.
21 And the great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall be cast down by devouring fire, according as it is spoken by the mouth of Ezekiel the prophet, who spoke of these things, which have not come to pass but surely must, as I live, for abominations shall not reign.

D&C 84:94–97: **94** Nevertheless, search diligently and spare not; and wo unto that house, or that village or city that rejecteth you, or your words, or your testimony concerning me.
95 Wo, I say again, unto that house, or that village or city that rejecteth you, or your words, or your testimony of me;
96 For I, the Almighty, have laid my hands upon the nations, to scourge them for their wickedness.
97 And plagues shall go forth, and they shall not be taken from the earth until I have completed my work, which shall be cut short in righteousness

D&C 101:24–25: **24** And every corruptible thing, both of man, or of the beasts of the field, or of the fowls of the heavens, or of the fish of the sea, that dwells upon all the face of the earth, shall be consumed;

25 And also that of element shall melt with fervent heat; and all things shall become new, that my knowledge and glory may dwell upon all the earth.

D&C 88:88–91: **88** And after your testimony cometh wrath and indignation upon the people.

89 For after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes, that shall cause groanings in the midst of her, and men shall fall upon the ground and shall not be able to stand.
90 And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea heaving themselves beyond their bounds.
91 And all things shall be in commotion; and surely, men's hearts shall fail them; for fear shall come upon all people.

Revelation 9:3–6: 3 And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power.
4 And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads.
5 And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment *was* as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man.
6 And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them.

Matthew 24:7–8: **7** For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places.
8 All these *are* the beginning of sorrows.

Plague: Quotes

Marion G. Romney, April 1951 General Conference: "A long time ago the Lord raised the curtain on the scene of destruction awaiting the inhabitants of the earth if they followed to the end the course they were then pursuing. More than a hundred years ago, he said that a desolating scourge should go forth among the inhabitants of the earth, and if they repented not, it should continue from time to time until the earth was empty and the inhabitants thereof utterly destroyed."

Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses, Vol 15: “This will prepare them for further ministrations among the nations of the earth, it will prepare them to go forth in the days of tribulation and vengeance upon the nations of the wicked, when God will smite them with pestilence, plague and earthquake, such as former generations never knew. Then the servants of God will need to be armed with the power of God, they will need to have that sealing blessing pronounced upon their foreheads that they can stand forth in the midst of these desolations and plagues and not be overcome by them. When John the Revelator describes this scene he says he saw four angels sent forth, ready to hold the four winds that should blow from the four quarters of heaven. Another angel ascended from the east and cried to the four angels, and said, "Smite not the earth now, but wait a little while." "How long?" "Until the servants of our God are sealed in their foreheads." What for? To prepare them to stand forth in the midst of these desolations and plagues, and not be overcome. When they are prepared, when they have received a renewal of their bodies in the Lord's Temple, and have been filled with the Holy Ghost and purified as gold and silver in a furnace of fire, then they will be prepared to stand before the nations of the earth and preach glad tidings of salvation in the midst of judgments that are to come like a whirlwind upon the wicked.”

Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses, Vol. 18: “These plagues named in John's revelations, will take place literally—"The Lord God will curse the waters of the great deep, and they shall be turned into blood." "The sea shall become as the blood of a dead man, and every living thing in the sea shall be destroyed." And the time will come, when the seven angels having the seven last trumps will sound their trumps literally, and the sound thereof will be heard among the nations, just preparatory to the coming of the Son of man;

and all the judgments foretold by John, which are to succeed the sound of each of the seven trumpets, will be fulfilled literally upon the earth in their times and seasons."

Marion G. Romney, April 1951: "A long time ago the Lord raised the curtain on the scene of destruction awaiting the inhabitants of the earth if they followed to the end the course they were then pursuing. More than a hundred years ago, he said that a desolating scourge should go forth among the inhabitants of the earth, and if they repented not, it should continue from time to time until the earth was empty and the inhabitants thereof utterly destroyed."

Joseph B. Wirthlin, October 2005: "Prosperity often leads to pride, which leads to sin. Sin leads to wickedness and to hearts that become hardened to things of the Spirit. Eventually, the end of this road leads to heartbreak and sorrow. This pattern is repeated not only in the lives of individual people but by cities, nations, and even the world. The consequences of ignoring the Lord and His prophets are certain and often accompanied by great sorrow and regret. In our day the Lord has warned that wickedness will ultimately lead to "famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven" until "the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God."

Invasion: Scriptures

Isaiah 5:5-6: 5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down:
6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

2 Ne. 20:3-7: 3 And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?
4 Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall

under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
5 O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.
6 I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.
7 Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

Isaiah 28:18: **18** And your covenant with death shall be disannulled, and your agreement with hell shall not stand; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, then ye shall be trodden down by it.

D&C 87:1–8: **1** Verily, thus saith the Lord concerning the wars that will shortly come to pass, beginning at the rebellion of South Carolina, which will eventually terminate in the death and misery of many souls;
2 And the time will come that war will be poured out upon all nations, beginning at this place.
3 For behold, the Southern States shall be divided against the Northern States, and the Southern States will call on other nations, even the nation of Great Britain, as it is called, and they shall also call upon other nations, in order to defend themselves against other nations; and then war shall be poured out upon all nations.
4 And it shall come to pass, after many days, slaves shall rise up against their masters, who shall be marshaled and disciplined for war.
5 And it shall come to pass also that the remnants who are left of the land will marshal themselves, and shall become exceedingly angry, and shall vex the Gentiles with a sore vexation.
6 And thus, with the sword and by bloodshed the inhabitants of the earth shall mourn; and with famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven, and the fierce and vivid lightning also, shall the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God, until the consumption decreed hath made a full end of all nations;
7 That the cry of the saints, and of the blood of the saints, shall cease to come up into the ears of the Lord of Sabaoth, from the earth, to be avenged of their enemies.

8 Wherefore, stand ye in holy places, and be not moved, until the day of the Lord come; for behold, it cometh quickly, saith the Lord. Amen.

D&C 112:24–26: **23** Verily, verily, I say unto you, darkness covereth the earth, and gross darkness the minds of the people, and all flesh has become corrupt before my face.
24 Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth, a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation; and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth, saith the Lord.
25 And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord;
26 First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.

Joel 2:1–3: **1** Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain: let all the inhabitants of the land tremble: for the day of the Lord cometh, for *it is* nigh at hand;
2 A day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick darkness, as the morning spread upon the mountains: a great people and a strong; there hath not been ever the like, neither shall be any more after it, *even* to the years of many generations.
3 A fire devoureth before them; and behind them a flame burneth: the land *is* as the garden of Eden before them, and behind them a desolate wilderness; yea, and nothing shall escape them.

Revelation 13:7: **7** And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.

Invasion: Quotes

Mosiah Hancock quoted Joseph Smith saying, "There will be two great political parties in this country. One will be called the Republican, and the other the Democrat party. These two parties will go to war and out of these two parties will spring another party which will be the Independent American Party. The United States will spend her strength and means warring in foreign lands until other nations will say, *"Let's divide up the lands of the United States,"* then the people of the U.S. will unite and swear by the blood of their fore-fathers, that the land shall not be divided. Then the country will go to war, and they will fight until one half of the U.S. army will give up, and the rest will continue to struggle. They will keep on until they are very ragged and discouraged, and almost ready to give up—when the boys from the mountains will rush forth in time to save the American Army from defeat and ruin. And they will say, "Brethren, we are glad you have come; give us men, henceforth, who can talk with God." Then you will have friends, but you will save the country when its liberty hangs by a hair, as it were." (Mosiah Lyman Hancock, Life Story of Mosiah Lyman Hancock, p. 29. A typewritten copy of the original manuscript is available in the Brigham Young University library. Recorded 1951.)

John Taylor taught that this nation will be overthrown. He said, "This nation and other nations will be overthrown, not because of their virtue, but because of their corruption and iniquity. The time will come, for the prophecies will be fulfilled, when kingdoms will be destroyed, thrones cast down and the powers of the earth shaken, and God's wrath will be kindled against the nations of the earth, and it is for us to maintain correct principles, political, religious and social, and to feel towards all men as God feels. He makes the sun to shine on the just as well as on the unjust; and if he has enlightened our minds and put us in possession of more correct principles than others have, let us be thankful and adore the God of Israel. Let us thank our heavenly Father for his goodness towards us in making us acquainted with the principles of the everlasting Gospel, and let us go on from strength to strength, from purity to purity, from virtue to virtue, from intelligence to intelligence; and when the nations shall fall and crumble, Zion shall arise and shine, and the power of God shall be manifest among his people. No man can overturn or permanently hurt those who do right. They may kill some of our bodies, but that is all they can do. We shall live and shout among the assembled throng, in the eternal heavens, "Hosanna, blessed be the God of Israel," and his kingdom shall grow and increase until the kingdoms of this world shall become the kingdoms of our God and his Christ, and he will rule and reign forever and ever." (Discourse by Elder

John Taylor, delivered in the Fourteenth Ward Assembly Rooms, Salt Lake City, Sunday Afternoon, Feb. 1, 1874.)

Joseph Smith taught that the country will be in danger of overthrow. The prophecy of Joseph Smith, (**According to Orson Hyde**): was that the time would come when the Constitution and the country would be in danger of an overthrow; and ... "if the Constitution be saved at all, it will be by the Elders of this Church." (Journal of Discourses, Vo1.6, p 152, January 3, 1850)

Charles W. Nibley *warned against b*ecoming a law unto themselves. He said, *"*Brethren and sisters, let me say in closing that we have it of record, that the prophet Joseph Smith said the time would come when, through secret organizations taking the law into their own hands, not being governed by law or by due process of law, but becoming a law unto themselves, when, by those disintegrating activities, the Constitution of the United States would be so torn and rent asunder, and life and property and peace and security would he held of so little value, that the Constitution would, as it were, hang by a thread. But he never said, so far as I have heard, that that thread would be cut. I believe, with Elder Richards, that this Constitution will be preserved, but it will be preserved very largely in consequence of what the Lord has revealed and what this people, through listening to the Lord and being obedient, will help to bring about, to stabilize and give permanency and effect to the Constitution itself. That also is our mission. That also is what we are here for. I glory in it. I praise God with all my heart and soul that I am a member of it. October 1923.

Ezra T. Benson taught that a **s**ecret combination seeks to overthrow the freedom of all nations. He said, *"*I testify that wickedness is rapidly expanding in every segment of our society. It is more highly organized, more cleverly disguised, and more powerfully promoted than ever before. Secret combinations lusting for power, gain, and glory are flourishing. A secret combination that seeks to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries is increasing its evil influence and control over America and the entire world. (Ezra Taft Benson, I Testify, Gen. Conf. 1988, https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/general-conference/1988/10/i-testify?lang=eng)

Joseph Smith taught that the nation will be on the verge of crumbling. He said*, "*Even this nation will be on the verge of crumbling to pieces and tumbling to the ground and when the Constitution is on the brink of ruin this people will be the staff upon which the nation shall lean and they shall bear

the Constitution away from the very verge of destruction." (Joseph Smith Papers, LDS Church Historical Archives, Box 1, March 10, 1844; D. Michael Stewart, Ensign, Vol. 6, No.6, June 1976, pp. 64-65)

President Boyd K. Packer said, "Will the Constitution be destroyed? No. It will be held inviolate by this people; and **as Joseph Smith said** "the time will come when the destiny of this nation will hang upon a single thread, and at this critical juncture, this people will step forth and save it from the threatened destruction." It will be so. I do not know when that day will come or how it will come to pass. I feel sure that when it does come to pass, among those who will step forward from among this people will be men who hold the Holy Priesthood and who carry as credentials a bachelor or doctor of law degree. And women also, of honor. And there will be judges as well. Others from the world outside the Church will come, as Colonel Thomas Kane did, and bring with them their knowledge of the law to protect this people. We may one day stand alone, but we will not change or lower our standards, or change our course." (Boyd K. Packer, "On the Shoulders of Giants", Brigham Young University J. Reuben Clark Law Society Devotional, Saturday, 2-28 2004.)

John Taylor said that the kingdom will be given to the Saints. He said, *"*We will now notice those men who are contending for it without any authority, and make a contrast between the two. We see them gathering their forces, and using their influence to destroy the poor among men. How long will the kings and rulers of the earth do this? Until they are dead and damned. And what then? They will be cast down into a pit. Isaiah saw them there, along with many other scoundrels, murderers, and scamps. After many days they will be visited, but they have got to lie in prison a long time for their transgressions. The one is legitimacy, and the other is illegitimacy; the one is the order of God, and the other is the order of the devil. Such is the position of things in relation to the world, to legitimacy and illegitimacy, in regard to things that are right and things that are wrong. Jesus Christ created all things, and for him were they made, whether it be principalities, powers, thrones, or dominions. Now the question is, is he going to be dispossessed of his right because scoundrels exist in the world, and stand in power and dominion; because his subjects have rebelled against him from time to time, and usurpers have taken his place, and the dominion is given to another? Verily, no. But the time will come when the kingdom and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven will be given to the Saints of the Most High, and they will possess it forever and ever." (A Sermon by Elder John Taylor, Delivered at the General Conference, in the Tabernacle, Great Salt Lake City, April 8, 1853.)

George A. Smith taught that he government is fallen and needs redeeming. He said, “Parley P. Pratt wrote in 1841 that the prophet said, "The government is fallen and needs redeeming. It is guilty of Blood and cannot stand as it now is but will come so near desolation as to hang as it were by a single hair. Then the servants goes [sic] to the nations of the earth, and gathers the strength of the Lord's house! A mighty army! And this is the redemption of Zion when the saints shall have redeemed that government and reinstated it in all its purity and glory." (George A. Smith Papers, Church Archives, Box 7, Folder 5, January 21, 1841. Also: D. Michael Stewart, "I Have a Question," Ensign, June 1976, 64-65)

David O. McKay taught us to uphold and defend the Constitution. He said, *“*Next to being one in worshiping God, there is nothing in this world in which this Church should be more united than in upholding and defending the Constitution of the United States. If members of the Melchizedek Priesthood allow the U.S. Constitution to be destroyed. they not only forfeit their rights to the Priesthood, but to a place in this highest degree of glory as well.” (David O. McKay, The Instructor, Feb. 1956, p.34

Ezra Taft Benson taught that the Elders of Israel will step forward, but can’t delay. He said*, “*The **Prophet Joseph Smith** declared it will be the elders of Israel who will step forward to help save the Constitution, and not the church. Brethren, if we had done our homework and were faithful, we could step forward at this time and help save this country. The fact that most of us are unprepared to do it is an indictment we will have to bear. The longer we wait, the heavier the chains, the deeper the blood, the more the persecution, and the less we can carry out our God-given mandate and world-wide mission. The war in heaven is raging on earth today. Are you being neutralized in the battle? [He then cites D&C 58:27-28:] “Verily I say, men should be anxiously engaged in a good cause and do many things of their own free will, and bring to pass much righteousness; For the power is in them, wherein they are agents unto themselves. . . .” (D&C 58:27-28.)” (Ezra Taft Benson, Not Commanded in All Things, *Conference Report 1965,* Era, p. 539) (Also available at https://latterdayconservative.com/ezra-taft-benson/not-commanded-in-all-things/)

Erastus Snow taught that the US would undermine one principle of the constitution after another. He said*, “*We were told by the prophet Joseph Smith, that the United States Government and people would undermine one principle of the Constitution after another, until its whole fabric would be torn away, and that it would become the duty of the Latter-day Saints and those in sympathy with them to rescue it from destruction, and to maintain and sustain the principles of human freedom for which our fathers fought

and bled. We look for these things to come in quick succession." (Statement of Apostle, Erastus Snow, 1885. Journal of Discourses, vol. 26, p. 226, May 31, 1885)

Ezra T. Benson (the earlier Benson, not president Ezra Taft Benson) taught that after the troops are driven out, people will come to live in Zion. He said, *"*When the standard of freedom is raised, we shall bid all classes welcome to the rights and privileges of liberty. When that day comes, people can come with all creeds and enjoy their liberties, providing they will acknowledge the laws of God; and I can tell you they will come by hundreds, by thousands, and by tens of thousands. Yes, they will flock to the standard of liberty." (Journal of Discourses, Vo1.6, p.182, Ezra T. Benson, January 24, 1858) (See it at https://journalofdiscourses.com/6/27)

See also Ezra Taft Benson's talk This Nation Shall Endure, at https://speeches.byu.edu/talks/ezra-taft-benson/nation-shall-endure/.

Earthquake: Scriptures

D&C 88:87-93: **87** For not many days hence and the earth shall tremble and reel to and fro as a drunken man; and the sun shall hide his face, and shall refuse to give light; and the moon shall be bathed in blood; and the stars shall become exceedingly angry, and shall cast themselves down as a fig that falleth from off a fig tree.
88 And after your testimony cometh wrath and indignation upon the people.
89 For after your testimony cometh the testimony of earthquakes, that shall cause groanings in the midst of her, and men shall fall upon the ground and shall not be able to stand.
90 And also cometh the testimony of the voice of thunderings, and the voice of lightnings, and the voice of tempests, and the voice of the waves of the sea heaving themselves beyond their bounds.
91 And all things shall be in commotion; and surely, men's hearts shall fail them; for fear shall come upon all people.
92 And angels shall fly through the midst of heaven, crying with a loud voice, sounding the trump of God, saying: Prepare ye, prepare ye, O

inhabitants of the earth; for the judgment of our God is come. Behold, and lo, the Bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.
93 And immediately there shall appear a great sign in heaven, and all people shall see it together.

D&C 87:6: **6** And thus, with the sword and by bloodshed the inhabitants of the earth shall mourn; and with famine, and plague, and earthquake, and the thunder of heaven, and the fierce and vivid lightning also, shall the inhabitants of the earth be made to feel the wrath, and indignation, and chastening hand of an Almighty God, until the consumption decreed hath made a full end of all nations;

D&C 45:32-33: **32** But my disciples shall stand in holy places, and shall not be moved; but among the wicked, men shall lift up their voices and curse God and die.
33 And there shall be earthquakes also in divers places, and many desolations; yet men will harden their hearts against me, and they will take up the sword, one against another, and they will kill one another.

Rev. 6:12-15: 12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;
13 And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind.
14 And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places.
15 And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains;

Matthew 24:7: **7** For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in divers places.

Helaman 14:21–22: **21** Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

22 Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

Earthquakes: Quotes

Joseph Smith, Teachings of The Prophet Joseph Smith, page 17: "And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ, that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north country."

Ezra Taft Benson, 1980 Semi-Annual General Conference: "Too often we bask in our comfortable complacency and rationalize that the ravages of war, economic disaster, famine and earthquake cannot happen here. Those who believe this are either not acquainted with the revelations of the Lord, or they do not believe them. Those who smugly think these calamities will not happen, that they somehow will be set aside because of the righteousness of the Saints, are deceived and will rue the day they harbored such a delusion. The Lord has warned and forewarned us against a day of great tribulation and given us counsel, through His servants, on how we can prepare for these difficult times. Have we heeded His counsel? …I bear witness to that inspired counsel from 1936 to present day that the Saints lay up a year's supply of food."

Erastus Snow, September 14, 1873. Journal of Discourses, Vol. 16, No. 27: "Thus we learn, my friends that the warning voice of God will go forth among the nations, and he will warn them by his servants; and by thunder, by lightning, by earthquakes, by great hailstorms and by devouring fire; by the voice of judgment and by the voice of mercy; by the voice of angels and by the voice of his servants the Prophets; he will warn them by gathering out the righteous from among the wicked, and those who will not heed these warnings will be visited with sore judgments until the earth is swept as with the besom of destruction."

Elder M. Russell Ballard, October 1992 General Conference: "Although the prophecies tell us that these things are to take place, more and more

people are expressing great alarm at what appears to be an acceleration of worldwide calamity. As members of the Church, we must not forget the Savior's admonition, "Be not troubled: for all these things must come to pass."

Resource: Videos on Increased Frequency of Earthquakes

From LiveScience channel on YouTube:
1000 years of earthquakes:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=o4OZjvd6JC4&list=PLMFvYACK6oX0U14oLYSnnSEH59W_dNkt1 ;

From PacificTWC channel on YouTube:
Earthquakes of the 20th century: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jhmF-IwP6uM&list=PLMFvYACK6oX0U14oLYSnnSEH59W_dNkt1&index=3 ;

Earthquakes of 2000-2019: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jhmF-IwP6uM&list=PLMFvYACK6oX0U14oLYSnnSEH59W_dNkt1&index=3

From Latos Charts channel on YouTube:
Earthquakes of magnitude 6+ from 1900-2019:
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1_a_k6vsdso&list=PLMFvYACK6oX0U14oLYSnnSEH59W_dNkt1&index=6

Seals, Trumpets, Vials: Book of Revelation Scripture Summary

The Book of Revelation writes of 7 seal judgments; 7 trumpet judgments; 7 bowl judgments.

All of the judgments are now **poured out in a tribulation period** which according to Jesus and Daniel **lasts 7 years**. These judgments devastate the earth. In the Tribulation the oceans become blood, most of the sea life dies, plagues, hailstones are released, and a supernatural darkness covers the earth.

SEALS

Rev. 6:2 1st seal conquers with a peace plan.

Rev.6:3 2nd Seal: Wars on earth.

Rev.6:5 3rd Seal: Worldwide economic trouble.

Rev.6:7 4th Seal: Death released. 1/4 of the world's population to die by plagues, disease, and beasts of the earth.

Rev.6:9 5th Seal: Persecution and mass killing of God's people worldwide.

Rev.6:12 6th Seal: Massive earthquake wrath of God. 144,000 are anointed.

Rev.8:1 7th Seal: Fire and desolation

TRUMPETS

Rev.8:7 1st Trumpet: Hail, fire, and blood. 1/3 all grass and trees burned up

Rev.8:8 2nd Trumpet: Great mountain hits sea. 1/3 all ocean becomes blood. 1/3 all sea life dies and 1/3 all ships destroyed.

Rev.8:10 3rd Trumpet: Wormwood star hits earth. 1/3 all freshwater poisoned.

Rev.8:12 4th Trumpet: 1/3 of sun and moon darkened.

Rev.9:1 5th Trumpet: locust beasts that sting and torment men are loosed from the pit.

Rev.9:13 6th Trumpet: demons released and 200 million army kills 1/3 of the world's population.

VIALS

Rev.16:2 1st Vial: Terrible and painful sores break out on all who worship beast.

Rev.16:3 2nd Vial: Entire oceans becomes blood, the sea life dies.

Rev.16:4 3rd Vial: Fresh water becomes blood, no more fresh drinking water.

Rev.16:8 4th Vial: Sun increased in heat and scorches and burns people.

Rev.16:10 5th Vial: a Supernatural darkness covers the earth

Rev.16:12 6th Vial: Armies head toward in the Middle East for the final battle –Armageddon.

Rev.16:17 7th Vial: Babylon destroyed, massive earthquakes, hundred pound hailstones

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF SPIRITUAL POWERS: ANGELS, TRANSLATION, VEIL, TELEPORTATION

President Nelson: Expect the Greatest Miracles Before the Lord's Return

President Nelson said, "In coming days, we will see the ***greatest*** **manifestations of the Savior's power that the world has *ever* seen**. Between now and the time He returns "with power and great glory," He will bestow **countless privileges, blessings, and miracles** upon the faithful." (Russel M Nelson, Overcome the World and Find Rest, Oct. 2022 Gen. Conf.)

Earth is Alive: Scriptures

Moses 7:48–49, 54-56: **48** And it came to pass that Enoch looked upon the earth; and he heard a voice from the bowels thereof, saying: Wo, wo is me, the mother of men; I am pained, I am weary, because of the wickedness of my children. When shall I rest, and be cleansed from the filthiness which is gone forth out of me? When will my Creator sanctify me, that I may rest, and righteousness for a season abide upon my face?
49 And when Enoch heard the earth mourn, he wept, and cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, wilt thou not have compassion upon the earth? Wilt thou not bless the children of Noah?
54 And it came to pass that Enoch cried unto the Lord, saying: When the Son of Man cometh in the flesh, shall the earth rest? I pray thee, show me these things.
55 And the Lord said unto Enoch: Look, and he looked and beheld the Son of Man lifted up on the cross, after the manner of men;
56 And he heard a loud voice; and the heavens were veiled; and all the creations of God mourned; and the earth groaned; and the rocks were rent; and the saints arose, and were crowned at the right hand of the Son of Man, with crowns of glory;

Moses 6:63: **63** And behold, all things have their likeness, and all things are created and made to bear record of me, both things which are temporal, and things which are spiritual; things which are in the heavens above, and things which are on the earth, and things which are in the earth, and things which are under the earth, both above and beneath: all things bear record of me.

D&C 88:25–26: **25** And again, verily I say unto you, the earth abideth the law of a celestial kingdom, for it filleth the measure of its creation, and transgresseth not the law—
26 Wherefore, it shall be sanctified; yea, notwithstanding it shall die, it shall be quickened again, and shall abide the power by which it is quickened, and the righteous shall inherit it.

D&C 88:45–47: **45** The earth rolls upon her wings, and the sun giveth his light by day, and the moon giveth her light by night, and the stars also give their light, as they roll upon their wings in their glory, in the midst of the power of God.
46 Unto what shall I liken these kingdoms, that ye may understand?
47 Behold, all these are kingdoms, and any man who hath seen any or the least of these hath seen God moving in his majesty and power.

D&C 130:8-9: **8** The place where God resides is a great Urim and Thummim.
9 This earth, in its sanctified and immortal state, will be made like unto crystal and will be a Urim and Thummim to the inhabitants who dwell thereon, whereby all things pertaining to an inferior kingdom, or all kingdoms of a lower order, will be manifest to those who dwell on it; and this earth will be Christ's.

D&C 133:23-25: **23** He shall command the great deep, and it shall be driven back into the north countries, and the islands shall become one land;
24 And the land of Jerusalem and the land of Zion shall be turned back into their own place, and the earth shall be like as it was in the days before it was divided.
25 And the Lord, even the Savior, shall stand in the midst of his people, and shall reign over all flesh.

Romans 8:19–22: **19** For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God.
20 For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who hath subjected *the same* in hope,
21 Because the creature itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God.
22 For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now.

D&C 77:6 states that the Earth is going through a "temporal existence" of "7,000 years."

Matthew 27:50-51: When Jesus was crucified and "yielded up the ghost," the earth "did quake, and the rocks rent."

Numbers 16:32: "the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up."

Job 20:27: "the earth shall rise up against [humanity]"

2 Nephi 26:5: "they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up."

Isaiah 51:6: "earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner."

Deut. 4:26, 30:19, 31:28 state that Moses called upon the Earth to witness against wicked Israel.

Isaiah 26:21: "earth also shall disclose her blood"

Earth is Alive: Quotes

Joseph Smith said, "spirit is a substance; that it is material, but that it is more pure, elastic and refined matter" (Joseph Smith, "Try the Spirits," Times and Seasons 3 (1 April 1842): 745.)

Brigham Young said, "Is there life in a tree when it ceases to put forth leaves? You see it standing upright, and when it ceases to bear leaves and fruit you say it is dead, but that is a mistake. It still has life, but that life operates upon the tree in another way, and continues to operate until it resolves it to the native elements. It is life in another condition that begins to operate upon man, upon animals, upon vegetations, and upon minerals when

we see the change termed dissolution. There is life in the material of the fleshly tabernacle, independent of the spirit given of God to undergo this probation. **There is life in all matter,** throughout the vast extent of all the eternities." (Brigham Young, 23 March 1856, Journal of Discourses, 26 vols. (London and Liverpool: LDS Booksellers Depot, 1854-86), 3:277.)

Orson Pratt said that the earth experienced upheavals that caused the dry land to come forth from the "womb of mighty waters," and as "it came forth from the ocean floor, like the new-born child, it was innocent." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses 1:331.)

Heber C. Kimball said, "Some say the earth exists without spirit; I do not believe any such thing; it has a spirit as much as any body has a spirit." (Heber C. Kimball, 23 August 1857, Journal of Discourses 5:172.)

Orson Pratt said, "What! is the earth alive too? If it were not, how could the words of our text be fulfilled, where it speaks of the earth's dying? How can that die that has no life?" (Orson Pratt, 25 July 1852, Journal of Discourses 1:281.)

Orson Pratt said, "The earth, like the posterity of Adam, was cursed because of original sin, and like them it will be redeemed unconditionally, and restored again into the presence of God. . . . When one is redeemed, the other is redeemed also." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses 1:330.)

Brigham Young said, "The curse will be taken from the earth and sin and corruption will be swept from its face." (Brigham Young, 24 May 1863, Journal of Discourses 10:172.)

Brigham Young said, "During this time the earth and all creation groaned in sin, and enmity increased, and the lives of men and beasts decreased." (Brigham Young, Manuscript History of Brigham Young, ed. Elden J. Watson (Salt Lake City: Elden J. Watson, 1971), 142.)

Brigham Young said, "The soil, the air, the water are all pure and healthy.

Do not suffer them to become polluted with wickedness. Strive to preserve the elements from being contaminated by filthy, wicked conduct and sayings." (Brigham Young, 10 June 1860, Journal of Discourses 8:79.)

Heber C. Kimball said, "We will let you know that the earth can swallow you up." (Heber C. Kimball, 8 November 1857, Journal of Discourses 6:35.)

Orson Pratt said that after the saints "have died as the earth will die, they will have to be resurrected, as this earth will be resurrected, and then receive their inheritance upon it." (Orson Pratt, 25 July 1852, Journal of Discourses 1:293.)

Brigham Young said, "The terra firma on which we walk, and from which we gain our bread, is looking forth for the morning of the resurrection, and will get a resurrection, and be cleansed from the filthiness that has gone forth out of her. This is Bible doctrine. What filthiness has gone forth out of her? You and I, and all the inhabitants of the earth; the human body, and all earthly bodies, both animal and vegetable; are composed of the native element that we breathe, that we drink, and that we walk upon; we till the earth for our bread, which is one of the 15 materials of which your body is composed, it comes forth from the native elements into an organized state; what for? To be exalted, to get a glorious resurrection. We are of the earth, earthy, and not only will the portion of mother earth which composes these bodies get a resurrection, but the earth itself." (Brigham Young, 14 August 1853, Journal of Discourses 1:274.)

Orson Pratt said, "Who, in looking upon the earth as it ascends in the scale of the universe, does not desire to keep pace with it, that when it shall be classed its turn, among the dazzling orbs of the blue vault of heaven, shining forth in all the splendors of the celestial glory, he may find himself proportionately advanced in the scale of intellectual and moral excellence?" (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses, 1:333.)

Brigham Young said, "Let the people be holy, and the earth under their feet will be holy." (Brigham Young, 6 April 1852, Journal of Discourses 1:203.)

These next few quotations about the Earth's baptism teach us both that Earth is a living organism, and vindicates the increasingly popular truth that the Earth was covered in water at the flood of Noah:

Orson Pratt said, "as the earth has been corrupted by other sins than the original, it must partake of the curses of the second death after it is redeemed from the curses of the first, unless God has provided a way for its sanctification and redemption therefrom. It has seemed good unto the great Redeemer to institute ordinances for the cleansing, sanctification, and eternal redemption of the earth, not from the original sin, but from the sins of the posterity of Adam. The first ordinance instituted for the cleansing of the earth, was that of **immersion** in water." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses 1:331.)

Orson Pratt said that earth's baptism at the flood was the earth's "**second birth from the womb of mighty waters**" and as the earth came forth from the ocean it was "clothed with all the innocency of its first creation." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses 1:331.)

Brigham Young said, "The Lord **baptized the earth** for the remission of sins, and it has been once cleansed from the filthiness that has gone out of it, which was in the inhabitants who dwelt upon its face." (Brigham Young, 14 August 1853, Journal of Discourses 1:274.)

Joseph Smith said that God who once "cleansed the violence of the earth with a flood," promised that he would purify the earth "again with fire in the last days." (Joseph Smith, "Gen. Smith's Views on the Government and Policy of the U.S.," Times and Seasons 5 (15 May 1844): 533.)

Orson Pratt said, "As the earth was cleansed from its transgression by **baptism in water**, so it must again be cleansed, before it is made immortal. It must be cleansed by an element that is stronger and more purifying than that of water, namely, the element of fire. Fire must prevail over all the face of this earth. What for? For the purpose of cleansing the earth from its

transgressions, the same as the Latter-day Saints expect to be cleansed and purified more fully than by baptism in water—by the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost." (Orson Pratt, 1 August 1880, Journal of Discourses 21:324.)

Note: The following article was helping in finding some of these quotes on Earth as a living being, and has additional things of interest along these lines. The article is called "The Living Earth: A Nineteenth-Century Latter-day Saint Perspective" by J. Michael Hunter of BYU: https://scholarsarchive.byu.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?referer=&httpsredir=1&article=2384&context=facpub

See also https://www.mormonthink.com/QUOTES/earth.htm

For one of my favorite books on this subject, see Rodney Turner's book "This Eternal Earth: A Scriptural and Prophetic Biography."

Elements have Intelligence: Scriptures

D&C 93:28–35: **28** He that keepeth his commandments receiveth truth and light, until he is glorified in truth and knoweth all things.
29 Man was also in the beginning with God. Intelligence, or the light of truth, was not created or made, neither indeed can be.
30 All truth is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, to act for itself, as all intelligence also; otherwise there is no existence.
31 Behold, here is the agency of man, and here is the condemnation of man; because that which was from the beginning is plainly manifest unto them, and they receive not the light.
32 And every man whose spirit receiveth not the light is under condemnation.
33 For man is spirit. The elements are eternal, and spirit and element, inseparably connected, receive a fulness of joy;
34 And when separated, man cannot receive a fulness of joy.

35 The elements are the tabernacle of God; yea, man is the tabernacle of God, even temples; and whatsoever temple is defiled, God shall destroy that temple.

D&C 88: 22–24, 36-43: **22** For he who is not able to abide the law of a celestial kingdom cannot abide a celestial glory.
23 And he who cannot abide the law of a terrestrial kingdom cannot abide a terrestrial glory.
24 And he who cannot abide the law of a telestial kingdom cannot abide a telestial glory; therefore he is not meet for a kingdom of glory. Therefore he must abide a kingdom which is not a kingdom of glory.
36 All kingdoms have a law given;
37 And there are many kingdoms; for there is no space in the which there is no kingdom; and there is no kingdom in which there is no space, either a greater or a lesser kingdom.
38 And unto every kingdom is given a law; and unto every law there are certain bounds also and conditions.
39 All beings who abide not in those conditions are not justified.
40 For intelligence cleaveth unto intelligence; wisdom receiveth wisdom; truth embraceth truth; virtue loveth virtue; light cleaveth unto light; mercy hath compassion on mercy and claimeth her own; justice continueth its course and claimeth its own; judgment goeth before the face of him who sitteth upon the throne and governeth and executeth all things.
41 He comprehendeth all things, and all things are before him, and all things are round about him; and he is above all things, and in all things, and is through all things, and is round about all things; and all things are by him, and of him, even God, forever and ever.
42 And again, verily I say unto you, he hath given a law unto all things, by which they move in their times and their seasons;
43 And their courses are fixed, even the courses of the heavens and the earth, which comprehend the earth and all the planets.

Abraham 3:18–19: **18** Howbeit that he made the greater star; as, also, if there be two spirits, and one shall be more intelligent than the other, yet these two spirits, notwithstanding one is more intelligent than the other, have no beginning; they existed before, they shall have no end, they shall exist after, for they are gnolaum, or eternal.
19 And the Lord said unto me: These two facts do exist, that there are two spirits, one being more intelligent than the other; there shall be another more

intelligent than they; I am the Lord thy God, I am more intelligent than they all.

Element Has Intelligence: Quotes

Elder Bruce R. McConkie said: "Intelligence or spirit element became intelligences after the spirits were born as individual entities. Use of this name designates both the primal element from which the spirit offspring were created and also their inherited capacity to grow in grace . . ." (*Mormon Doctrine,* 387).

Joseph Fielding Smith answered "why does not God create intelligence and prevent evil?" as follows: "If the Lord declares that intelligence, something which we do not fully understand, was co-eternal with him and always existed, there is no argument that we can or should present to contradict it. Why he cannot create intelligence is simply because intelligence, like time and space, always existed, and therefore did not have to be created." *(Answers to Gospel Questions Vol.* 3:125).

Elder Widtsoe said: "The Gospel teaches that, associated with the universal energy that vivifies universal matter, and possibly identified with it, is universal intelligence, a force which is felt wherever matter and energy are found, which is everywhere. The forces of the universe do not act blindly, but are expressions of a universal intelligence. That a degree of intelligence is possessed by every particle of energized matter cannot be said; nor is it important. . . . "Man was also in the beginning with God." The doctrine that man is an eternal being leads to untold possibilities. Eternal man lived a personal life before the earth-life began, and he continues a personal existence hereafter." *(A Rational Theology* 13–14).

Joseph Smith said, "All the minds and spirits that God ever sent into the world are susceptible of enlargement" (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith 354).

Additional provoking insights on the topic of intelligences can be found at these articles:
https://rsc.byu.edu/pearl-great-price-revelations-god/history-intelligence-latter-day-saint-thought

https://www.mormondialogue.org/topic/56621-mcconkie-on-intelligences/

https://jod.mrm.org/7/282

https://www.reddit.com/r/mormon/comments/1cummnb/lds_cosmology_theology_intelligences/

God Can Speak to Many People at the Same Time: Scriptures

Exodus 19:16–19: **16** ¶ And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that *was* in the camp trembled.
17 And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount.
18 And mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the LORD descended upon it in fire: and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly.
19 And when the voice of the trumpet sounded long, and waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice.

Exodus 20:18–19: **18** ¶ And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking: and when the people saw *it*, they removed, and stood afar off.
19 And they said unto Moses, Speak thou with us, and we will hear: but let not God speak with us, lest we die.

Numbers 11:24–25: **24** ¶ And Moses went out, and told the people the words of the LORD, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the tabernacle.
25 And the LORD came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, *that,* when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease.

Acts 2:1–4: **1** And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.
2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.
3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.
4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Joel 2:27–30: **27** And ye shall know that I *am* in the midst of Israel, and *that* I *am* the Lord your God, and none else: and my people shall never be ashamed.
28 ¶ And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:
29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit.
30 And I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.

The Nature of Evil Spirits: Scriptures

Ephesians 6:12: **12** For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high *places.*

1 Peter 5:8: **8** Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

2 Corinthians 11:14–15: **14** And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.
15 Therefore *it is* no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

Luke 10:18: **18** And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

Matthew 12:43–45: **43** When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none.
44 Then he saith, I will return into my house from whence I came out; and when he is come, he findeth *it* empty, swept, and garnished.
45 Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last *state* of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.

Moses 4:1–4: 1 And I, the Lord God, spake unto Moses, saying: That Satan, whom thou hast commanded in the name of mine Only Begotten, is the same which was from the beginning, and he came before me, saying—Behold, here am I, send me, I will be thy son, and I will redeem all mankind, that one soul shall not be lost, and surely I will do it; wherefore give me thine honor.
2 But, behold, my Beloved Son, which was my Beloved and Chosen from the beginning, said unto me—Father, thy will be done, and the glory be thine forever.
3 Wherefore, because that Satan rebelled against me, and sought to destroy the agency of man, which I, the Lord God, had given him, and also, that I should give unto him mine own power; by the power of mine Only Begotten, I caused that he should be cast down;
4 And he became Satan, yea, even the devil, the father of all lies,
to deceive and to blind men, and to lead them captive at his will, even as many as would not hearken unto my voice.

D&C 10:26-27: 26 And thus he flattereth them, and leadeth them along until he draggeth their souls down to hell; and thus he causeth them to catch themselves in their own snare.
27 And thus he goeth up and down, to and fro in the earth, seeking to destroy the souls of men.

D&C 29:36–37: **36** And it came to pass that Adam, being tempted of the devil—for, behold, the devil was before Adam, for he rebelled against me, saying, Give me thine honor, which is my power; and also a third part of the hosts of heaven turned he away from me because of their agency;
37 And they were thrust down, and thus came the devil and his angels;

Visible & Invisible Angels to Help: Scriptures

Hebrews 13:2: 2 Be not forgetful to entertain strangers: for thereby some have entertained angels unawares.

2 Kings 6:16–17: **16** And he answered, Fear not: for they that *be* with us *are* more than they that *be* with them.
17 And Elisha prayed, and said, Lord, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the Lord opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain *was* full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.

Acts 12:5–11: 5 Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto God for him.
6 And when Herod would have brought him forth, the same night Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains: and the keepers before the door kept the prison.
7 And, behold, the angel of the Lord came upon *him*, and a light shined in the prison: and he smote Peter on the side, and raised him up, saying, Arise up quickly. And his chains fell off from *his* hands.
8 And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me.
9 And he went out, and followed him; and wist not that it was true which was done by the angel; but thought he saw a vision.
10 When they were past the first and the second ward, they came unto the iron gate that leadeth unto the city; which opened to them of his own accord: and they went out, and passed on through one street; and forthwith the angel departed from him.

11 And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and *from* all the expectation of the people of the Jews.

Luke 22:41-43: **41** And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast, and kneeled down, and prayed,
42 Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.
43 And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him.

Matthew 4:11: **11** Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

1 Nephi 11:14: **14** And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?
(The rest of the chapter shows Nephi's vision of the future Christ.)

2 Nephi 32:2–3: **2** Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?
3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Alma 9:25–26: **25** And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;
26 And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

Alma 19:33–34: **33** And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.
34 And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels

and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

3 Nephi 17:24: **24** And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

D&C 84:88: **88** And whoso receiveth you, there I will be also, for I will go before your face. I will be on your right hand and on your left, and my Spirit shall be in your hearts, and mine angels round about you, to bear you up.

D&C 107:20: **20** The power and authority of the lesser, or Aaronic Priesthood, is to hold the keys of the ministering of angels, and to administer in outward ordinances, the letter of the gospel, the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins, agreeable to the covenants and commandments.

D&C 129:1–9: **1** There are two kinds of beings in heaven, namely: Angels, who are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones—
2 For instance, Jesus said: *Handle me and see, for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.*
3 Secondly: the spirits of just men made perfect, they who are not resurrected, but inherit the same glory.
4 When a messenger comes saying he has a message from God, offer him your hand and request him to shake hands with you.
5 If he be an angel he will do so, and you will feel his hand.
6 If he be the spirit of a just man made perfect he will come in his glory; for that is the only way he can appear—
|**7** Ask him to shake hands with you, but he will not move, because it is contrary to the order of heaven for a just man to deceive; but he will still deliver his message.
8 If it be the devil as an angel of light, when you ask him to shake hands he will offer you his hand, and you will not feel anything; you may therefore detect him.
9 These are three grand keys whereby you may know whether any administration is from God.

D&C 13: **1** Upon you my fellow servants, in the name of Messiah I confer the Priesthood of Aaron, which holds the keys of the ministering of angels, and of the gospel of repentance, and of baptism by immersion for the

remission of sins; and this shall never be taken again from the earth, until the sons of Levi do offer again an offering unto the Lord in righteousness.

D&C 27:5–18: **5** Behold, this is wisdom in me; wherefore, marvel not, for the hour cometh that I will drink of the fruit of the vine with you on the earth, and with Moroni, whom I have sent unto you to reveal the Book of Mormon, containing the fulness of my everlasting gospel, to whom I have committed the keys of the record of the stick of Ephraim;
6 And also with Elias, to whom I have committed the keys of bringing to pass the restoration of all things spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets since the world began, concerning the last days;
7 And also John the son of Zacharias, which Zacharias he (Elias) visited and gave promise that he should have a son, and his name should be John, and he should be filled with the spirit of Elias;
8 Which John I have sent unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jun., and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you unto the first priesthood which you have received, that you might be called and ordained even as Aaron;
9 And also Elijah, unto whom I have committed the keys of the power of turning the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to the fathers, that the whole earth may not be smitten with a curse;
10 And also with Joseph and Jacob, and Isaac, and Abraham, your fathers, by whom the promises remain;
11 And also with Michael, or Adam, the father of all, the prince of all, the ancient of days;
12 And also with Peter, and James, and John, whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you and confirmed you to be apostles, and especial witnesses of my name, and bear the keys of your ministry and of the same things which I revealed unto them;
13 Unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times; and for the fulness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all things, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth;
14 And also with all those whom my Father hath given me out of the world.
15 Wherefore, lift up your hearts and rejoice, and gird up your loins, and take upon you my whole armor, that ye may be able to withstand the evil day, having done all, that ye may be able to stand.
16 Stand, therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, having on the breastplate of righteousness, and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace, which I have sent mine angels to commit unto you;

17 Taking the shield of faith wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked;
18 And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of my Spirit, which I will pour out upon you, and my word which I reveal unto you, and be agreed as touching all things whatsoever ye ask of me, and be faithful until I come, and ye shall be caught up, that where I am ye shall be also. Amen.

Speaking Different Languages & Avoiding Enemies by the Spirit: Scriptures

Gift of Tongues:

Acts 2:4-6: 4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.
5 And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.
6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.
Mark 16:17: **17** And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;

D&C 46:24-25: **24** And again, it is given to some to speak with tongues;
25 And to another is given the interpretation of tongues.

Knowing What to Say Under Persecution:

Matthew 10:19-20: **19** But when they deliver you up, take no thought how or what ye shall speak: for it shall be given you in that same hour what ye shall speak.

Luke 21:12-15: **12** But before all these, they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute *you,* delivering *you* up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake.
13 And it shall turn to you for a testimony.
14 Settle *it* therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer:
15 For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.

Speaking with Power and by the Spirit:

2 Nephi 32:2-3: **2** Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?
3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Alma 18:16-21: **16** And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?
17 I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.
18 Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?
19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.
20 And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

21 And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Mosiah 27:11-15: **11** And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;
12 And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.
13 Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.
14 And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.
15 And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

3 Nephi 19:24: **24** And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

D&C 11:21: **21** Seek not to declare my word, but first seek to obtain my word, and then shall your tongue be loosed; then, if you desire, you shall have my Spirit and my word, yea, the power of God unto the convincing of men.

D&C 84:85: 85 Neither take ye thought beforehand what ye shall say; but treasure up in your minds continually the words of life, and it shall be given you in the very hour that portion that shall be meted unto every man.

Missionary Power and Protection:

Helaman 5:30-33: **30** And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—
31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—
32 And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.
33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

Early Christian Teachings & History:

(As these are more difficult to find, the following few references on early Christian teachings are generated summaries, so take them with a grain of salt.)

The Didache (c. 1st century A.D.): Encourages being "prepared, for you do not know the hour in which our Lord comes," and emphasizes prophetic speaking by the Spirit among believers (Didache 11).

Justin Martyr (c. 150 A.D.): In First Apology, Justin speaks of the “gifts of the Spirit,” including prophecy and spiritual utterance, still being manifest among Christians.

Irenaeus (c. 180 A.D.): In Against Heresies (Book 5, Chapter 6), Irenaeus writes: "For some do certainly drive out devils, so that those who have been cleansed from evil spirits... speak in tongues through the Spirit."

Eusebius' Church History: Documents several early Christian accounts of divine aid under persecution, such as martyrs who spoke boldly and confounded their accusers, attributing it to the Spirit.

Instantaneous / ‘Portal’ Travel: Scriptures

Acts 8:39–40: **39** And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.
40 But Philip was found at Azotus: and passing through he preached in all the cities, till he came to Cæsarea.

Ezekiel 3:14: **14** So the spirit lifted me up, and took me away, and I went in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit; but the hand of the LORD was strong upon me.

2 Kings 2:11: **11** And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, *there appeared* a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

John 6:18-21: **18** And the sea arose by reason of a great wind that blew.
19 So when they had rowed about five and twenty or thirty furlongs, they see Jesus walking on the sea, and drawing nigh unto the ship: and they were afraid.
20 But he saith unto them, It is I; be not afraid.
21 Then they willingly received him into the ship: **and immediately the ship was at the land whither they went.**

Luke 24:31-39: **31** And their eyes were opened, and they knew him; and he vanished out of their sight.
32 And they said one to another, Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?
33 And they rose up the same hour, and returned to Jerusalem, and found the eleven gathered together, and them that were with them,
34 Saying, The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon.
35 And they told what things *were done* in the way, and how he was known of them in breaking of bread.
36 ¶ And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and

saith unto them, Peace *be* unto you.
37 But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit.
38 And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled? and why do thoughts arise in your hearts?
39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.

2 Corinthians 12:2–4: 2 I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven.
3 And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;)
4 How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.
Genesis 28:12: **12** And he dreamed, and behold a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven: and behold the angels of God ascending and descending on it.

1 Kings 18:12: 12 And it shall come to pass, *as soon as* I am gone from thee, that the Spirit of the Lord shall carry thee whither I know not; and *so* when I come and tell Ahab, and he cannot find thee, he shall slay me: but I thy servant fear the Lord from my youth.

2 Kings 2:16: **16** ¶ And they said unto him, Behold now, there be with thy servants fifty strong men; let them go, we pray thee, and seek thy master: lest peradventure the Spirit of the Lord hath taken him up, and cast him upon some mountain, or into some valley. And he said, Ye shall not send.

Ezekiel 8:3: 3 And he put forth the form of an hand, and took me by a lock of mine head; and the spirit lifted me up between the earth and the heaven, and brought me in the visions of God to Jerusalem, to the door of the inner gate that looketh toward the north; where *was* the seat of the image of jealousy, which provoketh to jealousy.

Ezekiel 11:1, 24: **1** Moreover the spirit lifted me up, and brought me unto the east gate of the LORD's house, which looketh eastward: and behold at the door of the gate five and twenty men; among whom I saw Jaazaniah the son of Azur, and Pelatiah the son of Benaiah, princes of the people.
24 ¶ Afterwards the spirit took me up, and brought me in a vision by the

Spirit of God into Chaldea, to them of the captivity. So the vision that I had seen went up from me.

Matthew 4:1: **1** Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil.

Rev. 1:10: **10** I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet,

Rev. 4:2: **2** And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and *one* sat on the throne.
Rev. 17:3: **3** So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns.

Rev. 21:10: **10** And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God,

3 Nephi 28:13–15, 36–40: **13** And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.
14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;
15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.
36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—
37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;
38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.
39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they

were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.
40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

Alma 19:34: 34 And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

Helaman 5:36–39: **36** And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.
37 And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.
38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?
39 Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

Ether 3:8–16, 25: **8** And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.
9 And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?
10 And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.
11 And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?
12 And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.
13 And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed

from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.
14 Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.
15 And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.
16 Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.
25 And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

Alma 8:18–20: **18** Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.
19 And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?
20 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

Alma 17:3–4, 9: **3** But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.
4 And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

9 And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

3 Nephi 28:13–15, 26: **13** And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.
14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;
15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.
26 But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

D&C 7:5-6: **5** I say unto thee, Peter, this was a good desire; but my beloved has desired that he might do more, or a greater work yet among men than what he has before done.
6 Yea, he has undertaken a greater work; therefore I will make him as flaming fire and a ministering angel; he shall minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation who dwell on the earth.

D&C 129:1–9: **1** There are two kinds of beings in heaven, namely: Angels, who are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones—
2 For instance, Jesus said: *Handle me and see, for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.*
3 Secondly: the spirits of just men made perfect, they who are not resurrected, but inherit the same glory.
4 When a messenger comes saying he has a message from God, offer him your hand and request him to shake hands with you.
5 If he be an angel he will do so, and you will feel his hand.
6 If he be the spirit of a just man made perfect he will come in his glory; for that is the only way he can appear—
7 Ask him to shake hands with you, but he will not move, because it is contrary to the order of heaven for a just man to deceive; but he will still deliver his message.
8 If it be the devil as an angel of light, when you ask him to shake hands he will offer you his hand, and you will not feel anything; you may therefore

detect him.
9 These are three grand keys whereby you may know whether any administration is from God.

D&C 110: **1** The veil was taken from our minds, and the eyes of our understanding were opened.
2 We saw the Lord standing upon the breastwork of the pulpit, before us; and under his feet was a paved work of pure gold, in color like amber.
3 His eyes were as a flame of fire; the hair of his head was white like the pure snow; his countenance shone above the brightness of the sun; and his voice was as the sound of the rushing of great waters, even the voice of Jehovah, saying:
4 I am the first and the last; I am he who liveth, I am he who was slain; I am your advocate with the Father.
5 Behold, your sins are forgiven you; you are clean before me; therefore, lift up your heads and rejoice.
6 Let the hearts of your brethren rejoice, and let the hearts of all my people rejoice, who have, with their might, built this house to my name.
7 For behold, I have accepted this house, and my name shall be here; and I will manifest myself to my people in mercy in this house.
8 Yea, I will appear unto my servants, and speak unto them with mine own voice, if my people will keep my commandments, and do not pollute this holy house.
9 Yea the hearts of thousands and tens of thousands shall greatly rejoice in consequence of the blessings which shall be poured out, and the endowment with which my servants have been endowed in this house.
10 And the fame of this house shall spread to foreign lands; and this is the beginning of the blessing which shall be poured out upon the heads of my people. Even so. Amen.
11 After this vision closed, the heavens were again opened unto us; and Moses appeared before us, and committed unto us the keys of the gathering of Israel from the four parts of the earth, and the leading of the ten tribes from the land of the north.
12 After this, Elias appeared, and committed the dispensation of the gospel of Abraham, saying that in us and our seed all generations after us should be blessed.
13 After this vision had closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us, and said:

14 Behold, the time has fully come, which was spoken of by the mouth of Malachi—testifying that he [Elijah] should be sent, before the great and dreadful day of the Lord come—
15 To turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the children to the fathers, lest the whole earth be smitten with a curse—
16 Therefore, the keys of this dispensation are committed into your hands; and by this ye may know that the great and dreadful day of the Lord is near, even at the doors.

D&C 76:11–12: **11** We, Joseph Smith, Jun., and Sidney Rigdon, being in the Spirit on the sixteenth day of February, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and thirty-two—
12 By the power of the Spirit our eyes were opened and our understandings were enlightened, so as to see and understand the things of God

The Veil (Between Realms): Scriptures

Hebrews 10:19–20: 19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus,
20 By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;

Exodus 26:33: 33 ¶ And thou shalt hang up the veil under the taches, that thou mayest bring in thither within the veil the ark of the testimony: and the veil shall divide unto you between the holy *place* and the most holy.

Matthew 27:51: **50** ¶ Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.

Ether 3:6, 19–20: **6** And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

19 And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.
20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

D&C 110:1: **1** The veil was taken from our minds, and the eyes of our understanding were opened.

D&C 67:10: **10** And again, verily I say unto you that it is your privilege, and a promise I give unto you that have been ordained unto this ministry, that inasmuch as you strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, and humble yourselves before me, for ye are not sufficiently humble, the veil shall be rent and you shall see me and know that I am—not with the carnal neither natural mind, but with the spiritual.

D&C 101:23: **23** And prepare for the revelation which is to come, when the veil of the covering of my temple, in my tabernacle, which hideth the earth, shall be taken off, and all flesh shall see me together.

D&C 138:11: **11** As I pondered over these things which are written, the eyes of my understanding were opened, and the Spirit of the Lord rested upon me, and I saw the hosts of the dead, both small and great.

Translation (Change to a Higher State) & Translated Beings: Scriptures

Genesis 5:24: **24** And Enoch walked with God: and he *was* not; for God took him.

Hebrews 11:5: **5** By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God.

Moses 7:21, 23, 27, 69: **21** And it came to pass that the Lord showed unto Enoch all the inhabitants of the earth; and he beheld, and lo, Zion, in process of time, was taken up into heaven. And the Lord said unto Enoch: Behold mine abode forever.
23 And after that Zion was taken up into heaven, Enoch beheld, and lo, all the nations of the earth were before him;
27 And Enoch beheld angels descending out of heaven, bearing testimony of the Father and Son; and the Holy Ghost fell on many, and they were caught up by the powers of heaven into Zion.
69 And Enoch and all his people walked with God, and he dwelt in the midst of Zion; and it came to pass that Zion was not, for God received it up into his own bosom; and from thence went forth the saying, Zion is Fled.

2 Kings 2:11: **11** And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, *there appeared* a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

John 21:22–23: **22** Jesus saith unto him, If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to thee? follow thou me.
23 Then went this saying abroad among the brethren, that that disciple should not die: yet Jesus said not unto him, He shall not die; but, If I will that he tarry till I come, what *is that* to thee?

3 Nephi 28:6-40: **6** And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.
7 Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.
8 And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye
from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.
9 And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

10 And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;
11 And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.
12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.
13 And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.
14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;
15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.
16 But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.
17 And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;
18 But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.
19 And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.
20 And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.
21 And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.
22 And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.
23 And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the

church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.
24 And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.
25 Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.
26 But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.
27 And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.
28 They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.
29 And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.
30 And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.
31 Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;
32 Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.
33 And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.
34 And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;
35 And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?
36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;
38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.
39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.
40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

Mormon 8:10–11: **10** And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.
11 But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

Ether 12:19–21: 19 And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.
20 And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.
21 And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

D&C 7: **1** And the Lord said unto me: John, my beloved, what desirest thou? For if you shall ask what you will, it shall be granted unto you.
2 And I said unto him: Lord, give unto me power over death, that I may live

and bring souls unto thee.
3 And the Lord said unto me: Verily, verily, I say unto thee, because thou desirest this thou shalt tarry until I come in my glory, and shalt prophesy before nations, kindreds, tongues and people.
4 And for this cause the Lord said unto Peter: If I will that he tarry till I come, what is that to thee? For he desired of me that he might bring souls unto me, but thou desiredst that thou mightest speedily come unto me in my kingdom.
5 I say unto thee, Peter, this was a good desire; but my beloved has desired that he might do more, or a greater work yet among men than what he has before done.
6 Yea, he has undertaken a greater work; therefore I will make him as flaming fire and a ministering angel; he shall minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation who dwell on the earth.
7 And I will make thee to minister for him and for thy brother James; and unto you three I will give this power and the keys of this ministry until I come.
8 Verily I say unto you, ye shall both have according to your desires, for ye both joy in that which ye have desired.

D&C 50:26–27: **26** He that is ordained of God and sent forth, the same is appointed to be the greatest, notwithstanding he is the least and the servant of all.
27 Wherefore, he is possessor of all things; for all things are subject unto him, both in heaven and on the earth, the life and the light, the Spirit and the power, sent forth by the will of the Father through Jesus Christ, his Son.

D&C 63:20–21: **20** Nevertheless, he that endureth in faith and doeth my will, the same shall overcome, and shall receive an inheritance upon the earth when the day of transfiguration shall come;
21 When the earth shall be transfigured, even according to the pattern which was shown unto mine apostles upon the mount; of which account the fulness ye have not yet received.

D&C 107:49: **49** And he saw the Lord, and he walked with him, and was before his face continually; and he walked with God three hundred and sixty-five years, making him four hundred and thirty years old when he was translated.

D&C 110:13–16: **13** After this vision had closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us, and said:
14 Behold, the time has fully come, which was spoken of by the mouth of Malachi—testifying that he [Elijah] should be sent, before the great and dreadful day of the Lord come—
15 To turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the children to the fathers, lest the whole earth be smitten with a curse—
16 Therefore, the keys of this dispensation are committed into your hands; and by this ye may know that the great and dreadful day of the Lord is near, even at the doors.

Apocryphal And Early Christian Texts on Instantaneous Travel, Translation, & The Veil

As these texts are harder to access, the following passages from apocryphal and early Christian writings are generated summaries, so beware there may be errors therein:

TRANSLATION & ASCENSION (Apocryphal Accounts)

1 Enoch (Ethiopic Book of Enoch): Chapters 12–16, 70–71: Enoch is taken into the heavens by angels and shown visions. “He was taken up from among the children of men, and the earth could not conceal him.” Describes multiple heavens, angelic escorts, and instant travel.

2 Enoch (Slavonic Book of Enoch): Enoch is taken by angels through 10 heavens. His body is changed so he can dwell with God. “And the Lord said to Michael: Go and strip Enoch of his earthly garments, and anoint him with my sweet ointment…” This is a detailed translation account, paralleling the biblical Enoch and LDS Three Nephites.

Ascension of Isaiah: Describes Isaiah's journey through seven heavens, seeing Christ and angelic beings. "And I saw a glorious angel… and he took me and raised me on high…" Mentions travel by spiritual beings and Isaiah being "transformed" to survive the heavenly presence.

Apocalypse of Abraham: Abraham is taken by the angel Yahoel through the firmament and sees the throne of God. Uses symbolic fire and light as veils, and spiritual transportation by a divine guide.

THE VEIL BETWEEN REALMS

Gospel of Thomas (Sayings Gospel, Gnostic text): Saying 84: "When you see your likeness, you rejoice. But when you see your images that came into being before you... you will marvel." Gnostic concept of the veil of perception—the idea that divine reality is hidden behind material illusion.

Gospel of Philip: Refers to entering the Bridal Chamber, a symbolic place beyond the veil. "Truth did not come into the world naked, but in symbols and images. One will not receive the truth in any other way." Symbolism of the veil separating divine knowledge from mortal experience.

Shepherd of Hermas (early Christian writing, 2nd century): Describes visions of angelic beings, heavenly travel, and metaphorical walls and veils as symbols of spiritual progression.

ANGELIC TRANSPORTATION & VISIONS

Apocalypse of Peter (2nd century apocryphal text): Peter is taken by Jesus to see visions of heaven and hell. "And the Lord showed me..."

The Acts of Peter: Peter is able to appear and disappear from locations, possibly by angelic or spiritual means.

The Acts of Paul and Thecla: Thecla is protected from harm in miraculous ways; some versions describe her vanishing or being taken up.

EARLY CHRISTIAN WRITERS ON TRANSLATION & VEIL

Irenaeus – Against Heresies: Teaches that Enoch and Elijah were taken by God, but not into the full presence until Christ's resurrection. Implies a "holding place beyond the veil" for translated beings.

Origen – On First Principles: Discusses multiple levels of heaven, the "ascension of the soul", and spiritual perception being veiled by the body. Suggests that the righteous can have the veil lifted and see deeper truths.

Clement of Alexandria – Stromata: Speaks of the veil of the temple as representing our body, and knowledge of God as coming through initiation into deeper mysteries.

To read these sources, see:

- James H. Charlesworth's The Old Testament Pseudepigrapha (2 vols.)
- The Nag Hammadi Library (ed. James M. Robinson)
- The Apocryphal New Testament by M.R. James or J.K. Elliott
- Early Christian Writings (translated at earlychristianwritings.com)
- The Ante-Nicene Fathers (for Irenaeus, Origen, Clement, etc.)

Higher Blessings to Come: Scriptures

Doctrine and Covenants 84:19–22: 19 And this
greater priesthood administereth the gospel and holdeth the key of
the mysteries of the kingdom, even the key of the knowledge of God.
20 Therefore, in the ordinances thereof, the power of godliness is manifest.
21 And without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood,
the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh;
22 For without this no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and
live.
23 Now this Moses plainly taught to the children of Israel in the wilderness,

and sought diligently to sanctify his people that they might behold the face of God;
24 But they hardened their hearts and could not endure his presence; therefore, the Lord in his wrath, for his danger was kindled against them, swore that they should not enter into his rest while in the wilderness, which rest is the fulness of his glory.

D&C 107:18-19: 18 The power and authority of the higher, or Melchizedek Priesthood, is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the church—
19 To have the privilege of receiving the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, to have the heavens opened unto them, to commune with the general assembly and church of the Firstborn, and to enjoy the communion and presence of God the Father, and Jesus the mediator of the new covenant.

JST Genesis 14:29-32: 29 And it was delivered unto men by the calling of his own voice, according to his own will, unto as many as believed on his name.
30 For God having sworn unto Enoch and unto his seed with an oath by himself; that every one being ordained after this order and calling should have power, by faith, to break mountains, to divide the seas, to dry up waters, to turn them out of their course;
31 To put at defiance the armies of nations, to divide the earth, to break every band, to stand in the presence of God; to do all things according to his will, according to his command, subdue principalities and powers; and this by the will of the Son of God which was from before the foundation of the world.
32 And men having this faith, coming up unto this order of God, were translated and taken up into heaven.

Helaman 5: 21-49: 21 And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison;
22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.
23 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned
24 And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.
25 For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.
26 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto

you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.
27 And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall.
28 And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.
29 And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.
30 And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—
31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—
32 And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.
33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.
34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.
35 Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.
36 And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.
37 And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.
38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?
39 Now the man’s name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.
40 And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: Whatshall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?
41 And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice,

even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.
42 And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.
43 And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircledabout, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.
44 And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.
45 And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.
46 And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:
47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.
48 And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.
49 And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things;

2 Peter 1:10-11: 10 Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall:
11 For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

Jesus the Second Comforter: Scriptures & Quotes

D&C 101:37-38: **37** Therefore, care not for the body, neither the life of the body; but care for the soul, and for the life of the soul.
38 And **seek the face of the Lord always**, that in patience ye may possess your souls, and ye shall have eternal life.

D&C 67:10-13: **10** And again, verily I say unto you that it is your privilege, and a promise I give unto you that have been ordained unto this ministry,

that inasmuch as you strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, and humble yourselves before me, for ye are not sufficiently humble, the veil shall be rent and you shall see me and know that I am—not with the carnal neither natural mind, but with the spiritual.
11 For no man has seen God at any time in the flesh, except quickened by the Spirit of God.
12 Neither can any natural man abide the presence of God, neither after the carnal mind.
13 Ye are not able to abide the presence of God now, neither the ministering of angels; wherefore, continue in patience until ye are perfected.

Exodus 33:11: **11** And the Lord spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend. And he turned again into the camp: but his servant Joshua, the son of Nun, a young man, departed not out of the tabernacle.

JST Ex. 33:20: **20** And he said *unto Moses,* Thou canst not see my face *at this time, lest mine anger be kindled against thee also, and I destroy thee, and thy people;* for there shall no man *among them* see me *at this time,* and live, *for they are exceeding sinful. And no sinful man hath at any time, neither shall there be any sinful man at any time, that shall see my face and live.*

2 Nephi 4: 23: Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.
24 And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.
25 And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

3 Nephi 28:15: And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

JST Psalm 14:1-2: The fool hath said in his heart, There is no man that hath seen God. Because he showeth himself not unto us, therefore there is no God. Behold, they are corrupt; they have done abominable works, and none of them doeth good.

D&C 93:1: 1 Verily, thus saith the Lord: It shall come to pass that every soul who forsaketh his sins and cometh unto me, and calleth on my name, and obeyeth my voice, and keepeth my commandments, shall see my face and know that I am.

John 14:23: 23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.

D&C 67:10: 10 And again, verily I say unto you that it is your privilege, and a promise I give unto you that have been ordained unto this ministry, that inasmuch as you strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, and humble yourselves before me, for ye are not sufficiently humble, the veil shall be rent and you shall see me and know that I am – not with the carnal neither natural mind, but with the spiritual.

D&C 38:8: 8 But the day soon cometh that ye shall see me, and know that I am; for the veil of darkness shall soon be rent, and he that is not purified shall not abide the day.

D&C 88:68: 68 Therefore, sanctify yourselves that your minds become single to God, and the days will come that you shall see him; for he will unveil his face unto you, and it shall be in his own time, and in his own way, and according to his own will.

D&C 84:21-27: 21 And without the ordinances thereof, and the authority of the priesthood, the power of godliness is not manifest unto men in the flesh;
22 For without this no man can see the face of God, even the Father, and live.
23 Now this Moses plainly taught to the children of Israel in the wilderness, and sought diligently to sanctify his people that they might behold the face of God;
24 But they hardened their hearts and could not endure his presence; therefore, the Lord in his wrath, for his anger was kindled against them, swore that they should not enter into his rest while in the wilderness, which rest is the fulness of his glory.
25 Therefore, he took Moses out of their midst, and the
Holy Priesthood also;
26 And the lesser priesthood continued, which priesthood holdeth the key of the ministering of angels and the preparatory gospel;
27 Which gospel is the gospel of repentance and of baptism, and
the remission of sins, and the law of carnal commandments,

Joseph Smith said, "After a person has faith in Christ, repents of his sins, and is baptized for the remission of his sins and receives the Holy Ghost, (by the laying on of hands), which is the first Comforter, then let him continue to humble himself before God, hungering and thirsting after righteousness,

and living by every word of God . . . then it will be his privilege to receive the other Comforter, which the Lord hath promised the Saints. . . . Now what is this other Comforter? It is no more nor less than the Lord Jesus Christ Himself." (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith, 150–51).

Seek the Mysteries: Scriptures

Alma 12:10: And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

Alma 26:22: 22 Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal **things which never have been revealed**; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

2 Nephi 28:30: ... for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

2 Nephi 32:7: ... and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

D&C 6:7: 7 Seek not for riches but for wisdom, and behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you, and then shall you be made rich. Behold, he that hath eternal life is rich.

D&C 76:7: 7 And to them will I reveal all mysteries, yea, all the hidden mysteries of my kingdom from days of old, and for ages to come, will I make known unto them the good pleasure of my will concerning all things pertaining to my kingdom.

D&C 11:5-7: Therefore, if you will ask of me you shall receive; if you will knock it shall be opened unto you. Now, as you have asked, behold, I say

unto you, keep my commandments, and seek to bring forth and establish the cause of Zion. Seek not for riches but for wisdom; and, behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you , and then shall you be made rich. Behold, he that hath eternal life is rich.

D&C 8:11: Ask that you may know the mysteries of God, and that you may translate and receive knowledge from all those ancient records which have been hid up, that are sacred; and according to your faith shall it be done unto you.

D&C 42:61: If thou shalt ask, thou shalt receive revelation upon revelation, knowledge upon knowledge, that thou mayest know the mysteries and peaceable things-that which bringeth joy, that which bringeth life eternal.

Ether 4:13-16: Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief. Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief. Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you -yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel. And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people.

Matthew 13:11: 11 He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given

Ephesians 3:3: 3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery;

D&C 42:61: 61 If thou shalt ask, thou shalt receive revelation upon revelation, knowledge upon knowledge, that thou mayest know the mysteries and peaceable things—that which bringeth joy, that which bringeth life eternal.

Jacob 4:8: 8 Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

D&C 90:14: 14 And from time to time, as shall be manifested by the Comforter, receive revelations to unfold the mysteries of the kingdom;

D&C 8:10-11: 10 Remember that without faith you can do nothing; therefore ask in faith. Trifle not with these things; do not ask for that which you ought not.
11 Ask that you may know the mysteries of God… and according to your faith shall it be done unto you.

1 Nephi 10:19: 19 For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

1 Nephi 2:16: 16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

D&C 63:23: 23 But unto him that keepeth my commandments I will give the mysteries of my kingdom, and the same shall be in him a well of living water, springing up unto everlasting life.

Mark 4:11: 11 And he said unto them, Unto you it is given to know the mystery of the kingdom of God: but unto them that are without, all these things are done in parables:

1 Corinthians 2:7: 7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

D&C 107:19: 19 To have the privilege of receiving the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, to have the heavens opened unto them, to commune with the general assembly and church of the Firstborn, and to enjoy the communion and presence of God the Father, and Jesus the mediator of the new covenant.

Mosiah 2:9: 9 And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

D&C 84:19: 19 And this greater priesthood ministereth the gospel and holdeth the key of the mysteries of the kingdom, even the key of the knowledge of God.

Luke 8:10: 10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand.

Seek the Mysteries: Joseph Smith

“The Savior has the words of eternal life. Nothing else can profit us. There is no salvation in believing an evil report against our neighbor. I advise all to go on to perfection, and search deeper and deeper into the mysteries of Godliness. A man can do nothing for himself unless God direct him in the right way; and the priesthood is for that purpose.” (History of the Church Volume:6 Chapter:17 Paragraph:11) (Also cited in The Words of Joseph Smith, pg. 366)

"It has always been my province to dig up hidden mysteries, new things for my hearers-" (The Words of Joseph Smith, pg. 366)

"One of the grand fundamental principles of 'Mormonism' is to receive truth, let it come from whence it may" (TPJS, pg. 313)

“But there has been a great difficulty in getting anything into the heads of this generation. It has been like splitting hemlock knots with a corn-dodger for a wedge, and a pumpkin for a beetle. Even the Saints are slow to understand. I have tried for a number of years to get the minds of the Saints prepared to receive the things of God; but we frequently see some of them, after suffering all they have for the work of God, **will fly to pieces like glass as soon as anything comes that is contrary to their traditions**: they cannot stand the fire at all. How many will be able to abide a celestial law,

and go through and receive their exaltation, I am unable to say, as many are called, but few are chosen." [History of the Church Volume:6 Chapter:8 Paragraph:33-34 & The Words of Joseph Smith, pg. 319]

"If a man gets the fullness of God he has to get [it] in the same way that Jesus obtain[ed] it & that was by keeping all the ordinances of the house of the Lord. Men will say I will never forsake you but will stand by you at all times but the moment you teach them some of the mysteries of God that are retained in the heavens and are to be revealed to the children of men when they are prepared, They will be the first to stone you & put you to death" (The Words of Joseph Smith, pg. 213)

"The great thing for us to know is to comprehend what God did institute before the foundation of the World. Who knows it? ... Had I inspiration, revelation, and lungs to communicate what my soul has contemplated in times past, there is not a soul in this congregation but would go to their homes and shut their mouths in everlasting silence on religion till they had learned something. Why be so certain that you comprehend the things of God, when all things with you are so uncertain. You are welcome to all the knowledge and intelligence I can impart to you." (HC 5: 530, 531)

"This principle ought (in its proper place) to be taught, for God hath not revealed anything to Joseph, but what He will make known unto the Twelve, and even the least Saint may know all things as fast as he is able to bear them, for the day must come when no man need say to his neighbor, Know ye the Lord; for all shall know Him (who remain) from the least to the greatest. How is this to be done? It is to be done by this sealing power, and the other Comforter spoken of, which will be manifest by revelation." [History of the Church Volume:3 Chapter:25 Paragraph:45]

"God hath not revealed anything to Joseph [calling himself by name], but what He will make known unto the Twelve, and even the least Saint may know all things as fast as he is able to bear them," (HC 3:380)

"This principle ought (in its proper place) to be taught, for God hath not revealed anything to Joseph, but what He will make known unto the Twelve, and even the least Saint may know all things as fast as he is able to bear them, for the day must come when no man need say to his neighbor, Know ye the Lord; for all shall know Him (who remain) from the least to the greatest. How is this to be done? It is to be done by this sealing power, and the other Comforter spoken of, which will be manifest by revelation." [History of the Church Volume:3 Chapter:25 Paragraph:45]

"God hath not revealed anything to Joseph [calling himself by name], but what He will make known unto the Twelve, and even the least Saint may know all things as fast as he is able to bear them," (HC 3:380)

"If a man gets the fullness of God he has to get [it] in the same way that Jesus obtain[ed] it & that was by keeping all the ordinances of the house of the Lord. Men will say I will never forsake you but will stand by you at all times but the moment you teach them some of the mysteries of God that are retained in the heavens and are to be revealed to the children of men when they are prepared, They will be the first to stone you & put you to death" (The Words of Joseph Smith, pg. 213)

Recent Prophets repeat this message of spiritual progress, such as this statement from David O. McKay: “Somebody has said, `Show me a perfectly contented man and I will show you a useless one.' So there must be some other element with contentment, some other virtue. What is it? Progress. Contentment and progress contribute to peace. If we are no better tomorrow than we are today, we are not very useful... ... so we want to experience two things: contentment and progress--progress intellectually, progress physically, but above all, **progress spiritually**; and the cognizance that we grow contributes to peace. You cannot remain stationary.” (David O. McKay, Pathways to Happiness, pg. 292)

TOPIC: DOCTRINES OF THE FINAL STAGES: LOST TRIBES, 144,000, NEW JERUSALEM, SECOND COMING

Many Faithful Remain in the West

Many Saints will remain in the West. Brigham Young made it clear that not all will journey to Jackson County. Many members of the Church will remain behind and maintain their homes in the western mountains.

Brigham Young said, "Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. **Are we all going? O no! of course not**. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in **these mountains** than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our **hard earned homes** to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for additional information on the subject.)

The Prophesied Return to Missouri

President **Brigham Young** spoke of the time when the Lord will "purge the land…cut off the evil doer, and prepare a way for the return of my people to their inheritance," and added that "if our enemies do not cease their oppression upon this people, as sure as the Lord lives it will not be many days before we will occupy that land [of Zion] and there build up a Temple to the Lord." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 9:270) (See also Crowther Prophecy p.45)

As a counselor in the First Presidency, President **Joseph F. Smith** said, "**When God leads the people back to Jackson County**, how will he do it? Let me picture to you how **some** of us may be gathered and led to Jackson County. I think I see two or three hundred thousand people **wending their way across the great plain** enduring the nameless hardships of the journey, herding and guarding their cattle by day and by night, and defending themselves and little ones from foes on the right hand and on the left, as when they came here. They will find the **journey back to Jackson County will be as real as when they came out here**. Now, mark it. And though you may be led by the power of God "with a stretched out arm," it will not be more manifest than the leading the people out here to those that participate in it. They will think there are a **great many hardships** to endure in this manifestation of the power of God, and it will be left, **perhaps to their children to see the glory of their deliverance**, just as it is left for us to see the glory of our former deliverance from the hands of those that sought to destroy us. **This is one way to look at it.** It is certainly a practical view. Some might ask, what will become of the railroads? I fear that **the sifting**

process would be insufficient were we to travel by railroads. We are apt to overlook the manifestations of the power of God to us because we are participators in them, and regard them as commonplace events. But when it is written in history—as it will be written—it will be shown forth to future generations as **one of the most marvelous, unexampled and unprecedented accomplishments** that has ever been known to history." (JD, 24:156-57; italics added.)

Not everyone needs to return to Missouri. **Brigham Young** said, "Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. Are we all going? O no! of course not. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in these mountains than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our hard earned homes to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for related information.)

The Era of Christ in Zion, An Appearance Unknown to the World before the Coming in Glory to All – Quotes from Joseph & Brigham

Here are quotes about the initial stages of the millennium as being private:

McIntire citing **Joseph Smith**: "Joseph [Smith] said that the wicked will not be destroyed at the coming of Christ and also there will be wicked during the millennium. That Jesus will be a resident on the earth a thousand years with the Saints is not the case but will reign over the saints and come down and instruct as he did the 5 hundred brethren, [See 1 Corinthians 15:6] & those of the first resurrection will also reign with him over the saints."

(McIntire Minute Book; Mar. 16, 1842)

“Christ & the resurrected saints will reign over earth, but not dwell on the earth, visit it when they please or when necessary to govern it” (Joseph Smith Diary, 30 December 1842, Church Archives)

Joseph Smith said, “While in conversation at Judge Adams’ during the evening, I [Joseph Smith] said. Christ and the resurrected Saints will reign over the earth during the thousand years. They will not probably dwell upon the earth, but will visit it when they please, or when it is necessary to govern it.” (Teachings of the Prophet Smith, Section Five 1842-43 p.268)

Brigham Young said, “But will the nations know of it? They will not. And when the Lord reigns King of nations as he does King of Saints, the inhabitants of the earth will not distrust but that it is the power of some great one, that it is the plans of wise men brought into action. Thus they will be governed and controlled, and overruled, and led by the principles of the holy Priesthood, and they will never mistrust but that it is the doings of wise men at the head of a powerful nation, schooled in governmental affairs… When the Millennium is ushered in, no man or woman will know anything about it, only by the power of God. He will rule and reign, and His glory shall be in Zion, and the wicked will not know it is the hand of our God. The Saints will enjoy the light of His countenance, walk therein, and dwell in His presence." (Brigham Young; Millennial Star 16:38:594-595; October 3, 1852)

Joseph Smith said, “The coming of the Messiah among his people will be so natural that only those who see him will know that he has come, but he will come and give his laws unto Zion and minister unto his people. This will not be his coming in the clouds of Heaven to take vengeance on the wicked of the world." (Joseph Smith – White Horse Prophecy)



The 10 Tribes Come to Zion: Quotes from Pratt & Woodruff

Orson Pratt said, "Having spoken concerning the gathering of the ten tribes, I will refer again to their Prophets. "Their prophets shall hear his voice." Do not think that we are the only people who will have Prophets. God is determined to raise up Prophets among that people, but he will not bestow upon them all the fulness of the blessings of the Priesthood. The fulness will be reserved to be given to them after they come to Zion. But Prophets will be among them while in the north, and a portion of the Priesthood will be there; and John the Revelator will be there, teaching, instructing, and preparing them for this great work; for to him were given the keys for the gathering of Israel, at the time when he ate that little book while on the Isle of Patmos." (Orson Pratt, JD 18:25)

Wilford Woodruff said, "Again, here are the ten tribes of Israel, we know nothing about them only what the Lord has said by His Prophets. There are Prophets among them, and by and by they will come along, and they will smite the rocks, and the mountains of ice will flow down at their presence, and a highway will be cast up before them, and they will come to Zion, receive their endowments, and be crowned under the hands of the children of Ephraim, and there are persons before me in this assembly today, who will assist to give them their endowments. They will receive their blessings and endowments, from under the children of Ephraim, who are the firstfruits of the kingdom of God in this dispensation, and the men will have to be ordained and receive their Priesthood and endowments in the land of Zion, according to the revelations of God." (Wilford Woodruff, JD 4:232)

Orson Pratt said, "How long will they who come from the north countries tarry in the heights of Zion? Some time. They have got to raise wheat, cultivate the grape, wine and oil, raise flocks and herds, and their souls will have to become as a watered garden. They will dwell in Zion a good while, and during that time, there will be twelve thousand chosen out of each of these ten tribes, besides twelve thousand that will be chosen from Judah, Joseph, and the remaining tribes, one hundred and forty-four thousand in all. Chosen for what? To be sealed in their foreheads. For what purpose? So that the power of death and pestilence and plague that will go forth in those days sweeping over the nations of the earth will have no power over them. These parties who are sealed in their foreheads will go forth among all people, nations and tongues, and gather up and hunt out the house of Israel, wherever they are scattered, and bring as many as they possibly can into the

Church of the firstborn, preparatory to the great day of the coming of the Lord." (Orson Pratt, JD 18:25)

Earthquake Prepares Way for 10 Tribes to Return from North: Quotes from Joseph Smith, Orson Pratt & Scriptures

Joseph Smith: "And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ, that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north country." (Joseph Smith, TPJS, p. 17)

Orson Pratt: "To show that they [Lost Ten Tribes] come with power, they come on a highway cast up for them; the ice feels the power of God and flows down, making room for them; and the barren deserts of the north, wherever they may go and need water, will yield forth pools of living water to quench their thirst. As they come to sing in the height of Zion, the everlasting hills, this great Rocky Mountain range, extending from the arctic regions south to the central portions of America, will tremble beneath the power of God at the approach of that people." (Orson Pratt, JD 18:24)

Scriptures:

D&C 133:27, 31: "And an highway shall be cast up in the midst of the great deep. 31 And the boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence."

Revelation 6:12, 14: "12 And I beheld when he had opened the sixth seal, and, lo, there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood;… 14 And the heavens opened as a scroll is opened when it is rolled together; and every mountain, and island, was moved out of its place."

D&C 133:26, 28: "And they who are in the north countries shall come in

remembrance before the Lord; and their prophets shall hear his voice, and shall no longer stay themselves; and they shall smite the rocks, and the ice shall flow down at their presence…Their enemies shall become a prey unto them."

D&C 110:11: "After this vision closed, the heavens were again opened unto us; and Moses appeared before us, and committed unto us the keys of the gathering of Israel from the four parts of the earth, and the leading of the ten tribes from the land of the north."

Note: Why would this scripture have been given if the lost tribes had already come with the pilgrims? Surely a part of them was Ephraim with the pilgrims, but it looks like much is yet future!

Some of the Lost 10 Tribes Still Together in the North – Quotes



While it is obvious that many of the lost tribes are scattered through the world, certain revelations teach us that some of them are still together, in some unknown location. Consider the following.

Cf. D&C 133

Wilford Woodruff: "The evening was spent in conversing upon the subject of the Ten tribes in the North Country. … [A] portion of the North Country Containing the ten tribes may be separated from the Earth. O[rson] Hyde & others believed they would soon return." (Waiting for World's End [Extracts from The Diaries of Wilford Woodruff], p. 238.)

Bathsheba W. Smith: "I heard **Joseph Smith** preach baptism for the dead. … I heard him say, 'the Ten Tribes were not on this globe, but a portion of

this earth had cleaved off with them and went flying into space, and when the time comes when the "earth reels to and from like a drunken man and the stars from heaven fall," it would join on again.'" ("Recollections of the Prophet Joseph Smith," The Juvenile Instructor, 1 June 1892, vol. 27, p. 34.)

Orson Pratt: "The **Prophet Joseph [Smith]** once in my hearing advanced his opinion that the Ten Tribes were separated from the Earth; or a portion of the Earth was by a miracle broken off, and that the Ten Tribes were taken away with it, and that in the latter days it would be restored to the Earth or be let down in the Polar regions. Whether the Prophet founded his opinion upon revelation or whether it was a matter of mere speculation with him, I am not able to say." (Letter to John C. Hall, 13 Dec. 1875, Letter Box of Orson Pratt, LDS Archives.)

Wilford Woodruff: "We had social conversation in the evening. President **[Brigham] Young** said he heard **Joseph Smith** say that the Ten Tribes of Israel were on a portion of land separated from the Earth." (8 September 1867, Wilford Woodruff's Journal, edited by Scott Kenney [Midvale, Utah: 1983], vol. 6, p. 363); also Wilford Woodruff's Journal [Salt Lake City, Utah: Kraut's Pioneer Press], p. 166.)

Rudger Clawson: "[Franklin D. Richards] said that the ten tribes of Israel were separated from the earth—so **Joseph Smith** had said." (Diary of Rudger Clawson, book 10, p. 87, Western Americana, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, Utah.)

Daniel Allen: "I heard **Joseph the Prophet** say that he had seen John the Revelator, and had a long coversation with him, who told him that he, John, was their leader, Prophet, Priest and King, and said that he was preparing that people to return; and further said there is a mighty host of us. And Joseph further said that men might hunt for them, but they could not find them, for they were upon a portion of this planet that had been broken off, and which was taken away; and the sea rushed in between Europe and America, and that when that piece returns there would be a great shake; the sea would then move to the north, where it belonged in the morning of creation." ("Minutes of The Parowan, Utah School of the Prophets," entry 17 Aug. 1872, pp. 156–57, LDS Archives; punctuation revised.)

Martha Cragun Cox: "Coming in one day and seeing my geography on my lap, he [Jacob Hamblin] told that **the Prophet said** to him that at the North Pole is convex or cup-shaped with the deepest sea resting there. The planet that belonged to that part of the world would in time return to its place, strike the Earth at that part, completing the sphere. The result would be a 'reeling to and fro like a drunken man' by the Earth which will assume an

upright position before the Sun. The concussion caused by the Earth meeting its long dismembered portion will be a warmth that will cause the mountains to melt and flow down; and the seas change their positions. When this planet nears the Earth astronomers will say a new comet has appeared. In 1927 Prof. Jaager, a Danish astronomer, announced this same law that the Prophet had taught. B. H. Roberts confirmed the fact that the Prophet taught these facts. One of the North Sea voyagers reported later that the border sea was the deepest body of water on Earth." ("Biographical Record of Martha Cragun Cox," p. 104, LDS Archives.)

Charles L. Walker: "[11 Feb. 1881] At night went to Prayer Meeting. … Some remarks were made by Sister Green, stating that she heard Eliza Snow speak of the 9 and 1/2 lost tribes being on an orb, and would eventually come back to their former place, and we should know when they came by certain signs. … [6 Mar. 1881]—At night went to meeting. Brother Jacob Gates spoke in a very pleasing manner on a variety of subjects, showing … the power of God being manfiested in the return of the ten lost tribes of Israel, and of their coming to Zion to receive their blessings under the Hands of Ephraim. Said he heard **Joseph Smith** say, when he was at Bishop Partridge's house in Far West, Missouri, concering the ten lost tribes, 'They are hid from us by land and air.' Said Bishop Partridge, 'I guess they are by land and water,' in a doubting manner, as if Joseph did not know what he was talking about. 'Yes,' said Joseph, 'by land and air; they are hid from us in such a manner and at such an angle that the astronomers cannot get their telescopes to bear on them from this Earth.' He exhorted the Saints to live up to their great privileges and gain power with the heavens. [10 Mar. 1881]—Cold. At the Temple all day. At night paid Sister Eliza R. Snow a short visit, and had some conversation with her on the dividing of the Earth. She told me that she heard the Prophet Joseph say, that when the ten tribes were taken away, the Lord cut the Earth in two—Joseph striking his left hand in the center with the edge of his right, to illustrate the idea—and when they returned with the portion of this Earth that was taken away with them, the coming together of these two bodies or orbs would cause a shock and make the Earth 'real to and fro like a drunken man.' She also stated that he said the Earth was ninety times smaller than when first created or organized." ("Diary of Charles Lowell Walker," typescript copy, Special Collections, Harold B. Lee Library, BYU, Provo, Utah.)

"[Joseph Smith] will go forth toward the north, and by the power of his word shall the **deep begin to give way**: and the **ice melt** before the Sun. **By the keys of the kingdom shall he lead Israel into the land of Zion**, while the house of Jacob shouts in the dance and in the song." (A Patriarchal blessing given by Oliver Cowdery to the Prophet Joseph Smith at Kirtland,

September 22, 1835, reprinted in Collier, ed., Unpublished Revelations, 1979, 2nd edition, 1981, v. 1, p. 76.)

Note: Joseph's mission is still in progress. I believe the above prophecy will yet occur. Also note that Joseph called the gathering to the American Zion, for those in Europe etc. to come to Zion, and 3.5 years later he died.

Possibility of a Portion of Ten Tribes Not on This World: Joseph Smith, Brigham Young & Others Quoted

Wilford Woodruff said, "**President Young said he heard Joseph Smith** say that the Ten Tribes of Israel were on a Portion of Land **separated from this Earth**." (Prophet Wilford Woodruff, Wilford Woodruff's Journal, September 8, 1867, reprinted in Susan Staker, ed., Waiting for World's End, The Diaries of Wilford Woodruff, 1993, p. 291)

Wilford Woodruff said, "The evening was spent in conversing upon the subject of the Ten tribes in the North Country…. [A] potion of the North Country Containing the ten tribes may be **separated from the Earth**. O[rson] Hyde & others believed they would soon return." (Prophet Wilford Woodruff, in Susan Staker, ed., Waiting for World's End, The Diaries of Wilford Woodruff, p. 238)

Bathsheba W. Smith said, "I heard **Joseph Smith** preach baptism for the dead…. I heard him say, 'the Ten Tribes were n**ot on this globe, but a portion of this earth had cleaved off with them** and went flying **into space**, and when the time comes when the "earth reels to and from like a drunken man and the stars from heaven fall," it **would join on again**.'" (Bathsheba W. Smith, "Recollections of the Prophet Joseph Smith, The Juvenile Instructor, June 1, 1892, v. 27, p. 34)

Orson Pratt said, "The **Prophet Joseph [Smith]** once in my hearing advanced his opinion that the Ten Tribes were **separated from the Earth**; or a portion of the Earth was by a miracle **broken off**, and that the **Ten Tribes were taken away with it**, and that in the latter days it would be **restored** to the Earth or be **let down in the Polar regions**. Whether the Prophet founded his opinion upon revelation or whether it was a matter of mere speculation with him, I am not able to say." (Orson Pratt, Letter Box of

Orson Pratt, LDS Church Historian's Office, letter to John C. Hall, December 13, 1875; see Abanes, One Nation Under Gods, p. 529, footnote 101)

Robert W. Smith said, "**Joseph Smith** supposedly told fellow member **Benjamin Brown** the ten tribes were **taken from off the earth** and currently **resided on a "twinkler"** that can be seen in the **proximity of the Polar Star**. According to **Homer M. Brown**, the grandson of Benjamin Brown: The prophet turned to **Section 133** and read, commencing at the 26th verse, and throughout the 34th verse. He said, after reading the 31st verse, "Now let me ask you **what would cause the Everlasting Hills to tremble with more violence than the coming together of the two planets.** And the **place whereon they reside will return to this Earth**." "Now" he said, "scientists will tell you that it is not scientific: that two planets coming together would be disastrous to both, but, when two planets or other objects are traveling in the same direction and one of them with a little greater velocity than the other, it would not be disastrous, because the one traveling faster would overtake the other, and now, what would cause the mountains of ice to melt quicker than the heat caused by the traction of the two planets coming together?" And then he asked the question: "Did you ever see a **meteor falling that was not red hot? So that would cause the mountains of ice to melt.** And relative to the Great Highway which should be cast up when the planet returns to its place in the great Northern Waters, it **will form a highway and waters will recede** and roll back. He continued, "Now as to their coming back from the **Northern waters; they will return from the north because their planet will return to the place from when it was taken**." (Robert W. Smith, "Scriptural and Secular Prophecies Pertaining to the Last days," Pyramid Press, Salt Lake City, Utah 1948, p.211-216, as recorded in "..As a Thief in the Night.." Roger K. Young, 1999, Celestial Publications)

Parley P. Pratt said, "The **stars which will fall to the earth, are fragments, which have been broken off from time to time…some with the ten tribes…These all must be restored** again at the "times of restitution of all things." **This will restore the ten tribes** of Israel…" (Parley P. Pratt, Millennial Star, Vol.1:258, February 1841)

Wilford Woodruff said, "The leaders upon their return from Provo made a visit to Logan. Here, **President Young** is quoted as saying that the **ten tribes of Israel are on a portion of the earth--a portion separated from the main land**." (Matthias F. Cowley, "Wilford Woodruff," BookCraft, Salt Lake City, Utah. 1964, p.448)

Eliza Snow's hymn:

1 Thou, Earth, wast once a glorious sphere
Of noble magnitude
And didst with majesty appear
Among the worlds of God.

2 Thy dimensions have been torn
Asunder, piece by piece;
And each dismembered fragment borne
Abroad to distant space.

3 When Enoch could no longer stay,
Amid corruption here;
Part of thyself was borne away,
To form another sphere.

4 That portion where his city stood,
He gained by right approved;
And nearer to the throne of God
His planet upward moved.

4 And when the Lord saw fit to hide
The ten lost tribes away;
Thou, Earth, was severed to provide
The orb on which they stay.

5 And thus from time to time thy size
Has been diminished till,
Thou seemest the law of sacrifice
Created to fulfil.

6 The curse of God on man was placed;
That curse thou didst partake,
And thou hast been by turns disgraced
And honored for his sake.

7 The vilest wretches hell will claim,
Now breathe thy atmosphere;
The noblest spirits heaven can name,
Have been embodied here.

8 Lord Jesus Christ, thy surface graced;
He fell a sacrifice;

And now within thy cold embrace
Thy martyred Joseph lies.

9 When Satan's hosts are overcome,
The martyred princely race
Will claim thee, their celestial home -
Their royal dwelling-place.

10 A “Restitution” yet must come
That will to thee restore,
By that grand law of worlds thy sum
Of matter here-to-fore.

11 And thou, O Earth! will leave thy track
Thou hast been doomed to trace -
The Gods with shouts will bring thee back
To fill thy native place.

(Franklin D. Richards, “LDS Hymns: Sacred Hymns & Spiritual Songs for the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.” Deseret News Company of Salt Lake City, UT.; Also known as "An Address to Earth" Eliza R. Snow, Millennial Star 13:272, September 1852; Sacred Hymns and Spiritual Songs of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints, 1891 ed, p. 322. Accessible at https://www.hymnwiki.org/Thou_Earth and https://erslexicon.wordpress.com/poems-36-40/#eight and https://hymnary.org/text/thou_earth_wast_once_a_glorious_sphere)

Parley P. Pratt said, “The stars which will fall to the earth, are **fragments, which have been broken off** from the earth from time to time, in the mighty convulsions of nature. **Some in the days of Enoch, some perhaps in the days of Peleg, some with the ten tribes and some at the crucifixion** of the Messiah. These all **must be restored again** at the ‘times of restitution of ALL THINGS.” . . . When these fragments, (some of which are vastly larger than the present earth) are brought back and joined to this earth, . . . The **earth will be many times larger** than it is now.” (Parley P. Pratt, “Questions by Elder Joseph Fielding, and Answers by the Editor,” Millennial Star 1 (February 1841): 258.)

Possibility of a Portion of Lost Tribes in Hollow Caverns: Scriptures, Prophet Quotations & Apocrypha

Whether this is these caverns and people in them exist I do not know, **nor is it that important**, but here I'll at least show that a case can be made for it being so, so that we **shouldn't be too hostile against those who believe** these things:

SCRIPTURES:

D&C 133: 23-33: **23** He shall command **the great deep**, and it **shall be driven back into the north countries**, and the islands shall become one land;
24 And the land of Jerusalem and the land of Zion shall be turned back into their own place, and the earth shall be like as it was in the days before it was divided.
25 And the Lord, even the Savior, shall stand in the midst of his people, and shall reign over all flesh.
26 And **they who are in the north countries** shall come in remembrance before the Lord; and **their prophets** shall hear his voice, and shall **no longer stay themselves**; and they shall smite the rocks, and the **ice shall flow down at their presence.**
27 And an **highway shall be cast up** in the midst of the great deep.
28 Their enemies shall become a prey unto them,
29 And in the barren deserts there shall come forth pools of living water; and the parched ground shall no longer be a thirsty land.
30 And they shall bring forth their rich treasures unto the children of Ephraim, my servants.
31 And the **boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence**.
32 And there shall they fall down and be crowned with glory, even in Zion, by the hands of the servants of the Lord, even the children of Ephraim.
33 And they shall be filled with songs of everlasting joy.

34 Behold, this is the blessing of the everlasting God upon the tribes of Israel, and the richer blessing upon the head of Ephraim and his fellows.

D&C 88:79: **79** Of things both in heaven and in the earth, and **under the earth**; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms-

D&C 88:104: **104** And this shall be the sound of his trump, saying **to all people**, both in heaven and in earth, and **that are under the earth**—for every ear shall hear it, and every knee shall bow, and every tongue shall confess, while they hear the sound of the trump, saying: Fear God, and give glory to him who sitteth upon the throne, forever and ever; for the hour of his judgment is come.

2 Ne. 29:7: **7** Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

2 Ne. 29:12: **12** For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the **other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away**, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

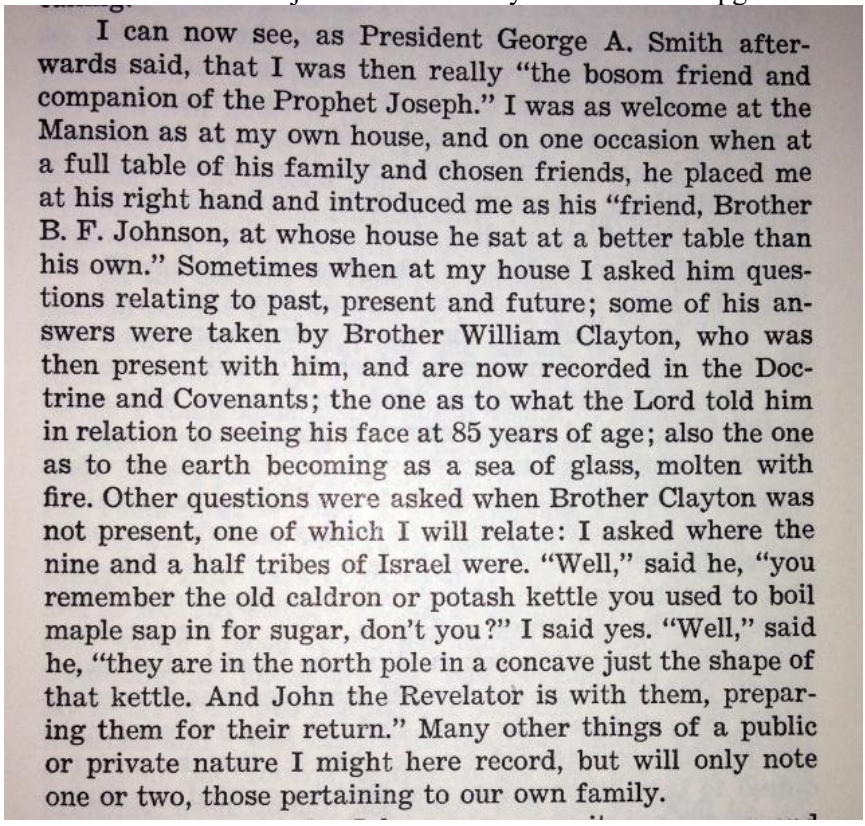
D&C 110:11: "...the keys of the gathering of Israel from the four parts of the earth, and the leading of the ten tribes from the land of the north."

QUOTATIONS OF THE LATTER-DAY SAINTS:

Benjamin Johnson said, "I was then really 'the bosom friend and companion of the **Prophet Joseph**.' …Sometimes when at my house I asked him questions relating to the past, present and future; … one of which I will relate: I asked where the nine and a half tribes of Israel were.

‘Well,’ **said he**, ‘you remember the old caldron or potash kettle you used to boil maple sap in for sugar, don’t you?’ I said yes. ‘Well,’ said he, ‘they are in the north pole in a concave just the shape of that kettle. And John the Revelator is with them, preparing them for their return.” (Benjamin Johnson, My Life’s Review, 1947, p. 93)

More details from the Benjamin Johnson “My Life’s Review” pg. 93:



I can now see, as President George A. Smith afterwards said, that I was then really "the bosom friend and companion of the Prophet Joseph." I was as welcome at the Mansion as at my own house, and on one occasion when at a full table of his family and chosen friends, he placed me at his right hand and introduced me as his "friend, Brother B. F. Johnson, at whose house he sat at a better table than his own." Sometimes when at my house I asked him questions relating to past, present and future; some of his answers were taken by Brother William Clayton, who was then present with him, and are now recorded in the Doctrine and Covenants; the one as to what the Lord told him in relation to seeing his face at 85 years of age; also the one as to the earth becoming as a sea of glass, molten with fire. Other questions were asked when Brother Clayton was not present, one of which I will relate: I asked where the nine and a half tribes of Israel were. "Well," said he, "you remember the old caldron or potash kettle you used to boil maple sap in for sugar, don't you?" I said yes. "Well," said he, "they are in the north pole in a concave just the shape of that kettle. And John the Revelator is with them, preparing them for their return." Many other things of a public or private nature I might here record, but will only note one or two, those pertaining to our own family.

Oliver B. Huntington said, “I have **heard Joseph say** that ‘John was among the Ten Tribes beyond the North Pole.” (Oliver B. Huntington Journal, under January 13, 1881; see Abanes, One Nation Under Gods, p. 528, footnote 100)

W.W. Phelps said [The North Pole is] “containing thousands of millions of Israelites.” (W.W. Phelps, “Letter No. 11,” Latter-day Saints’ Messenger & Advocate, October 1835, v. 2, no. 1, p. 194)

Here is a more complete version of the above statement:

"The parts of the globe that are known probably contain 700 millions of inhabitants, and those parts which are **unknown may be supposed to contain more than four times as many more**, making an estimated total of about three thousand, five hundred and eighty millions of souls: Let no man marvel at this statement, because **there may be a continent at the north pole, of more than 1300 square miles, containing thousands of millions of Israelites, who, after a high way is cast up in the great deep, may come to Zion, singing songs of everlasting joy.** The Lord must bring to pass the words of Isaiah, which say to the NORTH, "Give up; and to the South; keep not back: **bring my sons from far**, and **my daughters from the ends of the earth**." From the north and south END, I presume, as no one has ever pretended, that there was an end to the globe any where else." (WW Phelps, Latter Day Saints' Messenger and Advocate (Kirtland, Ohio) 2, no. 1 (October 1835) : 193-95. (Letter from W. W. Phelps to Oliver Cowdery, commenting on the American Indians and their connection to the Book of Mormon.);
https://contentdm.lib.byu.edu/digital/collection/BOMP/id/1041/

PASSAGES FROM THE APOCRYPHA:

2 Esdras 13: "Those are the tribes which were carried away captives out of their own land in the time of Oseas (Hosea) the king, whom Shalmanezer, the king of the Assyrians, took captive, and crossed them beyond the river; so were they brought into another land. But they took counsel to themselves, that they would leave the multitude of the heathen, and go forth into a **further country <u>where never man dwelt</u>, that they there might keep their statutes**, which they never kept in their own land. And they **entered in at the narrow passage of the river Euphrates. For the Most High then showed them signs, and stayed the springs of the flood till they were passed over. For through the country there was a great journey, even of a year and a half**, and the same region is called **<u>Arsareth</u>**. Then dwelt they there until the latter time, and **when they come forth again, the Most High shall hold still the springs of the river again, that they may go through**." (2 Esdras 13, The Apocrypha)

Book of Enoch 76:6-7: “Seven rivers I beheld upon Earth, greater than all rivers, one of which takes its course from the west; into a great sea its water flows. Two come from the north to the sea, their waters flowing into the Erythraean sea, on the east, And with respect to the remaining four, **they take their course in the cavity of the North**, two to their sea, the Erythraean sea, and two are poured into a great sea, where also it is said there is a desert.” (Chapter 76 – The Book of Enoch (book-ofenoch.com))

Zion & City of Enoch to Unite: Moses & John Taylor



Moses: “...and righteousness and truth will I cause to sweep the earth as with a flood, to gather out mine elect from the four quarters of the earth, unto a place which I shall prepare, an Holy City, that my people may gird up their loins, and be looking forth for the time of my coming; for there shall be my tabernacle, and it shall be called Zion, a New Jerusalem. And the Lord said unto Enoch: Then shalt thou and all thy city meet them there, and we will receive them into our bosom, and they shall see us; and we will fall upon their necks, and they shall fall upon our necks, and we will kiss each other; And there shall be mine abode, and it shall be Zion, which shall come forth out of all the creations which I have made; and for the space of a thousand years the earth shall rest.” (Moses 7:62-64)

John Taylor: “The architectural designs of those splendid edifices, cities, walls, gardens, bowers, streets, &c., will be under the direction of the Lord, who will control and manage all these matters; and the people, from the President down, will all be under the guidance and direction of the Lord in all the pursuits of human life, until eventually they will be enabled to **erect**

cities that will be fit to be caught up—that when Zion descends from above, **Zion will also ascend** from beneath, and be prepared to associate with those from above. The people will be so perfected and purified, ennobled, exalted, and dignified in their feelings and so truly humble and most worthy, virtuous and intelligent that they will be fit, when caught up, to associate with that Zion that shall come down from God out of heaven." (John Taylor, JOD 10:147)

Missionaries to Gather Israel to the New Jerusalem: Orson Pratt

Orson Pratt JD 17:302 First, a remnant will be converted; second, Zion will be redeemed, and all among the Gentiles who believe will assist this remnant of Jacob in building the New Jerusalem; third, **a vast number of missionaries will be sent throughout the length and breadth of this great continent, to gather all the dispersed of his people in unto the New Jerusalem**; fourth, the power of heaven will be made manifest in the midst of this people, and the Lord also will be in their midst, in the character of a shepherd, and **he will lead Joseph as a flock, and he will instruct and counsel them personally as he did their ancient fathers in the days of their righteousness.**

Orson Pratt JD 17:301 What I wish to call your special attention to now, so far as these sayings are concerned, is this—the Latter-day Saints in these mountains never can have the privilege of going back to **Jackson County** and building that city which is to be called the New Jerusalem, upon the spot that was appointed by revelation through the Prophet Joseph, **until quite a large portion of the remnants of Joseph go back with us.** Now then, here is a work for us, and we have no need to pray the Father to return us to Jackson County until that work is done.

Orson Pratt JD 17:301 Now, a great many, without reading these things, have flattered themselves that we are the ones who are going to do all this work. It is not so; **we have got to be helpers, we have got to be those who cooperate with the remnants of Joseph in accomplishing this great work**; for the Lord will have respect unto them, because they are of the blood of Israel, and the promises of their fathers extend to them, and they will have the privilege of building that city, according to the pattern that the Lord shall give. Do not misunderstand me, do not think that all the Lamanite tribes are going to be converted and receive this great degree of education and civilization before we can **return to Jackson County**. Do not think this

for a moment, it will only be a remnant**;** for **when we have laid the foundation of that city and have built a portion of it, and have built a Temple therein, there is another work which we have got to do in connection with these remnants of Jacob whom we shall assist in building the city.** What is it? We have got to be **sent forth as missionaries to all parts of this American continent.** Not to the Gentiles, for their times will be fulfilled; but we must go to all those tribes that roam through the cold regions of the north—British America, to all the tribes that dwell in the Territories of the United States, also to all those who are scattered through Mexico, and Central and South America, and the object of our going will be to declare the principles of the Gospel unto them, and bring them to a knowledge of the truth.

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 1: A Remnant of Jacob: Scriptures

Ether 13:6: **6** And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

3 Nephi 21:22–23: **22** But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;
23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 20:21–22: **21** And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.
22 And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

Ether 13:6–8: **6** And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.
7 For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.
8 Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

Micah 5:8: 8 ¶ And the remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles in the midst of many people as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep: who, if he go through, both treadeth down, and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

D&C 57:1–2: **1** Hearken, O ye elders of my church, saith the Lord your God, who have assembled yourselves together, according to my commandments, in this land, which is the land of Missouri, which is the land which I have appointed and consecrated for the gathering of the saints.
2 Wherefore, this is the land of promise, and the place for the city of Zion.

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 2: Scattered Israel from All the Americas: Scriptures

3 Nephi 21:22–24: 22 But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;
23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

24 And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

3 Nephi 20:25, 29–34: **25** And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.
29 And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.
30 And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;
31 And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.
32 Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.
33 Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.
34 Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

D&C 133:8–13: **8** Send forth the elders of my church unto the nations which are afar off; unto the islands of the sea; send forth unto foreign lands; call upon all nations, first upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews.
9 And behold, and lo, this shall be their cry, and the voice of the Lord unto all people: Go ye forth unto the land of Zion, that the borders of my people may be enlarged, and that her stakes may be strengthened, and that Zion may go forth unto the regions round about.
10 Yea, let the cry go forth among all people: Awake and arise and go forth to meet the Bridegroom; behold and lo, the Bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord.
11 Watch, therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour.
12 Let them, therefore, who are among the Gentiles flee unto Zion.

13 And let them who be of Judah flee unto Jerusalem, unto the mountains of the Lord's house.

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 3: The Lost Ten Tribes: Scriptures

3 Nephi 21:26–29: **26** And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.
27 Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.
28 Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.
29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

D&C 133:26–34: **26** And they who are in the north countries shall come in remembrance before the Lord; and their prophets shall hear his voice, and shall no longer stay themselves; and they shall smite the rocks, and the ice shall flow down at their presence.
27 And an highway shall be cast up in the midst of the great deep.
28 Their enemies shall become a prey unto them,
29 And in the barren deserts there shall come forth pools of living water; and the parched ground shall no longer be a thirsty land.
30 And they shall bring forth their rich treasures unto the children of Ephraim, my servants.
31 And the boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence.
32 And there shall they fall down and be crowned with glory, even in Zion, by the hands of the servants of the Lord, even the children of Ephraim.

33 And they shall be filled with songs of everlasting joy.
34 Behold, this is the blessing of the everlasting God upon the tribes of Israel, and the richer blessing upon the head of Ephraim and his fellows.

Jeremiah 31:8–9: **8** Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the coasts of the earth, *and* with them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and her that travaileth with child together: a great company shall return thither.
9 They shall come with weeping, and with supplications will I lead them: I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters in a straight way, wherein they shall not stumble: for I am a father to Israel,
and Ephraim *is* my firstborn.

Going to New Jerusalem: Group 4: All Nations Gathered: Scriptures

3 Nephi 21:27–28: **27** Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.
28 Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.
29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

Isaiah 11:12: 12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

D&C 45:66–71: **66** And it shall be called the New Jerusalem, a land of peace, a city of refuge, a place of safety for the saints of the Most High God;
67 And the glory of the Lord shall be there, and the terror of the Lord also shall be there, insomuch that the wicked will not come unto it, and it shall be called Zion.

68 And it shall come to pass among the wicked, that every man that will not take his sword against his neighbor must needs flee unto Zion for safety.
69 And there shall be gathered unto it out of every nation under heaven; and it shall be the only people that shall not be at war one with another.
70 And it shall be said among the wicked: Let us not go up to battle against Zion, for the inhabitants of Zion are terrible; wherefore we cannot stand.
71 And it shall come to pass that the righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, and shall come to Zion, singing with songs of everlasting joy.

D&C 133:7–15: **7** Yea, verily I say unto you again, the time has come when the voice of the Lord is unto you: Go ye out of Babylon; gather ye out from among the nations, from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.
8 Send forth the elders of my church unto the nations which are afar off; unto the islands of the sea; send forth unto foreign lands; call upon all nations, first upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews.
9 And behold, and lo, this shall be their cry, and the voice of the Lord unto all people: Go ye forth unto the land of Zion, that the borders of my people may be enlarged, and that her stakes may be strengthened, and that Zion may go forth unto the regions round about.
10 Yea, let the cry go forth among all people: Awake and arise and go forth to meet the Bridegroom; behold and lo, the Bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord.
11 Watch, therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour.
12 Let them, therefore, who are among the Gentiles flee unto Zion.
13 And let them who be of Judah flee unto Jerusalem, unto the mountains of the Lord's house.
14 Go ye out from among the nations, even from Babylon, from the midst of wickedness, which is spiritual Babylon.
15 But verily, thus saith the Lord, let not your flight be in haste, but let all things be prepared before you; and he that goeth, let him not look back lest sudden destruction shall come upon him.

Isaiah 2:2–3: **2** And it shall come to pass in the last days, *that* the mountain of the LORD's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

The 144,000: Quotes

Note: Don't get caught up in whether you're a part of this group; just do good and leave all this to God. For all intents and purposes, anyone preaching the gospel is part of this group. And God's blessings are for all the faithful, whether we are in such a group or not.

Note: The 144k are not 19yr. old virgins. It means fidelity, which is very compatible with marriage. The Latter-day Saints are the church that requires marriage. Virgin is a mistranslation; it should say fidelity. Institute manuals and Hebrew scholars talk about this.

Here are some teachings about these doctrines:

Joseph Smith said, "I am going on in my progress for eternal life. It is not only necessary that you should be baptized for your dead, but you will have to go through all the ordinances for them, the same as you have gone through to save yourselves. There will be 144,000 saviors on Mount Zion, and with them an innumerable host that no man can number. Oh! I beseech you to go forward, go forward and make your calling and your election sure; and if any man preach any other Gospel than that which I have preached, he shall be cursed; and some of you who now hear me shall see it, and know that I testify the truth concerning them." (Joseph Smith, Journal of Discourses, vol. 6, pg. 365))

Orson F. Whitney said, "The waters of life are free; come and partake of them, without money and without price! If you will not partake of them, how can you blame anyone but yourself if you die of thirst in the desert? If you put out the light by persecuting the Saints of God, how can you blame anybody but yourself if you are left in darkness? Could the ancients blame God for taking His Church from the earth, when they took every pains to exterminate it? They destroyed the body of the Church, and the spirit

departed, just as naturally as when the body of a man is killed; his spirit has no longer any business upon the earth. It returns to God who gave it, to come again at a more auspicious time, with the Son of God in clouds of glory, provided it be one of the 144,000 faithful ones who follow the Lamb whithersoever He goeth." (Orson F. Whitney, Journal of Discourses, vol. 26, pg. 268)

Ensign: "Having been shown Satan's power on earth, John is now shown the power that will overthrow it. He sees the Lamb on Mount Zion with 144,000 special ministers of the gospel. (Rev. 14:1–5.)… 144,000 Sealed (Rev. 7:1–8) A scene shows that angels are held back from sending further judgment until 144,000 high priests can be "sealed" and called to "administer the everlasting gospel." (See D&C 77:9–11.)" (Ensign, 1983 "Book of Revelation Overview"; see https://www.lds.org/ensign/1983/10/book-of-revelation-overview?lang=eng)

Orson Pratt: "How long will they who come from the north countries tarry in the heights of Zion? Sometime. They have got to raise wheat, cultivate the grape, wine and oil, raise flocks and herds, and their souls will have to become as a watered garden. They will dwell in Zion a good while, and during that time, there will be twelve thousand chosen out of each of these ten tribes, besides twelve thousand that will be chosen from Judah, Joseph, and the remaining tribes, one hundred and forty-four thousand in all. Chosen for what? To be sealed in their foreheads. For what purpose? So that the power of death and pestilence and plague that will go forth in those days sweeping over the nations of the earth will have no power over them. These parties who are sealed in their foreheads will go forth among all people, nations and tongues, and gather up and hunt out the house of Israel, wherever they are scattered, and bring as many as they possibly can into the Church of the first-born, preparatory to the great day of the coming of the Lord. One hundred and forty-four thousand missionaries! Quite a host. All this has got to take place. There are persons in this congregation who will be in the midst of Zion, when the ten tribes come to Zion from the north countries, and will assist in bestowing the blessings promised by the Almighty upon the heads of the tribes of Israel. There are servants of God in the midst of this congregation who will lay their hands upon many of each of these twelve thousand, chosen out of the ten tribes, and set them apart as missionaries to visit the nations of the earth and hunt up the remnants of the seed of Jacob." (Orson Pratt, Journal of Discourses, 18:25)

Gerald N. Lund said, "The Prophet (Joseph Smith) clearly indicates that the twelve thousand sealed from each of the twelve tribes is not just a symbolic representation of the forces of righteousness, as some scholars maintain. They are a great missionary force of the sixth seal (see D&C

77:10). Joseph Smith shows us that they are ordained high priests chosen from among every nation to carry forth the gospel and bring as many as will come to the true Church (see D&C 77:11). (In another revelation the Prophet indicated that these 144,000 would also stand on Mt. Zion with the Savior. See D&C 133:18 and compare with Revelation 14:1–5.) The Prophet also said, shortly before his death, "I attended prayer-meeting with the quorum in the assembly room, and made some remarks respecting the hundred and forty-four thousand mentioned by John the Revelator, showing that the selection of persons to form that number had already commenced." [HC, J SMITH 6:196.] This statement would seem to indicate that this great body of missionaries may be composed of mortals and immortals together." (BYU Religious Studies Center: Insights from the JST into the Book of Revelation By Gerald N. Lund; https://rsc.byu.edu/archived/joseph-smith-translation-restoration-plain-and-precious-things/13-insights-jst-book)

The D&C Student Manual says, "D&C 77:9. What Is the Significance of the Angel from the East Sealing the Servants of God? The four angels who are given power over the earth are kept from sending forth desolations upon the earth until God's servants are sealed in their foreheads. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that this sealing "signifies sealing the blessing upon their heads, meaning the everlasting covenant, thereby making their calling and election sure" (Teachings, p. 321). Elder Orson Pratt gave this additional explanation: "When the Temple is built [in the New Jerusalem] the sons of the two Priesthoods [Melchizedek and Aaronic] … will enter into that Temple … and all of them who are pure in heart will behold the face of the Lord and that too before he comes in his glory in the clouds of heaven, for he will suddenly come to his Temple, and he will purify the sons of Moses and of Aaron, until they shall be prepared to offer in that Temple an offering that shall be acceptable in the sight of the Lord. In doing this, he will purify not only the minds of the Priesthood in that Temple, but he will purify their bodies until they shall be quickened, and renewed and strengthened, and they will be partially changed, not toimmortality, but changed in part that they can be filled with the power of God, and they can stand in the presence of Jesus, and behold his face in the midst of that Temple. This will prepare them for further ministrations among the nations of the earth, it will prepare them to go forth in the days of tribulation and vengeance upon the nations of the wicked, when God will smite them with pestilence, plague and earthquake, such as former generations never knew. Then the servants of God will need to be armed with the power of God, they will need to have that sealing blessing pronounced upon their foreheads that they can stand forth in the midst of these desolations and plagues and not be overcome by them. When John the Revelator describes this scene he says he saw four angels sent forth, ready to hold the four winds that should blow from the four quarters of heaven. Another angel ascended from the east and

cried to the four angels, and said, ‘Smite not the earth now, but wait a little while.’ ‘How long?’ ‘Until the servants of our God are sealed in their foreheads.’ What for? To prepare them to stand forth in the midst of these desolations and plagues, and not be overcome. When they are prepared, when they have received a renewal of their bodies in the Lord’s temple, and have been filled with the Holy Ghost and purified as gold and silver in a furnace of fire, then they will be prepared to stand before the nations of the earth and preach glad tidings of salvation in the midst of judgments that are to come like a whirlwind upon the wicked.” (In Journal of Discourses, 15:365–66.) (Section 77 Questions and Answers on the Book of Revelation, Doctrine and Covenants Student Manual, (2002), 167–171; https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrine-and-covenants-student-manual/section-69-80/section-77-questions-and-answers-on-the-book-of-revelation?lang=eng)

The D&C Student Manual says, “D&C 77:11. Who Are the 144,000? “Before the Lord shall come … there is to be a great work among the nations. … The ten tribes will have to come forth and come to this land, to be crowned with glory in the midst of Zion by the hands of the servants of God, even the Children of Ephraim; and twelve thousand High Priests will be elected from each of these ten tribes, as well as from the scattered tribes, and sealed in their foreheads, and will be ordained and receive power to gather out of all nations, kindreds, tongues and people as many as will come unto the general assemblage of the Church of the first-born.” (Orson Pratt, in Journal of Discourses, 16:325.)” (Section 77 Questions and Answers on the Book of Revelation, quoted in the Doctrine and Covenants Student Manual, (2002), 167–171; https://www.lds.org/manual/doctrine-and-covenants-student-manual/section-69-80/section-77-questions-and-answers-on-the-book-of-revelation?lang=eng)

Bruce R. McConkie said, “John here sees 144,000 of these kings and priests, 12,000 from each tribe, converted, baptized, endowed, married for eternity, and finally sealed up unto eternal life, having their calling and election made sure.” (Bruce R. McConkie, Quorum of the Seventy, Doctrinal New Testament Commentary, 3:492)

Joseph Smith to Return: Quotes

Cautionary note: There are some strange groups that excessively focus on Joseph Smith’s return and somehow wield this idea as a way to claim that

the church isn't true and you need to go join their group. We've seen this type of thinking over and over, and its always bogus. Remember that direction comes from church leadership and beware offshoot groups. That said, enjoy the following teachings on this fascinating element of future prophecy.

Joseph Smith said, "Those who are your friends are my friends, and I promise you when I come again, I will lead you forth, so that where I am you shall be with me." (Joseph Smith)

Days before his martyrdom, Joseph Smith said to his Nauvoo legion "I promise you **when I come again I shall lead you** forth so that where I am you shall be also." He also said just before his martyrdom, "Don't be sad, don't be cast down, **I will come back** again…as soon as I can" (autobiography of Wandle Mace)

Brigham Young said, "**Joseph, Hyrum, Father Smith, and many others will be there [during the Millennium] to dictate and preside. Joseph will stand at the head of this dispensation and hold the keys of it**, for they are not taken from him; they never were in time; they never will be in eternity. I shall be there if I live or if I die." (President Brigham Young, April 1853, when Joseph had been dead nearly 9 years)

Brigham Young said, "Joseph Smith Junior **will again be on this earth dictating plans**…And he will never cease his operations, under the directions of the Son of God, until the last ones of the children of men are saved that can be, from Adam till now. There is an almighty work to perform in the spirit world. Joseph has not yet got through there. When he finishes his mission in the spirit world, he will be resurrected, but he has not yet done there…When his spirit again quickens his body, he will ascend to heaven, present his resurrected body to the Father and the Son, receive his commission as a resurrected being, and **visit his brethren on this earth as did Jesus after his resurrection**." (President Brigham Young, 1857)

Brigham Young said, "I said to Brother Joseph, the spring before he was killed, "you are laying out work for 20 years." He replied, "you have as yet scarcely begun to work; but I will set you enough to last you during your lives, for I am going to rest." All I can do or ask now is to do the work, so that it will be right and acceptable to him **when he comes here again**." (President Brigham Young, 1857)

Brigham Young said Joseph Smith holds the keys of this last dispensation. He said, "**no man or woman in this dispensation will ever enter into the**

celestial kingdom of God without the consent of Joseph Smith", that we "must have the certificate of Joseph Smith, junior, as a passport to their entrance into the mansion where God and Christ are – I with you and you with me. I cannot go there without his consent. He holds the keys of that kingdom for the last dispensation – the **keys to rule in the spirit world; and he rules there triumphantly**, for he gained full power and a glorious victory over the power of Satan while he was yet in the flesh, and was a martyr to his religion and to the name of Christ ,which gives him a most perfect victory in the spirit world. **He reigns there as supreme a being in his sphere, capacity, and calling, as God does in heaven**. Many will exclaim – "Oh, that is very disagreeable! It is preposterous! We cannot bear the thought!" But it is true…. Joseph Smith, junior, **will again be on this earth dictating plans and calling forth his brethren**…he will never cease his operations, under the directions of the Son of God, until the last ones of the children of men are saved that can be, from Adam till now. Should not this thought comfort all people? They will, by-and-by, be a thousand times more thankful for such a man as Joseph Smith, junior, that it is possible for them to be for any earthly good whatever….[The Lord] has watched that family and that blood as it has circulated from its fountain to the birth of that man. He was foreordained in eternity to preside over this last dispensation." (JD 7: 289-290)

Heber C. Kimball said (paraphrasing): In Jackson County Missouri, historic Church leaders will be there in the flesh helping lay out the lands of our inheritance. They will also be at the grand council of God at Jerusalem, and the Church of the Firstborn. Some of these individuals will be Joseph Smith, Hyrum Smith, Brigham Young, Kimball, Wells, David, and Parley. See Crowther Prophecy book p.99 for the full quote and reference.

Note: Some great research has been done on the topic of Joseph's return by the Joseph Smith Foundation (JosephSmithFoundation.org) in several of their presentations such as "The Prophet Joseph: More Than We Know."



(Image by JosephSmithFoundation.org)

Four Groups Who Gather to the New Jerusalem

This generated summary of groups going to the New Jerusalem appears to fit well with prophetic teachings.

Group	Geographic Origin	Destination	Key Scriptures	Role in New Jerusalem
1. Remnant of Jacob	Descendants of Lehi — Native peoples of the Americas (North & South)	Zion / New Jerusalem in Jackson County, Missouri	3 Nephi 21:22; Ether 13:3–6	Founders and builders of the New Jerusalem; inheritance of this land.
2. Scattered Israel in the Americas	Covenant descendants scattered across both American continents	Gather to Zion (through the restored Church)	3 Nephi 21:23–24; D&C 45:64–71	Join with the remnant of Jacob to build and defend Zion.
3. Lost Ten Tribes	Hidden “north countries” (symbolic or literal region beyond polar lands)	Return via miraculous path to Zion (D&C 133:26–34)	D&C 133; 3 Nephi 21:26	Bring their prophets, records, and treasures; unite under Ephraim in Zion.
4. All Nations	Worldwide (Europe, Africa, Asia, Oceania, etc.)	Gather spiritually through missionary work and covenants; physically as led by the Lord to Zion and Jerusalem	Isaiah 11:12; D&C 45:68–71; Articles of Faith 10	Global Israel united under Christ’s reign from Zion and Jerusalem.

Phase	Description	Key Scriptures	Prophetic Emphasis
1. Spiritual Gathering	Conversion to Christ through missionary work, baptism, and temple covenants.	3 Nephi 21:23–24; D&C 110:11; Isaiah 11:12	Taught by Kimball, Benson, Nelson: Every convert is gathered Israel.
2. Temporal/Physical Gathering	Return of Israel to lands of inheritance, establishment of Zion and the New Jerusalem.	Ether 13:3–6; D&C 45:64–71; D&C 133:26–34	Taught by Joseph Smith, Brigham Young, John Taylor, and later prophets.
3. Millennial Fulfillment	Christ reigns personally from Zion (New Jerusalem) and from Jerusalem in the East.	D&C 133:35; Articles of Faith 10	Prophesied by all prophets: The law shall go forth from Zion, the word from Jerusalem.

Gathering: 1. Spiritual 2. Physical 3. Millennial

The following is a generated summary of **gathering phases** which appears to be in line with prophetic teachings:

Overview of Eras & Major Events

This is an interesting generated summary that seems to align with prophetic teachings.

Era	Major Events	Key Scriptural References	Prophetic Commentary
1. Early Latter Days (1830–present)	Gospel restored; gathering begins spiritually through missionary work; establishment of stakes of Zion worldwide.	D&C 110:11; 3 Nephi 21:23–24	Joseph Smith: “The gathering of Israel is now in progress.”
2. Preparation Phase (present–near future)	The Saints build righteousness and unity; Zion’s stakes grow; preparation for New Jerusalem to be physically built.	D&C 45:64–71; Ether 13:6	Russell M. Nelson: “Every covenant-keeper helps prepare for the building of Zion.”
3. Redemption of Zion (future event)	Remnant of Jacob and faithful Saints reclaim the land of Zion; New Jerusalem constructed as a city of refuge.	3 Nephi 21:22–24; D&C 103:11–13	Brigham Young: “The time will come when Zion shall be redeemed, and the Lord’s people will return to their inheritance.”
4. Return of the Ten Tribes	Lost tribes come from the north with their prophets and treasures; unite with Ephraim in Zion.	D&C 133:26–34	Joseph Fielding Smith: “They will bring their records and their prophets to Zion.”
5. Final Global Gathering	All nations come spiritually and physically; wicked gathered against Zion; the	D&C 45:68–71; Isaiah 11:12	John Taylor: “The nations shall flow unto Zion, and the law shall go forth from it.”

Symbol	Meaning	References
North Countries	The hidden location of the Ten Tribes; symbolizes preserved covenant people.	D&C 133:26–27
New Jerusalem (Zion)	Center place of gathering in the Western Hemisphere.	Ether 13:3–6; D&C 45:66–67
Jerusalem (Old World)	Center of gathering for Judah and Israel in the Eastern Hemisphere.	Isaiah 11:12; Zechariah 14:4
Remnant of Jacob	Lamanite/Nephite descendants who inherit the land and help build Zion.	3 Nephi 21:22
Ephraim	Leadership tribe in latter-day gathering (missionary, temple, covenant work).	D&C 133:30–34
Ensign	The restored gospel and Church calling Israel home.	Isaiah 11:12; 3 Nephi 21:8–11

Era	Major Events	Key Scriptural References	Prophetic Commentary
	Lord protects His people.		
6. Second Coming & Millennial Reign	Christ appears; reigns from Zion (New Jerusalem) and Jerusalem (Old World); the earth renewed.	D&C 133:35; Articles of Faith 10	Joseph Smith: “Zion and Jerusalem will be capitals of the Lord’s Kingdom.”

End Time Symbols & Meanings

This is a generated summary defining key terms of end time concepts.

End Time Event Flow Summary

This generated list does a good job capturing the main eras of the restoration.

1. The Gospel Restored → (D&C 110:11) keys given for gathering Israel.
2. Missionary Work Expands → (3 Nephi 21:24) begins the spiritual gathering.
3. Remnant of Jacob Rises → (3 Nephi 21:22) builds the New Jerusalem.
4. Zion Redeemed → (D&C 103:11–13) land reclaimed by the faithful.
5. Ten Tribes Return → (D&C 133:26–34) unite with Ephraim in Zion.
6. All Nations Flow to Zion → (Isaiah 2:2–3; 11:12) fulfillment of universal prophecy.
7. Christ Appears → reigns jointly from Zion (West) and Jerusalem (East).

Joseph Smith: Sign of the Coming of the Son of Man will Appear to be Comet

Joseph Smith said, “There will be wars and rumours of wars, signs in the heavens above and on the earth beneath, the sun turned into darkness and the moon to blood, earthquakes in divers places,the seas heaving beyond their bounds; then will appear **one grand sign of the Son of Man in heaven. But what will the world do? They will say it is *a planet, a comet***…” (Joseph Smith 1843 Nauvoo, DHC 5:337)

7 Prophesied Appearances of the Savior – Old Testament Gospel Doctrine Manual

1. To the Prophet Joseph Smith in the First Vision (Acts 3:19–21; Joseph Smith—History 1:15–17).
2. In his latter-day temples (Malachi 3:1; D&C 133:1–2).
3. In the valley of Adam-ondi-Ahman (D&C 116; Daniel 7:13–14, 22; see also D&C 107:53–56, which describes a past meeting at Adam-ondi-Ahman that is similar to the meeting that will take place there).
4. In Jerusalem during a worldwide conflict known as the battle of Armageddon (Ezekiel 38–39; Zechariah 12–14; Revelation 11; D&C 45:47–53).
5. In the city of New Jerusalem, at Independence, Missouri (3 Nephi 21:24–26).
6. To the righteous at the time of his Second Coming (Zechariah 14:5; 1 Thessalonians 4:16–17; D&C 88:96–98).
7. To the wicked (D&C 133:42–51).

https://www.churchofjesuschrist.org/study/manual/old-testament-gospel-doctrine-teachers-manual/lesson-48?lang=eng

Additional references on the 4 ‘second coming’ appearances:

1. At Adam-ondi-Ahman (see Daniel 7:9–10, 13–14; D&C 116).
2. To those in the New Jerusalem in America (see 3 Nephi 21:23–25; D&C 45:66–67).
3. To the Jews in Jerusalem (see D&C 45:48, 51–53; Zechariah 12:10; 14:2–5).
4. In glory to all mankind (see D&C 45:44; 101:23; Matthew 24:30; Isaiah 40:5; JST Revelation 1:7).

Note: These appearances are each part of the second coming of Christ. Scriptures referring to his coming aren’t all about the coming to all mankind.

McConkie on Pole's Returning to Straight & Year-Round Harvest In Millennium

From The Millennial Messiah, p.412

Knowing that the earth is to reel to and fro, knowing that the mighty deep shall return to its place in the north, knowing that the continents and islands shall join again, what about the stars and their fall from heaven? Our answer is that it will seem to men on earth as though the stars -- those great suns in the sidereal heavens around which other planets revolve -- are falling because the earth reels. The great fixed stars will continue in their assigned orbits and spheres. The sun also will continue to give light, but it will appear to men to be darkened; and the moon will remain as she has been since the creation, but it will seem to mortal eyes as though she is bathed in blood.

Many scriptures speak of **earthquakes as one of the signs of the times**. We have noted this, somewhat repetitiously, as it has been associated with other matters. The clear inference is that for some reason as yet unknown to man, earthquakes have been and are destined to increase both in number and intensity in the last days. Certainly they shall increase in terror and destructive power simply because there are more people and more man-made structures on earth than at any previous time. And clearly the crowning earthquake -- the earthquake of earthquakes -- is the one that shall occur as the earth reels to and fro and the stars seem to fall from their places in the sidereal heavens.

As we consider the reeling of the earth to and fro and the total realignment of its land masses incident to the Second Coming, and as we consider the burning of the vineyard by fire to destroy the wicked, as they were once destroyed by water in the days of Noah, we are faced with a somewhat difficult problem relative to the rainbow. We say difficult because not all things relative to it have been revealed, and we have only a few slivers of divine truth upon which to build our house of understanding. In the eternal sense nothing is difficult once the whole matter has been revealed to minds prepared and qualified to receive and understand. Let us lay a foundation for the place the rainbow is destined to play in the Second Coming by recounting the circumstances under which it apparently came into being.

Seed time and harvest, in the sense of one season following another, exist because the axis of the earth is tilted twenty-three and a half degrees from the upright. This is the reason we have summer and winter, spring and fall.

The first reference in the scriptures to **seasons** as we know them is in connection with the flood of Noah. There is a presumption that prior to the flood there were no **seasons** because the **axis of the earth was upright**, and a similar presumption that when **the Millennium comes and the earth returns to its original paradisiacal state, once again the seasons as we know them will cease** and that seed time and harvest will go on concurrently at all times. The whole earth at all times will be a garden as it was in the days of Eden.

Whatever the case may be with reference to these things, something apparently happened with reference to the rainbow in Noah's day, and something is certainly going to happen with reference to it in connection with the Lord's return. **We are left to speculate relative to some of these matters**, which is not all bad as long as any expressed views are clearly identified for what they are. In fact, in our present state of spiritual enlightenment the Lord deliberately leaves us to ponder and wonder about many things connected with his coming; in this way our hearts are centered upon him so that we will qualify in due course to receive absolute and clear revelation on many things.

1000 Years of Peace: Quotes from Joseph Fielding Smith



Joseph Fielding Smith said, “Christ shall reign as Lord of lords and King of kings for a thousand years. We are looking forward to that time.” (“The Right to Rule,” Deseret News, Feb. 6, 1932, Church section, 8)23 (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Fielding Smith Manual: Ch.26 “Preparing for the Coming of Our Lord”)

Joseph Fielding Smith said, “For one thousand years shall this happy time of peace prevail and in due time all the inhabitants of the earth shall be brought into the fold of the Church.”(“Priesthood—Dispensation of the Fulness of Times,” Deseret News, Aug. 19, 1933, 4; see also Doctrines of

Salvation, 3:66.)24 (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Fielding Smith Manual: Ch.26 “Preparing for the Coming of Our Lord”)

Joseph Fielding Smith said, “The gospel will be taught far more intensely and with greater power during [the] millennium, until all the inhabitants of the earth shall embrace it.”(“Churches on Earth During the Millennium,” Improvement Era, Mar. 1955, 176; see also Doctrines of Salvation, 3:64.)25 (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Fielding Smith Manual: Ch.26 “Preparing for the Coming of Our Lord”)

Joseph Fielding Smith said, “Instead of being a time of rest, the Millennium is to be a time for all to labor. Idleness will not be found, better methods will be employed, not so much time will be consumed in the daily pursuits and more time will be given to the things of the Kingdom. The saints will be kept busy in the temples which shall be built in all parts of the land. In fact, so busy will they be that the temples will be occupied most of the time.”(The Way to Perfection (1931), 323–24.)” 26 cu (Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Fielding Smith Manual: Ch.26 “Preparing for the Coming of Our Lord”)

Nephi’s Last Days Prophecies – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary

Hyrum Andrus was a faithful Joseph Smith scholar and BYU professor who shared lectures on doctrines of the gospel.



2 parts

PART 1: https://youtu.be/UJAzwpsirzY

In The era of warfare against Zion (future) that is when Zion rises to its full stature.
Eventually this will extend to Jerusalem.

There will be military war against the latter-day Saints then against Jerusalem.

Joel 2 is warfare against Zion. Joel 3is war against Jerusalem.

There's a future point where if the gentiles repent they'll be saved if they don't they'll suffer this becomes even more specific in the future where they get the two alternatives to choose from.
These alternatives will be presented to the gentiles vividly and powerfully. At that point if they refuse these offerings they'll be destroyed temporally and spiritually. We have not yet seen this and it will be rapid consequence when it is presented.
The future warfare against Zion is when these alternatives will be presented to the gentiles.

Nephi sees a division on the one hand is the Church of the Lamb of God and this is not all of the latter-day Saints. The other is the Church of the devil which consists of anyone who's not on the Church of the Lamb.

2 Nephi 30:10 also speaks of this great division.

In that day there will be such a polarity and the gospel will be talked about throughout the world as it has never been before.

In the scriptures Waters means people. The whore sat upon many Waters. The whore is a cultural mindset.

Nephi says the church was spread all over the world this began to be fulfilled after World war II when the policy changed to not moving the United States when you're baptized.
George Albert Smith started this then David McKay implemented it.

In Central and South America missionaries did not have much success at all then president McKay dedicated the land and everything started opening up.

There's a difference between ministering the gospel with the power of the spirit and just visiting with people and talking about the weather at cetera.

It's much more than just knowing the church is true we have to get sanctified to be born again.

Zion will rise to be the standard of righteousness in the world that it is designed to be. It must be a Zion endowed with Glory.

There will be fire and cloud over all areas of Zion and this will be because the people are sanctified, not just because they're upset about being oppressed.

Right now the Saints are lazy and think all is well in Zion and are not willing to live for the gospel, they're only willing to die for it. This is why we haven't gotten the Glory of Zion yet.

Wherever the Saints are gathered there's going to be a war against them; war of bullets etcetera as the people around them gather against them.
But the Saints will be preserved by the power and glory of God.

God's wrath we poured out upon the nation's such that all nations will have war and rumor of war, that would include America.

The Book of Mormon teaches that America will be the first great nation to make warfare against Zion.

The Lord will come to Zion years and years before he comes in glory to the whole world.

The physical geographical gathering is not over! We are in an interim. When the era of warfare against the Zion comes then the gathering will take place will "not go by flight."

Nephi says when the wrath is poured out on the abominations, then the Lord commences in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants.

We will gather to temples and to endowments of Glory. It begins at Mount Zion in this land of America is a gathering to the law of consecration and the holy order.

Before the gathering is a cleansing because we just aren't cutting it. Isaiah says Zion is redeemed by judgement. Joseph Smith says a man cannot come to My. Zion except by suffering.

D&C. 42 identifies the sudden coming to Temple spoken of by Malachi, which was repeated the Joseph Smith by Morini as taking place at the New Jerusalem Temple.

To build Zion, it's the righteous Latter-Day Saints who need to be refined, not just the inactive.

For Zion we need two things to happen: 1. we need the righteous Saints to be refined in the refiner's fire. 2. The land of America must be refined (because it is the land of Zion).

America will be destroyed. Otherwise, God owes Sodom and Gomorrah an apology.

After the destruction of America, Zion is established. Then the gathering of Israel happens. They go out from All Nations not in haste. They will go

peacefully bring as many people with them as they can and they'll have the same endowment as Israel leaving Egypt the pillar of fire by night and cloud by day. They come to Zion singing songs of everlasting Joy. This is the entire prophetic picture of the Book of Mormon. We are on the threshold of the beginning of this era of time.

First Nephi 22, 2nd Nephi 6, and 3rd Nephi have commentaries on the prophetic picture. Nephi saw everything John did.

The beast is given power to overcome the Saints and everyone else.

The mark of the beast era takes place **after** the redemption of Zion. Zion isn't concerned with it.

Daniel 7 he sees Adam-ondi-Ahman in the last days. Joseph Smith identifies the ancient of Days as the oldest man our Father Adam who is Michael. In that meeting Adam councils with us to prepare us for the coming of Christ. Daniel 7 is also about the general World condition at the time of Adam-ondi-Ahman.

Joseph Smith says that the beasts of Daniel should be translated as figures of a beast and that they represent beastly degenerate carnal God opposing systems. (Unlike the righteous 4 literal beasts of the book of Revelation who worship God)

Daniel 7 deals with the same subject in general that Daniel 2 deals with. The great image. The kingdoms of that great image and 1806, that's when the Holy Roman empire ends and the prophecy is that in the day after that is when the kingdom of God is set up. The kingdom cut out of the mountain without hands. The four beasts of Daniel 7 represent the same things that the great image represented the lion was Babylon, the bear was Medes and Persians, the third leopard was Greece, the fourth was Rome (terrible with iron like none before it).

Revelation 13 has a **beast with different body parts that have the same figures** that Daniel used except they are reversed in order. Like the beast in Revelation being made of multiple animals, **Babylon in the last days is a melting pot of different peoples!** Babylon's great ideal is Greco-Roman philosophy. So the one who makes war against the Zion is a composite of

Greece and Rome.

There was another beast the little horn and remember horns and scripture represent power. The war against the Saints prevails until Adam-ondi-Ahman.
Out of Rome come 10 kings. The little horn is very powerful but little in the sense that his rule as a short one.

Joseph Smith spoke of wars that would happen after the civil war of the United States. He said **when the Russian Bear lays its paw on the British Lion you know the winding-up scenes are not far off**.

When Adam-ondi-Ahman happens there will be two great world powers. The one will be Babylon the other will be the Little Horn. The little horn will subdue 3 Babylon kingdom, one of which will be England. The little horn is the Russian Bear. Adam-ondi-Ahman will result in removal of the little horns power.

Joel 2:28 to the end of the chapter was told to Joseph Smith that it wasn't fulfilled, it was for the Latter-Days. **"It shall come to pass AFTERWARD that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh..." After what? The 1st 27 verses deal with a great northern power coming to Zion to subdue it.**
He says it's a northern army, a heathen (not Christian) power. Such a power as there hath not been ever the like, or will be after many generations. The greatest military power ever seen this far and ever seen until the end of the millennium. This is talking about the little horn.
Verse 30-32 in Mt. Zion and in Jerusalem AND in the remnant the Lord shall call there will be security.

Joseph Smith teachings p70-71 he reads Joel 2, says in the last days **God will call a remnant where there will be deliverance / temporal peace in addition to Zion & Jerusalem. It's the remnant who the Lord SHALL call, so he hasn't called them yet**. The Lord will gather the **Indian** people, they are the remnant, there will be peace among them.

During the period of warfare the saints get sanctified.

Eventually Jews will gather to Jerusalem in far greater numbers. Many are in America, they may want to leave during the warfare era.

There's not only a modern Babylon, but also a modern Assyrian.

The lost ten tribes wanted to faithfully live the covenant like never before, this they fled. They are together in a body like Joseph Smith said.

The Lord brings upon the people the waters (people) many...shall fill the breadth of the land...
...I will send him against a hypocritical nation (America) to take their treasure...
V24,27 the Lord says to His people in Zion: Assyrian will do to you like Pharaoh did to ancient Egypt a little while then they'll be destroyed. His home will be destroyed because of the anointing.
V12-15 when he has done his whole work on Zion & Jerusalem, the Lord will punish the Assyrian. Don't worry about the Assyrian

The great northern army, little horn, Assyrian are **all the same** under various symbols.

The true Ensign, a spiritual Ensign and of general righteousness and justice, will be raised when Zion is redeemed with an endowment of glory. If people reject THAT, they get God's judgements both spiritually and temporary.

1 Ne. 22 making known the covenants of the father of heaven refers to Christ. The people cannot be blessed unless the Lord makes bare his arm in the eyes of all nations. Mosiah 12 Abinadi prophesied of the last days, that all would see the salvation of God, the arm bare. So **ALL nations see it and make a choice, a great division**. Seeing eye to eye to bring again Zion, **He has to make his arm bare to all nations!** V28 the time shall come when the salvation of the lord will be declared to every nation, they'll see eye to eye when the Lord brings again Zion...made bare his arm, all nations will see His salvation.

PART 2: https://youtu.be/jDhTQMqSpb4

Once God made his arm bare anciently, Egypt. Brought them out miraculously. **There will be little Egypt's all over the place.** [Note: Wherever there are temples sems to be fit places for these pockets of freedom and deliverance.]

God's people will be preserved, get glory, America will be cleansed.

Don't go gather with haste, gather as many as you can to go with you, if they reject you, spiritual and temporal destruction.

He makes bare his arm in all nations **by his people in those nations**.

Warfare against the saints then the cleansing of America and glory among the saints. All that fight against Zion will be destroyed. Nephi speaks of this time. The Lord won't allow the righteous to be destroyed and will protect them by fire. None that believe in Christ will be destroyed. The prey is Zion. It will be delivered. We will build the New Jerusalem. God will break the power of the gentiles. If gentiles don't repent God's people go through and tread them down.
The Indians will rebel. Marines won't be able to come stop them. The Indians will be like a lion among sheep, none will stop them.
It'll be Indians and cowboys, not cowboys and Indians; the **Indians will win this time.**

God will remove the witchcraft groves and materialism & whoredoms from us. There will be vengeance such as we have not heard.

When **the Assyrian (great Northern Army Russia) will come into our land** (America the hypocritical nation) and tread in our palaces, Christ will deliver us. The remnant of Jacob Indian people will tread the Assyrian.

3Ne. 22 if gentiles repent they can come help build the New Jerusalem. If they don't serve Christ they'll be swept off.

D&C 133:34 The richer blessing is on Ephraim because he has borne the heat of the day. Ephraim will preside in building the new Jerusalem. (Indians and converted Gentiles help, but Ephraim presides in the New

Jerusalem program.)

3 Ne. 22 After cleansing of America and New Jerusalem is built and ten tribes brought in, Then the desolate has more children than the married. Gentiles more than Israel.

When we return to Missouri we will live celestial law including the law of consecration. [Note: Perhaps other celestial laws too, as scripture suggests.]

Jackson County will be the nucleus of New Jerusalem, and it'll spread hundreds of miles each direction until the desolate cities of the gentiles are inhabited by the Lord's people. [Note again the temples in multiple locations.]

Zion will not remember the reproach of its youth. It'll be gathered with great mercies. The Second Comforter (Jesus Christ) will he there. All the children will be taught of the Lord. Warfare will be against Zion but no weapon formed against it will prosper.

Micah 5 is about America.

Even the best shows today have a Babylon setting. We are living in Sodom and Gomorrah. Judgement on America is sure.

Warfare against Zion will start everything, cleansing of Zion, the going to New Jerusalem, gathering of Israel from the 4 quarters of the earth, the rise of Babylon little horn, rise of slaves against their masters, etc.

We need to minister as we do hometeaching, not just visit and chat.

Says even if he **knows** something to be true and his Bishop is leading in a different direction, he will back off.

[Note: It does seem wise to back off when there is a disagreement. But remember, much of what the early brethren taught to not follow blindly. Following falsehoods cannot be good in any scenario. Perhaps what should be said is "don't contend with the leaders" more so than "do everything the leaders say even when wrong." We try all things, and do what Christ would,

fearing God more than any man. The issue Andrus may be getting at here is that far too often we mistrust the leaders and are lazy, and not interested in their council on any level.]

Joseph said this world will stand next to Kolob. Earth fell through space at Adams fall, many prophets have taught that.

[Note remember Brigham and others said it fell from that location at the fall of Adam. Perhaps this also has reference to this world being home of some of the most wicked and righteous of God's creations.]

Andrus thinks the fall of Adam and Eve had "less to do with the apple on the tree and more to do with the pair on the ground"

[Note: I'm not sure if Andrus was stating this as his opinion or saying that's what the Protestants think; it's certainly not mainstream latter-day saint theology. I think Andrus is wrong on this one if that is his view. Strangely he doesn't mention it in his other full lecture on the fall. I don't know of any prophets teaching such, nor do I see any logic in it, but it is not an impossible idea, many Christians have that idea, but they see marriage as a fallen order. We know marriage and reproduction are of the Gods and are eternal blessings. So what about the fruit? Perhaps there was a certain bacteria in the fruit that lead to the change in their bodies, and another in that of the tree of life which would have reversed the effect and brought a cleansing resulting in immortality.]

Indian people go through among the gentiles. The Lord's people restore the constitution. The gathering takes place.

Nephi & John's Revelations of the Last Days – Hyrum Andrus Lecture Highlights & Commentary

Hyrum Andrus was a faithful Joseph Smith scholar and BYU professor who shared lectures on doctrines of the gospel.



2 parts.

PART 1:
https://youtu.be/EtfUHHGqvFk

The opening of the seals is a series of apocalyptic events; that's **not something that took place in the ancient history** of the earth (Joseph Smith clarified this). Joseph Smith saw the same vision as John, and is qualified to clarify this; he said it's the plainest book ever written. The opening of the seals are made to reveal the sequence of events in the last days. **The opening of the seals are a series of apocalyptic events,** but seeing what the content of the seals actually is, the content of what happened in each of those thousand your periods, that is something that happens after Christ comes. **The first item of business in Zion in the millennium is to judge everyone** that's ever lived on the earth and knowing the **contents of those seals will help** them do that. The contents include the secret thoughts of the hearts of the people.

The seven angels in D&C 88 are not the same seven angels as in the Book of Revelation.

The four horsemen of the Apocalypse represent 4 judgments before the final cleansing of the Earth.

The D&C prophecy of the civil war is not just about the civil war, it's about several wars.
It's about the worldwide bloodshed previous to the coming of Christ an era of war. These will continue on until the prophesied full end of all Nations. Historians agree that the **American civil war is the beginning** of the kind of war which is called **total war**, mechanized war

“And they will also call on other nations.” Here the word “they” refers to Great Britain. You see, the prophecy is more than just the civil war. Church historian BH Roberts was able to predict what would happen in World war II from this war prophecy.

John Nephi and Joseph Smith all saw the last days vision.

The war prophecy says many days after that, slaves rise against their masters who shall be marshalled and disciplined for war; this has been interpreted to refer to the civil war, but it should probably be interpreted to mean after these world wars. **You can't say the slave involvement in the civil war fulfills this because it's not in the right context.** First you have the civil war, then you have the world wars, then says after that the **slaves rise up against their masters; this is something yet to happen.** The Masters are the ones who are marshaled and disciplined for war and the slaves rise against them. Then verse four talks about another group The remnants left in the land will Marshall themselves and become angry.

Isaiah says the Assyrian will be driven back by the power of the anointing, so the freedom lovers will get great help as they stand against the communists.

The Assyrian will be sent against the hypocritical nation (which is America), it will cleanse America.
The Indian people will band together in America**. the church will have been humbled and cleansed and they will join in the freedom movement**.
That cleansed remnant will be who redeems Jackson county.

In 1967 the times of the gentiles were fulfilled. This is when they stopped being tracked down by the gentiles, which is the definition of the fulfillment of the times of the gentiles.

John's 4 horses correlate with the prophecy on war. The **White horse is America**, he has a bow and goes forth conquering and to conquer. The White horse also **represents the beginning of the era of warfare against Zion**.
The bow of the white horsemen is likely sending a bomb. America has a

history of sending bombs places. The **red horse** had a great sword it takes peace from the earth it **is a military power. This is probably when the Assyrian comes to America**. The **third black horse** has balances its interested in Justice the slaves who escaped from their masters. There is also language of rations personal note this could **refer to a time of famine taking place after Assyria invades America**. The **fourth pale horse** is death in hell it has **power over a fourth** of the earth and America constitutes North and South America constitute the fourth part of the Earth. The pale horse **has to do with the remnant** and he will have something to do with pale faces. It says death and hell followed after because the wicked who died go to hell, it'll be **the wicked who are dying** in other words.

Also in the **fifth seal we have the martyrs and there's still some more of those**. The **sixth seal is the ordination of the second coming** not the second-coming itself. **Man was ordained to be placed on Earth on the 6th day and he was actually placed on the earth in the 7th Day** as the pearl of great price says very clearly. It's the same way with the seals in The sixth seal is the ordination of Christ's coming and Christ actually comes in the 7th.

Revelation 6 is an overview of the last days Revelation 7 is more about 6 seal stuff The calling of the 144,000. 144000 gather the sanctified it's that church who gets caught up to meet Christ. The 144,000 do their work for about 21 years (the half-hour which begins at the opening of the 7th seal).

[Note: Many advocate the 7th seal having opened in year 2000, but that appears to not have been the case based on what must happen in the 6th seal.]

While the hundred forty-four thousand go forth there are plagues and war. They bring people to the Church of the firstborn, which is the church that will be caught up to meet Christ. The 144,000 are the people who gather the wheat then the tears are burned via the major plagues. The wheat are then organized according to D&C 86.

The Book of Revelation is a series of spotlights on the last days rather than a chronological order. [Note: Some suggest it is chronological, but that’s not our study here.]

PART 2:

https://youtu.be/8mdZqJpDG_I

Rev. 7 after these things (i.e. after the 4 horses)

Hurt not the Earth till sealed servants God in foreheads.

The 144,000 high priests are not high priests of the ecclesiastical order which we know today, but of the Holy order, and this anointing is received only in the temple and for couples jointly.

There are the four gospel Angels, then there's John, he's the fifth. He says "hurt not until we finish this gathering Israel mission."

The Lost ten tribes have to return before the calling of the 144,000 so we have a base of people to choose from, and these things happen before the opening of the seventh seal.

To some Paul says 'repent and be baptized' - that's the standard program of the Gospel. To others Paul only says 'repent and be converted' they had sinned against light grievously and their best option was to go to hell with a repentant heart and pay the debt.

The ten tribes will return as a body. Joseph Smith taught that so clearly that there should be no dispute on that matter.

Moses Elias Elijah and John are all translated; there are others too of course, the three Nephites as well.

Some faithful in the Kirtland era were called to the 144,000. The calling began then. It will not only be living people, but translated and resurrected.

After the 144,000 gather people to the Church of the firstborn, then the Earth is cleansed at the hands of these four angels of the restoration.

The half-hour silence is in the Lord's time (1000:1 so 21 years). The great task force the 144,000 goes out during that half-hour, it's the prophecy of Jeremiah about the hunting [Note: Suggests a different program than the earlier fishing program.] They teach & administer the gospel with power and seal up people to hell who reject them. This is the gathering wheat from

tares.

3 Ne. 21:25 Christ will personally come to the new Jerusalem. This is when Zion is cleansed in the 7th seal. This is technically the beginning of the millennium. It's around the opening of the 7th seal. [Note: The saints get an earlier era of peace than the rest of the world.]

Isa. 59:19-20 is warfare against Zion, then Christ coming to Zion. The enemy comes in like a flood, that's the great abominable Church bringing multitudes to fight against Zion. A standard is lifted against them. The power of God and great Glory rest upon the Saints. It specifically says at that point the Redeemer comes to Zion. Moroni at the Hill Cumorah tells Joseph Smith the Saints will be persecuted until they finally receive an inheritance where the glory of the Lord rests upon them. Moroni says at that point is when the Isaiah passage will be fulfilled when Christ comes to Zion.

Suddenly the Lord will come to his Temple. This didn't mean suddenly near the time that Malachi said that, it means suddenly after the work preparatory to that event is complete. It has reference to the 144,000.

Adam-ondi-Ahman is after the Lord comes to his Temple suddenly. Adam-ondi-Ahman is a great judgment of past.

The past dispensations were not complete this dispensation is to be complete. **This is not the dispensation of the fullest of times until we build Zion have Adam-ondi-Ahman and seal other dispensations to us.** This is also called the dispensation of the fullness of dispensations. The capstone being put onto a dispensation requires Zion being built with an order of kings queens priests and priestesses. (Andrus elsewhere explains: Christ puts the capstone on, glorifying Zion, making them Kings and Priests in very deed, not just anointed to become such.)

It's after the ministry of the 144,000 that Christ come suddenly to his Temple, that Daniel 7 of the ancient of Days at Adam-ondi-Ahman is fulfilled.

We seal all things to Christ by sealing all things to Joseph Smith first. This is the last being first.

Those who follow Christ are rewarded not by ecclesiastical office in the celestial Kingdom, but by receiving one hundred fold of all the things they sacrifice be it houses wives etc. [Note: Christ made this clear, and these blessings are blessings of exaltation, and far exceed ecclesiastical position; it's not about where you serve now, but how.]

When past dispensations are sealed to Joseph Smith, we are able to do the temple work for those past dispensations because we still have living people on Earth who are able to do Temple ordinances [the dead and resurrected cannot do them, they are ordained only for mortality].

There are a group of Jewish converts aside from the Latter-day Saints, they will uphold the two prophets of Revelation 11 during the abomination of desolation. The Assyrian and Babylonian combine against Jerusalem during the abomination of desolation.

Whenever God ordains an earth to be built, there is always a Jerusalem and Zion, two centers, and it is that way on this Earth as well, following the eternal pattern. [Note: Elsewhere Andrus speaks of even the pre-mortal world having a Babylon, a Zion, and a Jerusalem.]

"Awake, awake again…put on thy garments oh Jerusalem, the holy city" The word **again** is not in Isaiah but it is in the 3rd Nephi passages of Jesus's teachings. So when did Jerusalem in Zion rise up in power happen the first time? **It was in pre mortality**; the war in heaven mirrors what's happening down here.

There are three Great gatherings: 1. the Saints from every nation 2. the Jews and 3. the wicked

When Satan can't get Zion he goes against Jerusalem. [That's where the wicked are gathered to.]

To rule all nations with a rod of iron is political power.

Since what was having as a type of what's on Earth, we know **there was Babylon in heaven**, and the **people who followed Satan in pre-mortality**

weren't just against agency, they were committed to Babylon, and they knew they wouldn't make it if they went to Earth, so they bargained away their freedom.

The time that the woman flees into the wilderness to the place prepared for her: in the regular says days **Joseph Smith changed it to years 1260 years**. D&C speaks of the church coming forth out of the wilderness in 1830. 1830-1260 would be 570AD when the church went to the wilderness. But that's 250 years after the Nicaean council, long after the great apostasy started. So this is referring to the war in heaven.

[Note: Perhaps it does refer to the Great Apostacy, and that there were some remnants until around that time, at which point the flame was entirely squashed. It would make sense that the 1260 isn't just about pre-mortality, but about here as well.]

The Church of Jesus Christ of latter-day Saints will have to give birth to the political kingdom of God. The gentiles won't be able to do it.

Satan was thrown out in heaven, and on Earth we have to do the same thing, to throw Satan out.

[Note: He must have been as tricky and deceptive there as he is here!]

The first part of Revelation 12 is about the war of heaven, the latter part is about the scene in Jerusalem. The church in Jerusalem is given wings for 1260 days to flee, comparable to the 1260 years in heaven. Some will flee from Jerusalem to Mt Zion for 1260 days. Other stay and sustain the 2 prophets there by their faith.

The Savior takes a group of people from Mt. Zion, they go and stand on the Mt. of Olives just in time. They rebuild the temple and administer the ordinances there. They bring the Jews to the church of the firstborn. THEN Christ comes in glory. The resurrection of the dead in Christ will have already risen first.

Rev. 14 talks about the restoration of the gospel. The Book of Mormon speaks of a great polarization in 3 Ne. & 2 Ne. 30. Rev. 14 is about how the great division is produced by the restoration of the gospel.

The ten virgins parable of men & women shows us that virgin means sanctified. The 144000 are married.

You can't build Zion on your own, you must unite with your bishop and stake president. Andrus has never seen a stake president without the mantle of God.

Joseph Smith was a greater prophet than Moses. [Andrus speaks on this elsewhere, showing that as the holder of the keys to the dispensation of the fullness of times, to which the other dispensations are gathered in, Joseph Smith presides over Moses, Elijah, etc. We also have record that the greatness of all the prophets past were manifest in the character of Joseph.]

TOPIC: TOPICAL SUMMARIES OF PROPHET QUOTES ON THE FUTURE FROM CROWTHER'S PROPHECY BOOK

Adapted from & Referenced to Duane Crowther's Quote Collection in 'Prophecy: Key to the Future.' Crowther's book is a classic among the latter-day saints with over 450,000 copies in print, originally published in 1962.

Note that when comparing page numbers here to Crowther's book, some editions of his book may vary in page number slightly. The main version I worked with was version 49 published in 2004 with the red cover, which I believe is still in print.

Why all the Orson Pratt quotes? Pratt had a special commission given in D&C 34 to prophecy.

Orson Pratt taught that those with the spirit of prophecy can put together a sequence of events. He said, "But the Latter-day Saints are not in darkness; they are the children of light, although many of us will actually be asleep.

We shall have to wake up and trim up our lamps, or we shall not be prepared to enter in; for we shall all slumber and sleep in that day, and **some will have gone to sleep** from which they will not awake until they awake up in darkness without any oil in their lamps. But, as a general thing, the **Saints will understand the signs of the times, if they do lie down and get to sleep**. Others have their eyes closed upon the prophecies of the ancient Prophets; and not only that, but they are void of the spirit of prophecy themselves. When a man has this, though he may appeal to ancient Prophets to get understanding on some subjects he does not clearly understand, yet, as he has the spirit of prophecy in himself, **he will not be in darkness; he will have a knowledge of the signs of the times**; he will have a knowledge of the house of Israel, and of Zion, of the ten tribes, and of many things and purposes and events that are to take place on the earth; and **he will see coming events, and can say such an event will take place, and after that another, and then another**; and after that the trumpet shall sound, and **after that certain things will take place**, and then another trump shall sound, &c., &c.; and **he will have his eye fixed on the signs** of the times, and **that day will not overtake him unawares;**" (Journal of Discourses 7:189) (online at journalofdiscourses.com/7/29)



Introduction to Crowther's Work: Prophets Foretell the Future

Future prophecy is at the heart of religion. Prophecy has always been a central message of the gospel of Jesus Christ, and particularly so now that we have arrived at fullness of times. The restored gospel has given us no shortage of modern prophecy, and insight into ancient prophecy.

Crowther's "Prophecy: Key to the Future" has long been a best-selling book among the Latter-day Saints. My book highlighting quotes of latter-day prophets found in Crowther's work presents a condensed version of Crowther's work organizing these quotations. For references and full quotes (the which I merely summarize here), refer to Crowther's complete book.

Learn the prophets' words, and you too will gain the spirit of prophecy they have. This is the privilege of the saints, and this preparation makes us bold in the presence of God. To those with ears to hear, the future is no mystery. We have a general outline of events.

Many are pleasantly surprised at just how much has been revealed about the future in this dispensation!

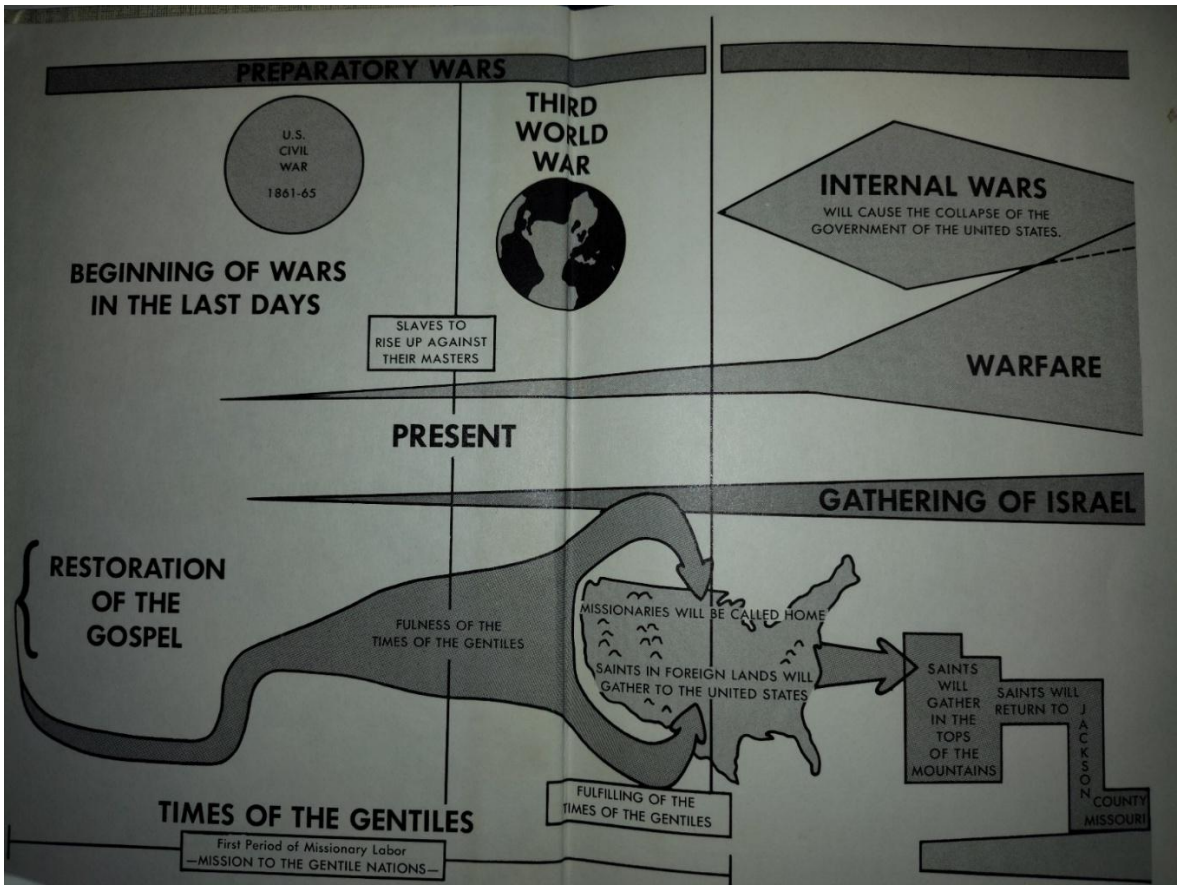
Enjoy this companion volume to some of the best research of this dispensation on future prophecy!

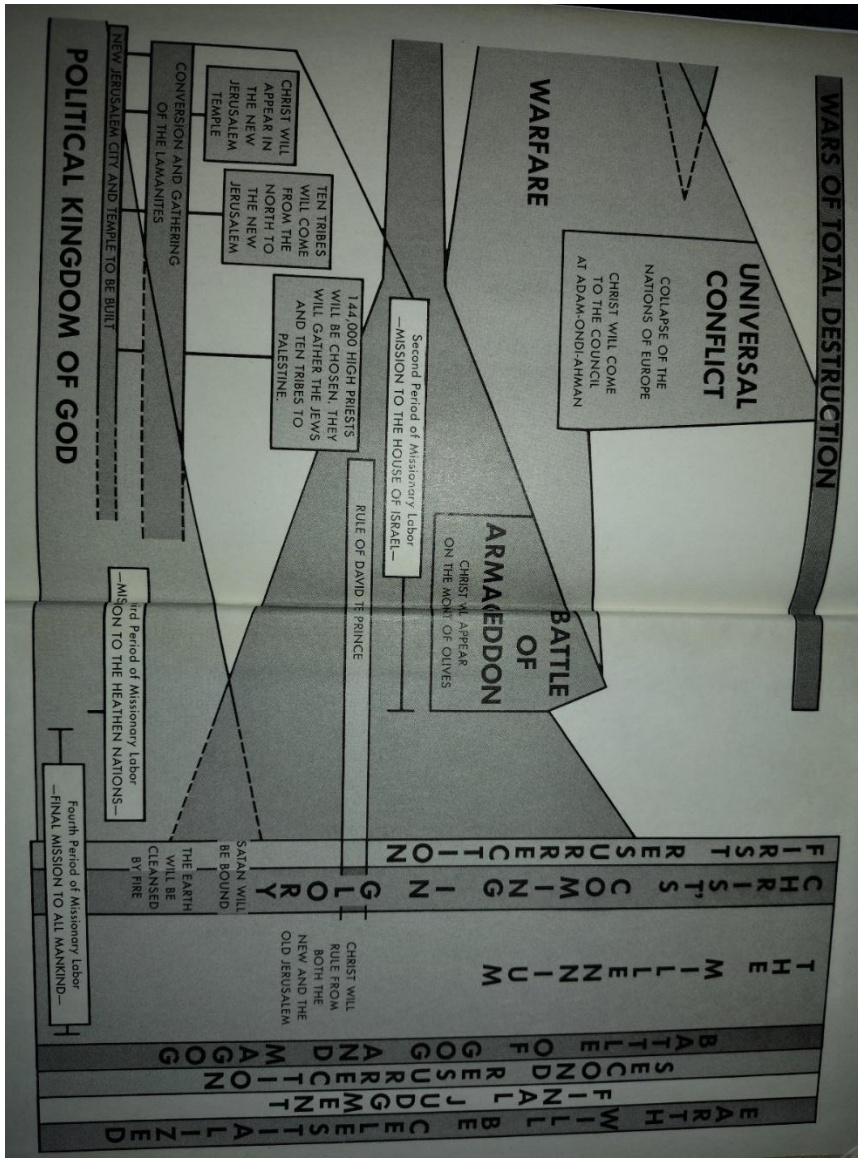
Quotes are summarized in my own words, and are referenced with page numbers to Duane S. Crowther's book, 'Prophecy: Key to the Future' (various editions may vary slightly on page numbers) where the quotes are featured in full with their references. My summary of prophet quotations found in Crowther's book is a helpful guide, but I urge readers to get Crowther's book and dive deeper into these prophecies.

When I add additional commentary, I do so by clearly delineating a new paragraph, and stating, "Note: …"

Analysis of Crowther's Diagram Charting the End Times

The following diagram appears in the front and back cover of older editions of Crowther's book. While it may be overly generalized, it captures several useful concepts.


PREPARATORY WARS
U.S. CIVIL WAR 1861-65
THIRD WORLD WAR
INTERNAL WARS
WILL CAUSE THE COLLAPSE OF THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES.
BEGINNING OF WARS IN THE LAST DAYS
SLAVES TO RISE UP AGAINST THEIR MASTERS
WARFARE
PRESENT
GATHERING OF ISRAEL
RESTORATION OF THE GOSPEL
FULNESS OF THE TIMES OF THE GENTILES
MISSIONARIES WILL BE CALLED HOME
SAINTS IN FOREIGN LANDS WILL GATHER TO THE UNITED STATES
SAINTS WILL GATHER IN THE TOPS OF THE MOUNTAINS
SAINTS WILL RETURN TO JACKSON COUNTY MISSOURI
FULFILLING OF THE TIMES OF THE GENTILES
TIMES OF THE GENTILES
First Period of Missionary Labor —MISSION TO THE GENTILE NATIONS—



Analysis of Duane Crowther's Prophetic Chronology of Future Events

As we dive into the teachings of the prophets on future events, let's take a look at Crowther's framework for a sequence of how all this fits together.

This chronology is found in Crowther's famous book, Prophecy: Key to the Future and is based on Crowther's phenomenal work compiling hundreds of teachings of the prophets on the future.

Here is Crowther's Chronology with added commentary:

Times of the Gentiles

The fullness of the gospel shall break forth when the times of the Gentiles is come in p.19

Fulness of the Gentiles

The fulness of the Gentiles was soon to come in 1823 p.20

World wars began in the last days

When England calls on other nations for assistance, war shall be poured out upon all nations p.2

(Note: This is certainly fulfilled.)

Preparatory wars cause governments to be formed which will accept the Missionaries

God shall soon cast down thrones and form other governments more favorable to religious liberty and the missionaries of this church will visit those nations. p.4

The Elders of the church will traverse all the nations of Europe after the despotic governments are torn down. p.4

God will bring his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel. p.9

The missionaries are to preach in Russia during the coming century after communism is overruled p.12, 13-14 (Note: we are doing this. We've had several missions in Russia. But currently we have no missions in Russia due to tensions.)

Christ contrasts the two periods of war. p. 9-10

Mission to the Gentile Nations (First period of missionary labor)

After they have been fully warned by God's servants, the spirit of God will withdraw from the Gentile Nations. p.7-8

The missionaries will preach in Russia during the coming century after communism is overruled. p.13-14

The gospel is to be preached unto all nations and then comes the destruction of the wicked. p.17-18

God will send the gospel to every Gentile nation before he will permit his servants to go to the scattered remnants of Israel. p.20

The last warning will be taken first to the Gentiles and then to the house of Israel after the Gentile nations reject the Gospel. p.22

(Note: It seems we are getting close to this. As Elder Robert D. Hales taught. societal norms and church standards are now very different. It seems that on many levels, the gospel message is increasingly ignored and rejected by the Gentiles.)

Slaves rise up against their masters

The slaves will rise up at a time many days after Great Britain calls on other nations for assistance. p.3

The slaves will rise in a time when their masters shall be marshalled and disciplined for war. p.3

(Note: This likely applies much further than the Civil War, and has to do with rejecting dictators and oppressive governments of various sorts.)

Third World War

The war will begin after the U.S has spent its strength and means warring in foreign lands. p.10

God will send Russia down to defeat never to rise again, and will bring about a speedy victory for America and her allies. p.12

The missionaries will preach in Russia to break up the old order of things- preparing the way for the blood of Isreal in that land. p.14

Note: His prediction about WW3 I don't know if is fulfilled in the Cold War, yes some things are open for us there now that weren't before the fall of the Soviet Union, but there still remains several things unfulfilled. And we certainly have done plenty of warring in foreign nations since that time, which is another thing predicted before WW3. Naturally our conception of WW3 is that it hasn't happened yet, but the term "World War" can be subjective, and only really necessitates three or more nations involved in a war. We think of a World War as a major event involving Europe and America, and we will probably have more wars of this kind. We might do better to avoid using terms like WW3 and just call it something general like 'times of worldwide war' as we put together the puzzles of prophecy, though it can be a useful term to use in some ways.

Saints to remain in foreign lands and suffer persecution during the preparatory wars

Multitudes will gather to fight against the saints. p.6

The unconverted in Europe, Asia, and Africa will fight against the saints. p.6

While the saints and the descendants of Joesph are scattered among all the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles, the multitudes will gather against them to battle. p.6

The Gentiles will stop fighting against the saints in their midst when the spirit of God withdraws from the Gentiles nations. p.7-8

During the preparatory wars nations will fight against Israel and persecute the church. p.9

The church is to be established in Russia and multitudes will fight against it there. p.14

After the Gentile nation have accounted themselves unworthy and have persecuted the Saints and closed their meeting housed, the Lord will say, “It is enough.” p.22

Persecution will test the saints after Salt Lake City has become wicked and the saints have come into financial bondage through speculation. Darkness will cover the minds of the people. p.26

The saints are to be tried and tested before Jackson County is to be swept clean. p.46

The “Horn” made war with the saints and overcame them, until the ancient of days came. p.176

Fulfilling of the times of the Gentiles

If the Gentiles are filled with wickedness God will bring his Gospel from among them. p.22

The times of the Gentiles shall be fulfilled in the generation when they don’t receive the gospel. p.22

The last warning will be taken first to the Gentiles and then to the House of Israel after the Gentiles nations reject the Gospel. p.22

The Lord will tell his servants among the Gentiles nations to come out of them for their times are fulfilled. p.23

When the Gentile nations reject the Gospel, the missionaries will go to the scattered remnants of the House of Israel. Then shall Jerusalem be rebuilt and the temple reared. p.23

The Jews will remain scattered until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled. p.24

Persecution will test the saints after Salt Lake City has become wicked and the saints have come into financial bondage through speculation. Darkness will cover the minds of the people. p.26

The fulfilling of the times of the Gentiles ends the period of preparatory war and begins the period of wars of destruction. p.27

The arm of the Lord shall be revealed in power in the day the word of the Lord is taken from the Gentiles and turns to the Jews. p.31

When the Gospel is sealed among the Gentiles and it turns to the House of Isreal the judgements of God will back up the testimony of the Elders of the Church. p.31

The remnant of Isreal will remain scattered until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. p.31

When the Gentiles are drunken with iniquities and abominations they shall be visited with earthquake, storm, and fire. p.36

When the Lord tells the missionaries to come home he will preach a sermon of great destruction. p.37

When the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled there will be an uprooting of their governments and institutions. p.77

When we have laid the foundation for Zion and built the temple there we must be sent forth as missionaries to the Lamanites - not to the Gentiles, for their times will be fulfilled. p.108

Saints and friends in foreign lands to gather to America

The Saints will no remain in Gentile nations but will gather to Zion out of every nation. p.9

Mine elect shall be gathered from the four quarters of the earth. p.9

The Lord will tell his servants among the Gentile nation to come out of them for their times are fulfilled. p.23

There will be a gathering together on the land of Zion when the wrath of God shall be poured out upon the whole earth. p.58

The Gentiles will come here as a flowing stream when their nations crumble to ruin. p.61

When the Gentiles reject the Gospel and the upright withdraw from them, the nation will engage in frightful and bloody warfare. p.162-63

Judgement to be poured out

The Gospel is to be preached onto all nations and then comes the destruction of the wicked. 17-18

The arm of the Lord shall be revealed in power in the day the word of the Lord is taken from the Gentiles and turns to the Jews. p.31

When the Gospel is sealed among the Gentiles and it turns to the House of Isreal the judgements of God will back up the testimony of the Elders of the Church. p.31

Judgements by famine, sword, and pestilence will be poured out in this generation. p.31

Judgments are to be poured out and the missionaries called home before the saints return to Jackson County. p. 32, 85

Note: Judgements, as in destructions, come before we return to Jackson. Much judgement still must take place before our return.

Note: An interesting point is made about the missionaries coming home correlating with the times of the Gentiles being fulfilled. The gospel to the Jews comes next, and apparently, that mission, at least initially, is not performed by the missionaries (as they are called home when it is about to happen). Generally, the missionaries get so rejected in the Gentile nations, that God says its time for his destructions to begin. Consider how economic collapse can trigger the early stages of famine, and in such times, missionaries, who aren't going without purse and scrip, would need to come home.

Judgment will sweep the wicked off the land to prepare for the coming of the lost tribes from the north country. p.33, 49

Go among the Gentiles for the last time to seal up the testimony after your testimony cometh wrath and indignation. p.35-36

After your testimony comes earthquakes and the sea heaving itself beyond its bounds. p.36

When the Gentiles are drunken with iniquities and abominations they shall be visited with earthquake, storm, and fire. p.36

There will be men standing in the generation when the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled that will see an overflowing scourge; for a desolating sickness will cover the land. p.37-38

There will be a gathering together on the land of Zion when the wrath of God shall be poured out upon the whole earth. p.58

An inland empire for millions will be established in the mountains when the great day of judgments of God comes upon the earth. p.58

When the Saints return to Jackson County there will be no owners left to occupy the county. p.91

The Rocky Mountains have been designed to hide up the Saints in the last day, until the indignation of the Almighty be over. p.313

Wars of complete destruction

All nations are to be engaged in deadly war except the Latter-day Kingdom. p.8

The Saints will be gathered to Zion out of every nation. p.8

Iniquity shall abound and the love of many shall wax cold. p.8

The wars will be accompanied by famines, pestilences, and earthquakes. p.9

Wars will follow the withdrawing of Gods Spirit from the Gentile nations. p.8

Christ contrasts the two periods of war. p.8

Nephi, while expounding Isaiah's prophecies, contrasts the two periods of war. p.9-10

When the Lord tells the elders to "come home," nation will rise against nation and states will rise against states in our own land. p.37

When the times of Gentiles are fulfilled there will be an uprooting of their government and institutions. p.77

When the Gentiles reject the Gospel, and the upright withdraw from them, then nations will engage in frightful and bloody warfare. p.162-63

Internal wars in the United States

When the Lord tells the elders to "come home," nation will rise against nation and states will rise against states in our own land. p.37

It is not very far in the future till the Lord will lay his hand on this American nation and bring about internal war. p.50

Those who will not take up the sword against their neighbor during the internal ward must flee to Zion. p.51

When calamities come upon this nation the wicked will slay the wicked. p.52

A remnant of Jacob will be like a loin among the Gentiles when the cities and strong holds are cut off and God executes fury upon them such as they have not heard. p.57

When the nation shall be convulsed the Saints will stand forth as Saviors and redeem a ruined world in both a religious and political manner. p.76

When the Lord shall waste away this nation he will command this people to return to Missouri. p.87

When you can see this land bound with iron you many look toward Jackson county. p.87

The Saints will return to Jackson county defending themselves on the right and left as when they came into the west. p. 87-89

When this nation reaps the whirlwind, when he who will not take up the sword against his brother must flee to Zion, when the judgments which commence at the house of the Lord will have passed away, Utah will be undisturbed and be the most delightful place in all the Union. We will offer protection there. p.299-300

World-Wide warfare during the U.S internal wars

When the Lord tells the elders to "come home," nation will rise against nation and states will rise against states in our own land. p.37

People will be fleeing from state during the internal wars. It will mean the complete overthrow of this nation and the nations of Europe. p.56

Peace will be taken from the earth and there will be no peace except in the Rocky Mountains. p.55

When the nations shall be convulsed the Saints will stand forth as Saviors and redeem a ruined world in both a religious and political manner. p.76

When the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled there will be an uprooting of their governments and institutions. p.77

(Note: When the missionaries are called out of an area, beware impending destruction. One little foretaste of this happened when the missionaries left Germany just before WW2. The mission still had some Elders out, Joseph Fielding Smith prophesied that the war would not begin until all of their missionaries were gathered out. For reasons unknown to historians, Hitler launched his invasion of Poland a week later than planned. This is when we finally got our last missionaries out. THEN the war began! A terrific movie about this showing real bold faith of missionaries who helped in this gathering out process was recently released by Angel Studios titled 'Escape From Germany.')

Saints to gather to the mountains

Cache valley will be filled with tens of thousand of saints during or after the time when New York, Boston, and Albany are destroyed. p.44

(Note: The saints in these mountain areas would do well to prepare to shelter and preach to the thousands of refugees that will flood to them in forthcoming wars and disasters. Many prophecies of these refugees fleeing to the saints have been uttered. Remember also Joseph in Egypt as a salvation to the lands, and how the latter-day kingdom of Joseph will function similarly. There are also prophecies that the saints will want to be in this area where the Church moved to during these times.)

Those who will not take up the sword against their neighbors during the internal wars must flee to Zion. p.51

Peace will be taken from the earth and there will only be peace in the Rocky Mountains This will cause many to gather there. p.55

Let them who are among the Gentiles flee to Zion. p.58

There will be a gathering together on the land of Zion when the wrath of God shall be poured out upon the whole earth. p.58

An inland empire for millions will be established when the great day of judgements of God comes upon the earth. p.58

The Rocky Mountains have been designed to hide up the Saints in the last days, until the indignation of the Almighty is over. p.131

An inland empire will be established in the mountains to which millions will gather when the judgement of God come upon the earth. p.313

(Note: Many look forward to the 'exodus' to Missouri, and that'll come for some when the time is right, but many forget the gathering first to the Rocky Mountains, where some safety will exist during American wars and so forth. Remember in the Book of Mormon how they gathered to the center of the land during the famine.)

Famine during the internal wars

The pursuit of farming and agriculture will be neglected and people will think themselves well off it they can flee from city to city. p.52

You will be so numerous that you will be in danger of famine when many come to escape the calamities. p.64

(Note: When we talk about famine, it is likely better understood as an ongoing thing. After all, we have a famous 7-year famine in Genesis, and a famous 7-year famine in the Book of Mormon. We shouldn't be surprised if the last days hold a similar trial (and a similar path of deliverance for the faithful).)

Political kingdom of God to be established

When internal wars come we shall be obliged to have a government to preserve ourselves in unity and peace. p.54, 67

When the people shall have torn to shreds the Constitution of the U.S the elders will be found holding it up to the nations of the earth. p.69

The first principles must be preached to all nations before there can be a kingdom of God. p.73

When the nation shall be convulsed the Saints will stand forth as Saviors and redeem a ruined world in both a religious and political manner. p.76

(Note: Several teachings indicate that the kingdom of God is a separate entity from the Church of God. The former is about protecting rights of all mankind; the latter is about the spiritual salvation of the saints.)

Law of consecration to be established

Zion cannot be built up unless it is by the principles of the law of the celestial kingdom. p.93

There will be an approximation of the United Order here in the mountains. p.93-94

Let these laws be fulfilled after the redemption of Zion. p.94

The Saints will not be permitted to enter unless their hearts are prepared to honor the law. p.94

(Note: It is clear that we are not currently living the full law of consecration. This is something to look forward to.)

New Jerusalem to be established in Western Missouri

Judgments are to be poured out and the missionaries called **before** the Saints return to Jackson County. p.32

(Note: These judgements have not happened yet. America has yet to face the major judgements of God.)

Zion is to be redeemed after the Gospel is taken from the Gentiles and God brings it to the House of Israel. p.32

Jackson County will be purged and the evil doer cut off to prepare for the return of the Saints. p.45

When the Saints return to Jackson County they won't find so much as a yellow dog. p.45

(Note: See the analysis of Heber C. Kimball teachings to demonstrate this as a valid prophecy.)

God will Jackson County in judgement and there will be no owners left to occupy the country. p.45

The Saints are to be tried before Jackson County is swept clean. p.46

When the Lord shall waste away this nation he will command this people to return to Missouri. p.87

When you see this land bound with iron you may look towards Jackson County. p.87

The Saints will return to Jackson County defending themselves on the right and the left as when they came into the West. p.87-89

When the Saints return to Jackson County there will be no owners left to occupy the country. p.91

First, a Lamanite remnant will be converted; second, the city will be built; third, the Lamanites will be gathered in; and then the Lord will be in their midst. p.109

A chronological panorama of the gathering process. p.109-10

(Note: The New Jerusalem will expand from Missouri, and many faithful will remain in the west, as Brigham Young taught.)

Conversion of the Lamanites

The door for the establishing of the Gospel among the Lamanites will be open in the Rocky Mountains. p.90

The remnant of Joseph will come into the covenant in the days of the New Jerusalem. p.94-95

After Zion is redeemed and the New Jerusalem temple has been built, then we are to assist the Lamanites to gather in, and then Christ will come and his powers will be in your midst. p.107-08

When we have laid the foundations for Zion and built the temple there we must be sent forth as missionaries - not to the Gentiles, for their times will be fulfilled. We must gather the Lamanites after the city is built. p.108

(Note: This shift in focus to Lamanite missionary work will be most interesting, and probably highly successful.)

First, a Lamanite remnant will be converted; second, the city will be built; third, the Lamanites will be gathered in; and then the Lord will be in their midst. p.109

A chronological panorama of the gathering process. p.109-10

Ten Tribes come from the North

The ten tribes are to come after the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled and while the Jews are gathering to Jerusalem. p.32

Judgement will sweep the wicked off the land to prepare for the coming of the lost tribes from the north country. p.33, 49

The ten tribes and the scattered remnants of Isreal will look to the political kingdom of God p.78

A chronological panorama of the gathering process p.109-10

After the Church has been sanctified and the glory of the Lord has rested upon them the ten tribes will be revealed in the North p.117

(Note: Europeans migrating to America likely were a prequal to the fulfillment of the Ten Tribes' return.)

(Note: The location of the Ten Tribes is a matter of endless speculation. Joseph Smith scholar Hyrum Andrus taught that Joseph was so clear about them being together that there should be no argument on the subject. Joseph was the prophet after all. A good case could also be made for them being scattered. My view is basically that some are indeed scattered, but that some are certainly still together. So where are they? I've gather quotes from various brethren teaching about their mysterious northern location, be that hidden in the Earth, or, like the city of Enoch, above the Earth, and so on.)

Christ coming to the temple in the New Jerusalem

He will come after Joseph Smith is resurrected and long before he will destroy the wicked from off the face of the earth. p.85-86

After Zion is redeemed and the New Jerusalem temple has been built, then we are to assist the Lamanites to gather in, and then Christ will come and his powers will be in your midst. He won't come before the temple is constructed. p.107-08

After the New Jerusalem has been built and the Lamanites gathered the Lord will be in their midst. p.109

A chronological panorama of the gathering process. p.109-10

We will see the savior in the flesh in the temple but not till after the temple is built. p.117

After the building of the New Jerusalem has begun then the work will commence among the tribes which have been lost. p.117

The ten tribes will help build the New Jerusalem. p.117

The priesthood will see the Lord in the New Jerusalem temple before he comes in his glory. p.122

Calling of the 144,000

Twelve thousand from each of the tribes are to be sealed. p.121

Twelve thousand are to be selected from each of the ten tribes after they have been crowned with glory in the midst of Zion. This will probably be in the morning of the seventh thousand years. p.123-24

A series of plagues will come upon the earth following the choosing of the 144,000 and before the Battles of Armageddon. p.148-53

The ten tribes will linger in Zion for a good while and during that time there will be twelve thousand chosen from each tribe. p.182

(Note: The Ten Tribes must return before the calling of the 144,000 is complete.)

Removal of the Ten Tribes from Zion to Palestine

The ten tribes will linger in Zion for a good while and during that time there will be twelve thousand chosen from each tribe. p.182

The twelve tribes are to return to Palestine and rebuild the city and temple preparatory to the coming of the Lord. p.183

There won't be two nations divided but one nation, and David will be their king, and the sanctuary will be set in the midst of them. p.184

Johns prophesy that Israel would be gathered between the sixth plague and the Battle of Armageddon. p.148-53

Trumpets and Plagues of the Book of Revelation (Chapters 8 to 11)

The events in Revelation nine are to be accomplished after the opening of the seventh seal but before the coming of Christ. p.143

A series of plagues will come upon the earth following the choosing of the 144,000 and before the Battle of Armageddon. p.148-53

Universal Conflict

There will be one general revolution throughout the earth, the Jews fleeing to their own country. p.160

When the missionaries are called home there will be a desolating war that will lay the European nations in waste. p.161

There will be no nation of Gentiles that will not be engaged in deadly war, except the Latter-day Kingdom. When that day comes, the Jews will flee to Jerusalem. p.161

The fourth beast (Europe) will be slain and given to the burning flame. The lives of the rest of the beasts will be prolonged. p.163

After God visited and overthrown the nations he will gather out the tribes of Isreal and return them to their own land. p.183

The length of time involved shows that this war is separate from the Battle of Armageddon. p.105

Council at Adam-ondi-Ahman

I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit. p.167

The council will be preparatory to the coming in the clouds of glory of our Savior Jesus Christ. p.172

The council will be before Jesus comes in his glory. p.173-74

Wars, fires, pestilence and earthquakes will continue until the Ancient of days comes, then judgement will be given to the Saints. p.174

Gathering to the New Jerusalem after the universal conflict

Many people will say, "Come, let us be subject to her laws." That will be after the Lord has broken up the nations and wasted them away. p.177-78

Many cities will be left vacant when their inhabitants are swept off. Their houses will remain until Zion shall enlarge the place of her tents. p.178

Mission to the House of Israel (second period of missionary labor)

God will send the Gospel to every Gentile nation before he will permit his servants to go to the scattered remnants of Israel. p.20

Blindness is happened to Israel until the fulness of the Gentiles be come in. p.20

The last warning will be taken first to the Gentiles and then to House of Israel after Gentile nations reject the Gospel. p.22

When the Gentile nations reject the Gospel the missionaries will go to the scattered remnants of the House of Israel. Then shall Jerusalem be rebuilt and the temple reared. p.23

The last shall be first and the first last. p.23

The Gospel shall go to the Gentiles first and then turn unto the Hews. p.31

The Gospel shall be taken from the Gentiles and given to the House of Israel before Zion redeemed. p.32

A chronological panorama of the gathering process. p.109-10

When the Jews shall come to a knowledge of their redeemer they shall be gathered. p.138

When Christ appears on the Mount of Olives then shall they know that he is Lord. p.139

Gathering of the tribes of Irael to Palestine

The subjugation of Japan was to take place before the gathering of the tribes of Israel to Palestine. p.5

The Jews will remain scattered among the nations until the times the Gentiles are fulfilled. p.24, 31, 127

After the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled the tribes will return. p.32

A chronological panorama of the gathering process. p.109-10, 128

After the Gentiles have received the gospel and have hardened their hearts against the Lord he will remember his covenant with Israel and gather them. p.128

When the Jews shall come to a knowledge of their redeemer they shall be gathered. p.138

When Christ appears on the Mount of Olives then shall they know that he is the Lord. p.139

There will be one general revolution throughout the earth, the Jews fleeing to their own country.

p.160

There will be no nation of Gentiles that will not be engaged in deadly war except the Latter-day Kingdom. When that day of universal war comes, the Jews will flee to Jerusalem. p.161

After God has visited and overthrown the nations he will gather out the tribes of Israel and return them to their own land. p.183

After the Kingdom of God has spread upon the face of the earth and the sin is turned to darkness, then the Devil will gather up millions of people to Armageddon to destroy the Jews after they have gathered. p.201-02

(Note: The pieces are moving on this topic; with the gathering to the state of Israel upon its establishment in 1949, no one should be mistaken that the end times are upon us.)

Rule of David the prince

He shall build the temple of the Lord. p.179

He shall call a nation that he does not know (the gathering of Israel). p.180

He will approach the Lord when he appears in Jerusalem. p.181

He will build the temple which will stand before the Battle of Armageddon. p.184

There won't be two nations divided but one nation, and David will be their king and the sanctuary will be set in the midst of them. p.184

(Note: Some overly focus on this and speculate as to whether it is Christ, Joseph Smith, or someone unknown. I don't see much use in such speculation, and I have seen it take some off into strange paths.)

Jerusalem temple to be built

When the Gentile nations reject the Gospel the missionaries will go to the scattered remnants of the House of Israel. Then shall Jerusalem be rebuilt and the temple reared. p.23

The 144,000 sealed are the priests who should be anointed to administer in the daily sacrifice. p.125

The twelve tribes are to return to Palestine and rebuild and all this must be done before the Son of Man will make his appearance. p.190

(Note: Some dispute as to whether this will be a Jewish or Latter-day Saint temple. Perhaps there will be both. Perhaps a Jewish temple will be

converted upon the conversion of the Jews. The BYU Jerusalem center was a monumental achievement, but more is to come.)

Battle of Armageddon

A series of plagues will come upon the earth following the choosing of the 144,000 and before the Battle of Armageddon. p.148-53

In the days on David's rule shall Judah be saved. p.185

After the kingdom of God has spread upon the face of the earth and the sun is turned to darkness, then the Devil will gather up millions of people to Armageddon to destroy the Jews after they have gathered. p.201-02

The length of time involved shows that this battle is separate from the universal conflict. p.205

Surely in the day when Gog shall attack there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel and the mountains shall be thrown down. p.209

Christ's Coming on the Mount of Olives

Judah must return, Jerusalem and the temple be rebuilt, and all this must be done before the Son of Man will make his appearance. p.190

The day of the Lord is near in the valley of decision. p.202

At the crisis of the Battle of Armageddon when Jerusalem is being ravished Christ will appear on the Mount of Olives. p.208-09

The Jews will see Christ's wounds and then shall they know He is the Lord. p.215

Mission to the Heathen Nations (third period of missionary labor)

(Note: Heathen nations are defined as those which do not have Christianity. Crowther and others speak of this. Eventually, the gospel will thrive everywhere, but the time is not yet. In recent history and even today Christians are often heavily persecuted in these nations, including regular slaughter.)

After the heathen nations have seen my coming like a whirlwind I will send people to declare my glory unto them. p.220-22

Many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord in Jerusalem. p.222

Final Mission to all Mankind (fourth period of missionary labor)

After Jerusalem has put on the garments of the priesthood, then shall a cry go forth: go ye out from that which is unclean. p.223

(Note: There appears to be some debate as to whether the coming of Christ on the Mount of Olives is far distant from His coming in glory to the world. My understanding is that the two comings are close together.)

Christ's Coming in Glory

Christ's coming will be at least a generation after the Battle of Armageddon for the sons also of them that afflicted thee shall come bending into thee. p.216-18

When Christ comes the wicked will not as yet have been destroyed. p.234

When the veil which covers the earth is taken off all flesh shall see me together. p.237

(Note: Crowther's book takes you further into the prophetic future. My work on the subject generally stops here, taking us to Christ's return and leaving it at that.)

Resurrection of the Righteous

This resurrection will take place in conjunction with Christ's coming in glory. p.228-33

(Note: The dead in Christ will rise from their graves, and the living saints will be transformed to a higher physical state as they await their eventual

resurrection.)

The Millennium

The final judgment will take place more than a thousand years after the council at Adam-ondi-Ahman. p.174

When Christ comes the enmity of man and of all flesh shall cease from before my face. p.243

The angel laid hold on the Devil and bound him a thousand years. p.248

Battle of Gog and Magog

When the thousand years are expired Satan shall be loosed and shall gather the nations of the earth to battle. p.269

The battle of God and Magog will be after the millennium. p.269

When Satan is loosed again for a little while, when the thousand yeads shall be ended, it will be through mankind departing from the principles of God. p.269-70

When the period called the Millennium has passed away, Satan will again be loosed. p.273

There will be a great division of the people at the end of the thousand years. p.271

Resurrection of the Unjust

Before the earth shall pass away shall all the dead wake. p.27

Satan's hosts will attack the beloved city, then the trump will bring forth the sleeping nations, and Christ will appear on his white throne. Then the heaven and earth will flee away. p.274

And these are the east of the dead, and they live not again until the thousand years are ended, neither again, until the end of the earth. p.275

After men have become immortal they must appear at the judgement seat. p.277-78

Final Judgment

The final judgment will take place more than a thousand years after the Council at Adam-ondi-Ahman. p.174

Satan's hosts will attack the beloved city, then the trump will bring forth the sleeping nations, and Christ will appear on his white throne. Then the heaven and earth will flee away. p.274

The wicked are reserved in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day, which shall come at the end of the earth. p.276

After men have become immortal they must appear at the judgment seat. p.277-78

Dissolution and Resurrection of Earth

Satan's hosts will attack the beloved city, then the trump will bring forth the sleeping nations, and Christ will appear on his white throne. Then the heaven and earth will flee away. p.274

When this white throne appears the earth and heaven will flee away. p.274

Before the earth shall pass away Michael shall sound his trump and then shall all the dead awake. p.274, 276

And these are the east of the dead; and they live not again until the thousand years are ended, neither again, until the end of the earth. p.275

The wicked are reserved in chains of darkness until the judgment of the great day, which shall come at the end of the earth. p.276

When the earth has become like a sea of glass and has been placed in the cluster of the celestial kingdom, then the Saints will receive their everlasting inheritances. p.283-84

As the earth passes through its final change the old and New Jerusalem will be caught up into heaven. These two cities will descend on the glorified earth. p.286-87

War Will Come Abundantly to All Nations

(For references, see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future.")

Bishop Joseph L. Wirthlin: The D&C prophecy about how slaves rise against masters and marshal for war also will apply to people in Russia and China who are captives of their atheist governments. p3

Harold B Lee, Parley P Pratt: Japan subjugation before Israel to Palestine. P5

Note: Apparently fulfilled in WWII.

Elder Levi Edgar Young: These dark days in scripture of darkness covering the earth are to bring us closer to God. p7

Orson Pratt: 1st are wars to prepare people to hear the gospel, then wars of utter destruction. p7

Orson Pratt: After we have fully preached to Gentiles, they will stop persecuting Saints in their midst, and heavy war with each other will commence. Everywhere but the latter-day Kingdom of God will be at war. p7-8



Joseph Smith: The Independent American party will be created from the Republican and Democratic parties. The U.S. will spend its strength warring abroad. Others will want to divide it. USA citizens stand against it, swearing to sustain the United States on the blood of their forefathers. 1/2 of the US army will die in the conflict against the foreign nations who want to split up the US, and then the mountain boys of God will rush in and save it from ruin. Americans will be thankful and will want from then on only to receive men who can talk with God. p10

Ezra Taft Benson: Unless we make communism treason, our nation will be destroyed. p11

Ezra Taft Benson: The worldwide secret conspiracy that has risen in our day to fulfill these prophecies is easily identified. p12

Joseph Smith: The Chinese will attack the Western USA, an area beyond the Rocky Mountains, if they don't take great care. p13

Joseph Smith: When Russia (the bear) attacks Britain (the lion), then the end is near. p13

Missionary Work Among the Gentiles



(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Crowther: There are four stages. Each is an era of missionary work with types of war associated therewith:

1. Gospel to the Gentile: preparatory wars

2. Gospel to Israel: complete destruction wars

3. Gospel to Heathen nations: just after Armageddon

4. Gospel to all: Immediately before and during the Millennium p18

Orson Pratt: Gentile nation = Christendom nation; Heathen nation = those which have not accepted Christianity. p18-19

D&C 45:28: the 'times of the Gentiles' is when the gospel is restored in 1831. p19

Orson Pratt: After preaching to the Gentiles, we will preach specifically to Israel. p20; p22

Orson Pratt: when they shut down our meeting houses, the times of the Gentiles are near their end. p22

Note: Was the COVID shutdown of churches fulfilling this? Perhaps, or perhaps, it was a foretaste. It is a sign that the Gentiles are done with religion.

Joseph Fielding Smith: The time of Gentiles is almost fulfilled. We are in a transition period into Israel time. p24

Orson Pratt: After the Gentiles' time, no official messengers will be sent to them. It will then be official Israel time, but Gentiles can still come of their own accord. p24.

D&C 63:32: God is angry with the wicked. p24

Wilford Woodruff: The people of Joseph Smith's Day were as wicked as the Jews' day at the time of Christ and 1000 times more. p25

Crowther: crime is 3x more than the FBI reports; it is going up; they are getting younger and more violent. Usually, they're not reported. p25

Heber C Kimball: Extravagance and speculation by Saints in SLC will occur, and then persecution will come. p26

Brigham Young: LDS in the mountains dress as Babylon; only leaving tents could save them; it is better to live with Indians in wigwams than dwell in Babylon and miss the spiritual blessings. p26-7



Heber C Kimball: SLC will be classed as one of the wicked cities of the world. p26

Note: With Utah as a global leader in conducting online gay marriages, a gay mayor of SLC, naked women on the highway billboards, and every manner of vice readily available, not to mention dark deals with the deep state, this is certainly fulfilled.

Brigham Young: When in poverty, no worries for the Saints, but when the Lord opens great oil reserves in Utah, worry for them. p27

Joseph Smith: the gospel to Gentiles, then Jews, then to heathen nations and the house of Joseph. p31

D&C: We will be gathered in after the time of the Gentiles is fulfilled. p31

Wilford Woodruff: Gospels to Gentiles, then the big destructions begin. p31

D&C 90:9-10: Gospel to Gentiles, then Jews and all Israel, then heathens. p31

Brigham Young: There will be a time of wrath of God upon the whole earth; at this time, it is at the Rocky Mountains, there the Saints will be hid. p31

Heber C Kimball: Gospel to Gentiles, then to Jews, then Joseph Smith appears, and others, and then goes to New Jerusalem. p32

Orson Pratt: Before Zion is redeemed, the gospel must be taken from Gentiles and given to Israel. p32

Joseph Smith: Destructions prepare the way for the 10 tribes to return from the north. p33

God Will Pour Out Judgments



(For references, see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 88:84: The major destruction time happens after the time of the Gentiles. p35

D&C 88:89-91: Fear to come upon all when the calamities come. p36

D&C 88:88: After missionary testimony comes destruction. p36

2 Ne. 27:1: Gentiles are in America and elsewhere. Destruction to them all.

D&C 87:6: Full end of all nations is decreed. p37

Brigham Young: Whole cities etc. will be destroyed after the missionaries are called home. P37

Orson Pratt: Thousands will be left unburied in the US from so swift destruction. p39

Orson Pratt: The judgment is sure to come, not a mere chance. p39

US President Kennedy: Our water is polluted and there is not enough water in general; 80% of diseases are from bad water; 1.2 billion do not have portable water as of 1994. p41

Commonweal article in 1994: Predicted 2030 water drought in the USA. p42

New York Times in 1994: 4 million under 5 years old died in 3rd world countries from respiratory disease because of pollution. Also 4 billion from diarrhea. These are killing more than cancer. p42

Brigham Young and Wilford Woodruf: New York will be destroyed by earthquake, Boston by sea, Albany by fire. p44

Orson Pratt: New York and others will have no inhabitants. p44

D&C 84:114-5 New York, Boston, Albany, these to be destroyed if not repent. p44

Wilford Woodruf: New York to be a mass of ruins, people will be in awe; houses remain but are left desolate. We will reminisce about the days before New York, Boston, and Albany were destroyed. Brigham Young said this saying of Woodruf is prophecy and will be fulfilled. p45

Wilford Woodruf: Judgments of God come to Babylon and Zion. p46

Wilford Woodruf: Only righteous priesthood have right to protection. p47

Brigham Young: The LDS if 3/4 good, good. If 1/2 good, destructions. If good the LDS as a people will get more to eat, wear, and better homes to live in. p47



Internal Wars Leading to the Collapse of the US Government

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Joseph Smith: The Saints and the world will have little peace from hence forth. p49

Orson Pratt: Civil war 2 in the US will stop farming and manufacturing; fighting will be between neighborhood vs. neighborhood. Civil War 1 was nothing compared to what this will be. p50

Joseph Smith: The whole government of the US will become one big mob. p51

Orson Pratt said in 1868: Many 100,000's to be destroyed in civil wars in USA. p51

Orson Pratt: Farming neglected as people flee city to city in an upcoming civil war. p52

Wilford Woodruf: In USA natural disasters and plagues while wicked slay the wicked until the wicked are wasted away. p52

Joseph Smith: If the USA does not hear the petition of the LDS, it will be totally obliterated - not a potshard left. p52-3

Wilford Woodruf: Destruction awaits the USA, and prophets should warn. p53

Moses Thatcher (Apostle): A secret band will sap the life from this nation and it will fall. p53

Joseph Smith: US Supreme Government will cease to exist, people will run from place to place and families will turn on each other. p53

Orson Pratt: Government end and we (the LDS Church) make our own. p54

Brigham Young: Strife and opposition within communities is the knife that will cut down the USA. p54

Orson Pratt: LDS Make their own government as USA falls. It will be based on US Constitution. p54

Orson Pratt: Eventually fall of USA and Europe and in them all business cease from the chaos. p55

Joseph Smith: All who want peace and won't use the sword against their neighbor will go to the West USA. p55

Wilford Woodruf: Just as Book of Mormon peoples destroyed, so SHALL it be again here. p55

3 Ne. 21:12-21; 20:15-17: A remnant of Jacob (usually refers to Lamanites or the house of Israel) will tread down the Gentiles if they don't repent. They'll destroy the witchcraft, vehicles, cities, priestcrafts, graves, and we thus won't worship the works of our hands any more. These will happen at an unheard of level. p56-57

Crowther: Apparently Lamanites rise against the Gentiles when end of time of Gentiles and before Israel gathered. Thus it seems to happen at the time of the US internal wars. p57

D&C 88:84-92 says times of Gentiles, then destructions, then a voice calls us to go out to meet the bridegroom. p58

D&C 133:8-12 says Elders gather Gentiles, then Jews, then a call to go meet the bridegroom, and a call for the Gentiles to flee to Zion. p58

D&C 115:6 Gather to Zion and her stakes for a refuge when wrath is poured out over all earth. p58

Brigham Young: When the great day of judgments of God comes, millions of the righteous will gather in the valleys of the mountains. p58

Brigham Young: Everyone will be against everyone; these mountains are the best place for the Saints to hide till all the indignation is over. There is no place better suited in all earth's history or geography. p58

Brigham Young: "**An inland Empire will be established in these valleys of the mountains, which will be a place of refuge for millions of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgments** of God comes upon the earth, and the **righteous come here for safety**. Our people will go East..., West, North and South, but the day will come, when they will be **glad to come back**. We will be **shut out from the rest of the world**." (Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock. (Note: Researcher Duane Crowther, when citing this quote in his Prophecy book on page 58 of version 39 of his book, states that he has a copy of notarized statements pertaining to the validity of this and other prophecies recorded by Bullock.))



Brigham Young: The battles will even be Christians against Christians; all who won't fight will need to come to Zion to escape the fighting. p58

Orson Pratt: LDS Missionaries will be sent to all the world declaring there is a place in the heart of USA where peace and refuge from the major destructions can be found. p59

Brigham Young: Jordan River area through Salt Lake will have over 3 million living there. p59

J. Golden Kimball said**,** "I prophesy that before many of you go to the other side **you will have a burning desire in your hearts to return to the place where the leaders of the Church have counseled the Saints to settle, and you will give anything** in the world to be able to live there." (President J. Golden Kimball of the First Council of Seventy, Conference Report, October, 1926, p. 58.) (Crowther sites this on p59)

Brigham Young: 3 Million will live west of the Jordan River area. p59 (Note: Currently in 2016, ~3 million is the population of all of Utah.)

Wilford Woodruf: 10,000's Will live in Logan. p60

Joseph Smith: When wars come we will have to flee to Zion, those who don't go when they have a chance to go will be afflicted by the devil. Gentiles will flow to us a constant stream then and our doors will be constantly open to them. p61

Orson Pratt: As a flowing stream goes continually, so shall the Gentiles come to us in Zion, seeing God protects Zion and that there is no safety in their nations. Their nations will be tottering and crumbling to ruin. They'll come not to be baptized, but for safety, having heard also our officers are for peace, and our tax collectors are righteous. p61

Note: Given the context of other teachings about the inland empire in the Rocky Mountains, we can assume that 'Zion' in the two above statements

refers not to Missouri, as the Missourian Zion doesn't come until after the wars, but to the preparatory-Zion in the west.

Heber C. Kimball said, "I am very thankful that so many of the brethren have come in with handcarts; my soul rejoiced, my heart was filled and grew as big as a two-bushel basket. Two companies have come through safe and sound. Is this the end of it? No; there will be millions on millions that will come much in the same way, only they will not have handcarts, for they will take their bundles under their arms, and their children on their backs, and under their arms and flee" (Source: Journal of Discourses, 4:106). (Crowther sites this on p.62)

George Q. Cannon: The Latter-day Saints will be the people to maintain Constitutional government in this land. More of the prophecy of not take sword against neighbor need flee to Zion is yet to be fulfilled. The going away from the Constitution will cause people to be compelled to flee to the Mormons though they are hated now, and this fleeing to escape civil broils and strife. p62

Brigham Young: Eventually there will be a gulf between the righteous and the wicked so they cannot trade with each other and national intercourse will cease. p62

Heber C Kimball: Trade your silks and fine things for grain and other needs, for we will have to depend on our own resources, for soon the curtain will be dropped between us and the rest of the USA. When that time comes you'll wish you had made your own clothing earlier. God requires that we go into home manufacturing. p63

Orson Pratt: Gate will be shut; we won't be able to do foreign imports. Have your own productions. p.63

Joseph Smith: England (and France some also) will be neutral until the USA is so terrid they will try to step in to stop the bloodshed. It will seem they rule USA. USA will have many claiming government power till it has none at all. In the Rocky Mountains, there will be peace because of a cordon band of the white horse (the church) and the red horse (the Lamanites?) p.63

Joseph Smith: So many, danger of famine. (apparently speaking of the time of the US internal wars and gathering to the west, how there will be famine there because of so many flocking there for refuge) p.64



Heber C Kimball: They'll come with mere bundles and children coming to us for bread to eat. p.64

Heber C Kimball: One dreamed that given the choice between a bag of gold and a cat, a person would choose the cat as you can eat a cat. p.64

Heber C. Kimball: Risk of Saints famine since so many flee to west. Store extra food for them. p.64

Wilford Woodruf: We will want bread; if we are wise we will store enough for us and those who come to us for food. p65

Brigham Young: No famine upon this people if we do right. p65



The Political Kingdom of God Will Be Established

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Orson Pratt: They'll overthrow USA, we'll need our own government, all else will be mobs, we will base it on the US Constitution. p67

George Q Cannon: The Church of God is separate from the Kingdom of God. p68

Brigham Young: US Constitution won't be destroyed, at crucial time, the LDS "will hold it inviolate", and "save it from destruction". p68

Orson Hyde: Joseph Smith said if the Constitution will be saved, it will be by this people. Hyde says if we are righteous, God will give us a Constitution. p68

John Taylor: When US Constitution is torn to shreds, this people will hold it up to all nations and proclaim liberty for all. p69

John Taylor: US Constitution is a design for a new world. p69

Orson Pratt: The US Constitution is a stepping stone toward a higher government where God chooses the leaders and is based on divine laws. p69

D&C 65:2, 5-6: The Kingdom of God must go forth before the Kingdom of heaven can. p70 ("…may the kingdom of God go forth, that the kingdom of heaven may come,…")

Brigham Young: Joseph Smith organized the Kingdom of God completely and fully a few months before his death. It has its own constitution and officers which will be operating in the future. p70

History of the Church: A council of 50 made for the kingdom of God. p70

History of the Church: The council of 50 isn't part of the church, it is for political things and its members need not be LDS. It can't organize the church, only the Priesthood can do that. The Council of 50 sometimes is called the General Council. p70

Brigham Young: The Kingdom of God is organized but won't be in operation till the Lord sees fit. p70

Duane Crowther (author): The Kingdom of God like polygamy was source of antagonism for the LDS and Utah and hence is discontinued until needed. p72

Brigham Young and George Q Cannon: Religious people can be a part of the political body which makes laws in the Kingdom of God. p72

Brigham Young: The Kingdom of God is a republican form of government. The USA government represents theocratic government more than any other nation except with Israel elected a king. p73

John Taylor: Church of God must be here before Kingdom of God (political) comes, for it can only exist with a people who have the spirit of revelation. p73

Brigham Young: When we say theocracy is to come we mean its officers have the priesthood. p73

George Q Cannon: The Kingdom of God will be to protect the rights of all people not just the LDS. p74

Parley P Pratt: The political Kingdom of God will start small like a mustard seed and be in the mountains where a majority of Gods people are.

Daniel H Wells: God will give the political Kingdom of God to the Saints when they've proven themselves capable of running it, having done well in every trial. p76

John Taylor: When the nations are convulsed we are to redeem them politically as saviors and finally redeem a ruined world. p76

John Taylor: The Latter-day Saints will rule politically. One by one the nations will come against it and fall. p77

Parley P Pratt: The political Kingdom of God will come as other nations are falling. p77

Statement from The Quorum of the Twelve Apostles: The time will come that as political Kingdom of God grows, all nations will either be for or against it. None will be neutral. Thus there will become a 1 political and religious standard - people will join and take lively interest with the Latter-day Saints, or they'll do all in your power to stop them. p77

Joseph Smith: England, Germany, Norway, Denmark, Sweden, Switzerland and Holland, these have blood of Israel in them and will submit to the Kingdom of God. England will be the last to do so. p78

Parley P Pratt: The 10 Tribes know the prophecy of Abraham that in their seed will all the earth be blessed, and they will look to the spiritual and political kingdom of God as the group they will go to. It is there that the promise will be fulfilled. p78

Brigham Young: Jesus Christ will rule all nations of earth by the Kingdom of God. The centers for this kingdom will be found in Zion and the Old Jerusalem. p78

Orson Pratt: USA and all other governments will end and the Kingdom of God will rule all. The nucleus of that government is formed and is from God. Also all will respect this government and obey it. Its law will go forth from Zion to all like how now Washington DC sends the law to all USA. p79

Charles W Penrose: The Kingdom of God will rule all earth and the Latter-day Saints will rule it. All other kingdoms will be broken, like Nebuchadnezzar's dream. p80

Establishment of the New Jerusalem

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 103:15-17: A Moses-like man to lead Israel out of bondage is to come. This will be for the redemption of Zion. p83

Orson Pratt: We know not who that man (referring to D&C 103:15-17) will be but that he will lead us as our fathers were in the wilderness. This Moses figure will lead us to Missouri. Also angles and Jesus will lead Latter-day Saints to Missouri. (This statement was made AFTER the Saints were in the Western US). p84

Orson Pratt: The Moses man bringing Latter-day Saints to Missouri may be yet the slain Joseph Smith. p84

Erastus Snow: Joseph Smith and Hyrum Smith will help prepare the way in Zion and her stakes and temples and will be resurrected and help the resurrection happen. p85

Erastus Snow: Jesus Christ will appear in his temple and teach his servants and this long before the destruction of the wicked. p86

Heber C Kimball: Things will get so bad that the Latter-day Saints will call on God day and night. Then Joseph Smith and others will come and help take the faithful to Missouri. They'll help build that holy city the New Jerusalem. p86

Orson Pratt: A march of tens of thousands of Latter-day Saints will march to Missouri as a group; there will be a pillar of fire by night and cloud by day with them, and the voice of the Lord heard. They will frighten all nations as a body the Saints will return there after a few go ahead to purchase more land. An army of angels will protect them on the journey. p86-87

Orson Pratt: When the Lord is about to lay waste to the USA, he will call his people back to New Jerusalem. p87

Orson Pratt: After a few go ahead to prepare the way and purchase some land in Missouri, the LDS will go there as a body, the Lord going with them. p87

Joseph Smith: Angels of heaven will protect the Latter-day Saints in their return to Zion. p87

Orson Pratt: The time the LDS will go to Missouri is when the USA is in ruin. p87

Joseph Smith: When you see this land (USA) bound with a yoke of iron, you may look to Jackson County Missouri. (referring to this being the time that we will gather there to build the New Jerusalem). p87

Wilford Woodruf: Many women with bundles will go by foot to the mountains. p87

Joseph F. Smith: There will be much peril on the journey to Missouri, ever fending off foes from taking your cows and family. They will not go by modern transportation nor railroad, but herding animals along the way. The success of the journey may only be seen by the children of who embarked. It might be not as visible to outsiders that God is helping. Most of the men will be gone (Note: from war probably). Many will not understand that God is who brings them. p87-89

Orson Pratt: The majority of the Latter-day Saints will return as a great people to Missouri and do so in peace. p90 (Note: This statement is controversial, we know many righteous will remain in the Rocky Mountain

corridor they've worked to settle, as Brigham Young taught. Brigham points out that we won't all fit in Missouri, though it could be a larger area centered in Missouri. Eventually all of what's left of America is cleansed and becomes Zion, including the west.)

Brigham Young: Many of the Saints will stay in the west where they've built homes rather than going to Missouri. P90

Door for establishment of the gospel among Lamanites will be in the Rocky Mountains. p90

Orson Pratt: Though not all the Latter-day Saints will be consolidated into one body to leave the west mountains all as one body, there will be a future time when many hundreds of the Latter-day Saints will be consolidated as a body and go to the eastern parts of Kansas and western Missouri to settle. p90-91

Orson Pratt: The majority of the LDS will immigrate to Missouri not staying in Utah. p91

Heber C. Kimball: Those who get to make the journey to Missouri will be those who are most worthy and most prepared, those who "do right and honor their calling" p91 (Note: There will also be plenty of righteous who stay in the west, as Brigham discussed.)

Heber C Kimball: There will be not so much as a yellow dog to wag its tail in Missouri, it will be swept clean. p91

Wilford Woodruf: At the time the New Jerusalem cornerstone is to be put in place, Missouri and Illinois will be totally desolate, a complete desert with no one living there. p91 (Note: Whether this refers to the big cities of Missouri, or also the rural areas, I don't know. It seems that the saints will have to take shelter in the west before taking shelter in the east.)

Journal of Discourses: Those who live well the law of consecration, using the Lord's property well, get an eternal inheritance. p92

Orson Pratt: When we return to Missouri the law of consecration will be immediately in force; no one will be allowed to get property from the Church there unless they commit to consecrating it to the trust of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. p92

Orson Pratt: The Latter-day Saints will be the richest people on earth; they'll have plenty of money to buy plenty of land around Missouri and thereabouts, building many cities and the headquarters in Jackson County. p93

Joseph Smith: The Latter-day Saints won't think there'll be time to build the New Jerusalem temple, but with all the help we will be receiving it will go up very fast, and we will have plenty of money to do it, and plenty of craftsmen. p93

Orson Pratt: An approximation of the law of **consecration** to be lived in the **Rocky** Mountains, **later** it will be filled in **Missouri**. p93 (Note: Remember there were economic cooperatives in the west, some did quite well, eventually they were discontinued since the saints weren't ready for it.)

Orson Pratt: In Missouri, when Zion is redeemed, the law of consecration will be lived. p94

Orson Pratt: Part of the Lord's storehouse to go toward building New Jerusalem, temples, farming tools, and books for the remnants of Joseph, to make it as near perfect a place as possible. p94

Joseph Smith intended that the cities built by the Latter-day Saints would fill the whole world. p95

Wilford Woodruf: In the future we will see that all the visions Joseph Smith had about the New Jerusalem and its structure and the stakes of Zion will be fulfilled. p95

Joseph Smith spoke of the New Jerusalem plan, that in the middle of it, there would be temples and city buildings, and people living not more than six blocks from such. As the population increased, more similar plots would be built in adjoining areas. The temples will have 24 sections and each will serve a part of the Priesthood leadership. p95-96

History of the Church 1:359: Names of the temples of New Jerusalem will be thus:
for building numbers 10 11 and 12: House of the Lord, for the Presidency of the High and most Holy Priesthood, after the order of Melchizedek, which was after the order of the Son of God, upon Mount Zion, City of the New Jerusalem. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.

for building numbers 7 8 and 9: The Sacred **Apostolic** Repository, for the use of the **Bishop**. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 4 5 and 6: The Holy **Evangelical** House, for the High Priesthood of the Holy Order of God. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 1 2 and 3 The House of the Lord, for the **Elders** of Zion, an Ensign to the Nations. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 22 23 and 24: House of the Lord for the Presidency of the High Priesthood after the Order of **Aaron**, a Standard for the People. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 19 20 and 21: House of the Lord, the Law of the Kingdom of Heaven, and Messenger to the People; for the Highest Priesthood after the Order of **Aaron**. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 16 17 and 18: House of the Lord for the **Teachers** in Zion, Messenger to the Church. HOLINESS TO THE LORD.
for building numbers 13 14 15: House of the Lord for the **Deacons** in Zion, Helps in **Government**. HOLINESS TO THE LORD. (p96)

Orson Pratt: The New Jerusalem will have 24 buildings, and those joined in the middle by arches, all in circular layout. These buildings will be for Priesthood administrative purposes. Around that there will be meeting houses for the Saints to gather to on Sabbath days. p97

Orson Pratt: The Lord will raise a servant to help with the New Jerusalem. p98

John Taylor: The New Jerusalem will have multiple cities. The Lord will guide the architecture of it; it is to surpass what we could make. It will be a city prepared to last forever. When the Zion from above comes down, this city will be the Zion that goes up and associates with the other Zion. p98

Heber C. Kimball: In Jackson County Missouri, historic Church leaders will be there in the flesh helping lay out the lands of our inheritance. They will also be at the grand council of God at Jerusalem, and the Church of the Firstborn. Some of these individuals will be Joseph Smith, Hyrum Smith, Brigham Young, Kimball, Wells, David, and Parley. p99

Brigham Young: The Lord won't have the angels be who do the manual labor of building the New Jerusalem; we will have to do it. We must rely on God so he can do it through us. If we don't rely on God it won't be possible and we won't have the privilege. p99

3 Ne. 21:23 Speaks of people helping to build the New Jerusalem. p99

Crowther: It seems that the New Jerusalem will take a good amount of time to make in the process of becoming a metropolis. First the Latter-day Saints will make it, and the ten tribes who return to there, then we in larger scale preach to the Lamanites which results in their coming in large numbers to help build it, then with the USA government falls, the good folks among the Gentiles will flee to it and their help will in added in great numbers. p100

Orson Pratt: It's the Lamanites who will have the privilege of building the New Jerusalem for they have the blood of Israel in them, we will be auxiliary help to them. p100

Joseph Fielding Smith: It's not the Lamanites who'll lead in building the New Jerusalem, the passages of 3 Nephi which people use to teach that don't seem through on their conclusions. It says that the remnant of Jacob and the seed of Joseph will do it. Jacob is Israel. Joseph is Ephraim and Manasseh. It is them, **Ephraim and Manasseh, who are at the head** to bless the rest of the House of Israel. The Gentles in this land were designed to be a scourge to the Lamanites, then nursing fathers to them. The scourging is done, and the nursing fathers part is now beginning. The Gentiles are promised that if they would repent they would get the fullness of the gospel. But any nation where the Gentiles don't repent, the fullness of the gospel will be withdrawn from them. These passages speaking of Gentiles refer to Gentiles in all lands. These passages speak about the remnant of Jacob, which refers to all the House of Israel. p101

Proclamation of the Twelve Apostles: **We command all kings and nations of earth to join the Church and send your treasures here for the building up of the kingdom of God**. **The only salvation that you Gentiles will find is here in the Kingdom of God**. There is only one Lord, and he will rule as king of all the earth. You must come and worship at the same altar as Israel for your salvation. p102

Orson Pratt: When the Latter-day Saint people settle Kansas and Missouri areas, we will have many schools and universities and farmers and storehouses, much frugal industry, and we will live densely populated there, not one person per every 6 miles. They will have their orchards, fruit trees, fields of grain, beautiful houses with shade trees, etc. They will come from many nations of earth, and from various parts of the LDS. People will recognize that this area is a habitation of the LDS. p103

John Taylor: There will be a temporal Kingdom of God. Zion will become the praise of the whole earth; the LDS will build up magnificent cities which will be the pride and glory of the whole earth. We will have most fine and expensive clothing, most magnificent buildings, most beautiful gardens, and will be the most rich and intellectual people of the whole earth. The Latter-day Saints will excel in literature, science, arts, and manufactures. p104



Series of Events: Lamanite Conversion, Zion Redeemed & Built, Missionaries Bring People to Zion, God is in Zion, 10 Tribes, 144,000

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Orson Pratt: We begin building New Jerusalem before we do a major missionary fleet to gather the Lamanites (not the Gentiles) p108

Orson Pratt: After the city of New Jerusalem is built, missionaries go for the Lamanites, and bring them to Jackson on a 5,000-8,000 mile trek from South America too. p108

Benjamin F Johnson said that Joseph Smith said: A path from South America to New Jerusalem center stake of Zion will be made. p109

Orson Pratt taught this order of events: 1. Lamanite remnant converted. 2. Zion redeemed. Believers help build New Jerusalem. 3. missionaries gather all dispersed people of the Lord to the New Jerusalem from out of all of "this continent". 4. Gods power and God will be in their midst. p109

Orson Pratt: Jackson County will be the nucleus of Zion, and as the Lord wipes out neighboring places, Zion will increase **hundreds and hundreds of miles**, being filled with the people coming to it. There they will be a united people, and Jesus will come, bringing the righteous society down to earth with him, and they'll find these people on earth's Zion are united like they, those of above, are. Those of Jackson County and round abouts in Zion will be perfected and carrying out the law of heaven as it is in heaven. p111

Twelve Apostles statement: The natives, whom are the remnant of Joseph in America, will come out of the forest and say I am Joseph whom ye sold into Egypt. Does my father yet live? This to mean, I am a descendant of Joseph sold into Egypt, and I am come for my blessings. They shall receive such in the temple and receive thrones. p111-112



Brigham Young: When Jesus returns in glory, it will first be to America, for that is where it all began. That is where he made the Garden of Eden. p113

Joseph Smith: Jesus will come to his people at the New Jerusalem and the world at large won't notice it. It will be totally natural for him to be there among those people at the New Jerusalem. He will give to them his laws and minister to them. p113

Charles W. Penrose: The first major appearance of Jesus Christ in the last days will be to his people in the New Jerusalem. The world at large won't know about this, and Jesus will teach them how to make the kingdom enduring and strong, and how to further develop and beautify Zion. His people will there gaze upon his face, and see his glory. p113

D&C 42:34-36 "(34) Therefore, the residue shall be kept in my **storehouse**, to administer to the poor and the needy, as shall be appointed by the high council of the church, and the bishop and his council; (35) And for the purpose of purchasing lands for the public benefit of the church, and building houses of worship, **and building up of the New Jerusalem** which is hereafter to be revealed-(36)That my covenant people may be gathered in

one in that day when I shall come to my temple. And this I do for the **salvation** of my people."

Twelve Apostles, speaking of the natives of the Americas and the time in which they'll be at the New Jerusalem: Jesus will appear to them with all the resurrected Saints of former days, and Christ will establish his kingdom and laws throughout all the land. p114

D&C 84:2 declares that **"mount Zion" means the New Jerusalem**; hence, it is of the New Jerusalem which Isaiah 4:5-6 speaks of when he says that it will have "**a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night**; for upon all the glory shall be a defense…a place of refuge and a covert from storm and from rain."

3 Ne. 20:22: In the New Jerusalem, Jesus himself will be in their midst.

Orson Pratt: The **light** emanating from the New Jerusalem will be so bright that it will cause others to fear; it will cause people to **want to come cross the ocean to see** it for themselves. When the congressmen and kings of the earth are yet several days off in their journey to see the New Jerusalem, they will see its light illuminating the whole sky, like the northern lights of the arctic regions. When the wicked see this their knees will tremble and they will flee as soon as possible for fear. But when the righteous see this they will know it is the Lord and go to it, saying with Isaiah, that **"the gentiles shall come to thy light**, and kings to the **brightness** of thy rising". p115-6

Orson Pratt: God has higher laws than those of nature which we know of, and he will use those to preserve New and Old Jerusalem temples and cities. They will never decay, they will be eternal. His presence there has part to do with that. p116

3 Ne. 21:26: Show that the 10 tribes work among them will commence after the New Jerusalem is built; they'll also help build it. p117

Orson Pratt: AFTER temple built in New Jerusalem, we will see the Lord there. p117

Lorenzo Snow: In New Jerusalem, Jesus will be a guest in our homes, we will shake his hand, and he will eat and drink with us. p117

Oliver Cowdry: The 10 tribes will be revealed in the north country wither they've been a long time. They'll help build New Jerusalem. p117

Crowther: It seems that the moon will be red because of a great earthquake preceding the return of the 10 tribes. Compare D&C 133:26-31; JD 18:346; Rev. 6:12-14. p118



Orson Pratt: Full priesthood not to come to the 10 tribes until they come to Zion. John the revelator will be preparing them while they are in the north. p119

Joseph Smith: John the Revelator is working among the lost tribes. p119

Wilford Woodruf: The ten tribes will receive Priesthood authority and their endowments in the land of Zion. p120

2 Ne. 29:12-14: The records of the ten tribes will be combined with those of Jews and Nephites. (Note: This isn't the entire extent of it, but the D&C could be part of that record! We are scattered Israel, the D&C is the record of us being gathered back in. That record is even now combined with the records of the Jews and Nephites.)

Orson Pratt: Joseph Smith got the plates from Cumorah, but Moroni deposited many more records than that in a nearby place. Those records contain all the records of the western continent people's histories. Angels guard these records until the time comes for them to be transferred to the sacred temple of Zion. p120-121

Orson Pratt: The 144,000, the Priesthood, see Jesus' face in the temple before mission. They receive power to withstand the plagues and destructions and earthquakes of the earth such as the earth has never before known. This is why the scripture in Revelation says that the destroying angels are not to hurt the earth until these are sealed, it's to protect them as they go forth among all this desolation to do their missionary work and yet be protected. Their bodies will be refined like gold and silver in a furnace in the temple. They'll preach in midst of the whirlwind of judgments on the wicked. p122-3

Joseph Smith: This sealing to come to the 144,000 means getting their calling and election made sure, sealing the blessing upon their heads. p123

Orson Pratt: The 144,000 selected after the 10 tribes return. The 10 tribes will be crowned with glory by Ephraimites. The 144,000 get power to gather out of all nations. The 144,000 gather in the morning of the 7th thousand years. We are living upon the great eve of this. p123-4

Joseph Smith: An innumerable host will accompany the 144,000. Go and make your calling and election sure! The 144,000 are Saviors on Mt. Zion. p124

Joseph Smith: The selection of the persons in the 144,000 has already begun. p124

Crowther: Some of the journals kept by the early brethren of the Church state that they are to be among the 144,000; this suggests that resurrected persons will be among that number. p124

Joseph Smith: Righteousness and truth sweeping the earth as a flood. Men and angels will be co-workers in this work p125 (Note: A flood indicates a sudden massive surge that is greater than the surroundings can resist. The latter-day missionary fleet which has been growing the church is part of this, but more dynamic fulfilments are yet to come. As President Nelson prophesied, the greatest miracles will be seen between now and when the Lord returns.)

Joseph Smith: The 144,000 are the priests who should be anointed to administer in the daily sacrifice. p125; (this suggests that the length of time from the choosing of the 144,000 to the building of the temple in old Jerusalem will be less than a generation) (read more on priests at Palestine and temple service at Ezek. 44-45).

House of Israel Gathers to Palestine

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 45:21-26, esp. 25 "They (the Jews) shall be gathered again; but they shall remain until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled." See also **3 Ne. 20:28-29** The Jews will return to their promised land, Jerusalem. **Isa. 11:12; 1 Ne. 22:25; 3 Ne. 16:5:** These show that Jews will be gathered in from all the four quarters of the earth.

(Note: The reestablishment of a Jewish nation in the creation of Israel in 1949 is a tremendous fulfillment of this prophecy, one of the more sure signs that the times are upon us. They waited 2000 years since the Romans scattered them in 70AD, and in a single generation they took up the ancient Hebrew language as their spoken language.)

Crowther:
1836 The keys for the gathering of Israel were given to Joseph Smith.
1841 Palestine was dedicated for the return of Israel by Orson Hyde.
1873 George Albert Smith also dedicated the land of Palestine.
1878 The "Lovers of Zion" Jewish organization was formed.
1896 The Zionist Organization was organized and had its first conference a year later in Switzerland to establish the spirit of nationalism among the Jewish people.
1917 British forces took Palestine from Turkish forces and put a man of Jewish descent as governor of it, Sir Herbert Samuel. A proclamation called the Balfour Declaration invited the Jews to return to Palestine, and British helped fund such.
Many more treaties and positive and negative things reported in the text about the 20th century and Israel as a nation, including the republic of Israel choosing its first chosen president in 1949. They became a state around this time. p129-135

Crowther: Discussion of highways in the Palestine area, and which areas now are the areas spoken of in scripture of old. p136-8

Orson Pratt: Many Jews whose fathers didn't consent to crucify Christ will accept the gospel before going to Jerusalem, and others will go because other Jews are going. Some Jews will continue to preach against Christ in Jerusalem. p138

2 Ne. 10:7 Jesus Christ has covenanted that when the Jews believe in Him he will gather them to the lands of their inheritance. (Note: Many non-Christian Jews have gathered to Jerusalem, having some amount of faith in

God as they know Him from the Old Testament. That knowledge will grow to fully appreciate and accept Jesus Christ as the Messiah. It may be that more Jews, such as those in America, will gather to Jerusalem when they figure out Christ as Messiah. As I recall, about half of the Jews are now in Jerusalem, many of the rest are in America.)

Book of Revelation's Plagues

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 77:12 The plagues come after 7th seal and before 2nd coming; Rev 8 happens then. p143

D&C 29:13: Trumps will sound like on Mount Sinai, audible, literal.

Orson Pratt: There will be a set of plagues followed by trumps; these will all be literal. It will be just before the Lord comes. There will be 7 each, and then Jesus comes. p144

Orson Pratt: God will literally use thunder and cause the voice from that thunder, even the voice of the thunder, to say these audible words which everyone on earth will hear, "Repent, o ye inhabitants of the earth and prepare the way of The Lord, prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord." It won't be a common ordinary thunder storm. In addition to the voices of thunder and lightning, the Lord himself will speak so all can hear him, commanding them to repent and prepare for his coming. p145



Crowther: Plagues happen after 144,000 chosen before Armageddon (makes sense, need 144,000 special protection at that time). p148-153 (Note: There may be several plagues to cleanse the land before the return of the Lost Tribes, many of whom will constitute the 144,000.)

Orson Pratt: After Jerusalem is rebuilt by the Jews, the **2 witnesses** to prophecy there 3.5 years come there. By their prophecies and Gods power, nations gathered together against Jerusalem will be stayed, these witnesses holding them at bay by their faith and power. Eventually the witnesses are overcome. All this takes place after the trumps begin to sound. The witnesses mission is **3.5 years, so the trumps aren't all at once**, things must happen in between them. When all 7 have sounded, they begin to sound a 2nd time. The **2nd set** of trumpets won't be for destructions, but to declare Gods works in each of the 7 thousand years, 1 thousand year period per trump. When the 7th trump sounds a 2nd time, it's to pronounce that the work of God is finished so far as the great preparation for the 2nd Coming is concerned. The sounding of the 1st trumpet of the 2 sets of 7 trumpets is when the 1st resurrection happens; and all these great works are to be performed on the earth, and years elapse before Jesus descends with all his saints. p154-5

See the full book for a more detailed lining out of the trumps, timelines, etc. masterfully done.

Universal Conflict and the Fall of Christian Nations

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Orson Pratt: Someday the missionary message will be more focused on repent or destruction eminent. A worldwide revolution will occur. Jews will flee to their home land. p160 (Note: The return of the Jews apparently occurred before the 'repent or be destroyed' missionary message.)

D&C 45:69: Every nation except New Jerusalem will be at war against each other. p160

Orson Pratt: War in Europe to desolate it; no prisoners of war, all vacant or burned. No rules of war. p161

Orson Pratt: Universal war, all except Latter-day Kingdom; at this time Jews flee to Jerusalem. p161 (Note: Many (about half) of the Jews have already gathered, and it seems the rest at this time will also gather.)

Orson Pratt: Britain will fall once the righteous are gathered out of it. p162

Charles W. Penrose: new diseases will eat the wicked silently. p163

Charles W. Penrose: The very elements will seem effected by the national and social convulsions. The masterminds among nations will be taken away. Fear will take hold of the hearts of all men. p163

Charles W. Penrose: fruits withhold in their season when people withdraw from the spirit. p163 (Note: The famine will get heavier and heavier, gardens won't even be reliable.)

Orson Pratt: Europe (the 4th beast) **falls before heathen nations** (the 3 beasts). p164 (Note: The identity of the 4 beasts may be slightly different.)

Orson Pratt: People of Christendom have more light and knowledge than the heathens so they'll be under more condemnation. p164 (Note: Heathen nation is defined as nations without Christianity.)

Orson Pratt: The nations of America and Europe and Asia's ultimate destiny is total destruction, no matter their power. p165 (Note: The D&C says all nations will cease except the kingdom of God.)

Christ's appearance at Adam-ondi-Ahman

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Joseph Smith: Ancient of Days = Adam = Michael; he presides over the human family; all who have keys stand before him here; Adam delivers up his stewardship to Jesus Christ and remains head of the human family. p167-8

Joseph Smith: Adam is over all dispensations; in this the last dispensation, all will be as it was in prior dispensations. Adam watches over the ordinances, and reveals them to mankind, sending messengers. p168-9

Joseph Smith: Spring Hill of Daviess County Missouri is where the meeting of Adam-ondi-Ahman will be. p169

Orson Pratt: 20 million will be at Adam-ondi-Ahman. P169-172

Note: Elder Bruce R McConkie agreed with this, that there would be a vast number in attendance, as a reflection of what the first meeting at Adam-ondi-Ahman was in the days of mortal Adam when he gathered his posterity to bless them and foretell them of all the days of the earth. All the righteous Saints are who get to attend he says, as well as all the righteous from ages past. See "The Millennial Messiah". The prophet Daniel speaks of there being a vast multitude before which the Ancient of Days comes to do all of this.

Note: Others suggest the meeting will be more private. Perhaps many in attendance will have been risen from the dead for that purpose. D&C 88 may suggest a resurrection event in connection with Adam-ondi-Ahman.

Joseph Fielding Smith: Adam-ondi-Ahman will be unknown of to the world at large, and to the church at large, it comes as a thief in the night, and only those officially called to attend will know of it and attend. p172 (His interpretation of this seems to come from 1 Thes. 5:2, but nothing there specifically suggests that said passage is referring to the meeting of Adam-ondi-Ahman.)

Orson Pratt: In Adam-ondi-Ahman, Adam will arrange all the dispensations of the Priesthood into one large family and household. These judgments and opening of books are to prepare the way for the 2nd coming of Christ in glory. p173

Orson Pratt: Every quorum of the Priesthood of the church will be present at this meeting. Resurrected beings will also be there. This is before the 2nd coming of Christ. p173-4

Joseph Smith: At Adam-ondi-Ahman, Daniel says the judgment was set and the books opened. This is for the purpose of giving the power of judgment to the Saints. Wars plagues fires etc. will continue until this meeting. p174.

Note: It seems that the cessation of war and plague at the time of this event is for the saints, and that these things will continue for the rest of the world after this. Perhaps it is the hinge point at which the commotion is turned around.

Orson Pratt: 12 Apostles were chosen among the 10 tribes in the north. p174

Orson Pratt: Be good so you'll be counted worthy to participate in the august [respected and impressive] ceremonies of Adam-ondi-Ahman. p174

Note: Some have suggested that the privilege of attendance may also be virtual or via spiritual vision, not just attendance in person. Whatever God decides is good.

Orson Pratt: At Adam-ondi-Ahman judgment will come to all nations. p174

Orson Pratt: The judgments to come after Adam-ondi-Ahman are the judgments from the Saints upon all the people of the world. Not the final judgment, but a judgment still. p174-5

Crowther: At Adam-ondi-Ahman, Christ becomes the literal head of the kingdom of God, and that kingdom ceases to be a preparatory kingdom, and asserts its power over all the nations of the earth. p175

Orson Pratt: The kingdom of God will assert power over all other nations of the world, and those nations which will not unite themselves with it, honoring its laws and institutions, will utterly perish, and no place will be found for them. p175

BH Roberts in History of the Church: associated Dan. 7:13-14 with Dan. 7:9-10, meaning that Adam-ondi-Ahman was the time when dominion is given to the kingdom of God and all nations are to serve it. p175

Joseph Smith: The Saints are **persecuted until** Adam-ondi-Ahman. Yes, the “horn” (see book of Revelation) made war with the Saints and overcame them until the Ancient of Days came; then he, Adam, gives judgment to the Saints, and they possess the kingdom. They become ministers here and in eternity. p176

Zion and Palestine Grow after the Season of Universal Conflict



(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Orson Pratt: People will say of the city of Zion, surely this is the city of God, for his power might and terror are there! Come let us be subject to its laws! They will say this after the Lord has broken the nations. The laws of Zion will liberally be sent forth to all the nations of the earth. p178

Orson Pratt: When the inhabitants of the USA are swept off, much of their homes will remain, and will be desolate and uninhabited until the Saints expand to fill all those areas. p178

Quorum of the 12 Apostles: North and South America will become united via the expansion of Zion. p178

Joseph Smith: The Saints will fill the west, and through Mexico, central and south America would do a great work for the remnant of Jacob. The kingdom of God will be organized upon the earth through all nations learning war no more, and all adopting the God-given Constitution of the United States as a palladium of liberty and equal rights. p179

Joseph Smith: David of old lost part of his glory because of transgression, and "the throne and kingdom of David is to be taken from him and given to another by the name of David in the last days, raised up out of his lineage." p179

Crowther: Apparently the next David will come just before the battle of Armageddon and reign as a prince. He will be a new leader for Israel. p179

Jeremiah: The Lord will raise up a David as king of Israel in the time when that people shall serve the Lord their God (Jer. 30:9). p179

Zechariah: He, this David, is the branch, and that he would have the great responsibility of building the temple of the Lord, and that he will sit upon a throne, and be a priest (Zech. 6:11-13; 3:8-9; Jer. 23:5-6; Hosea 3:4-5). p179

Ezekiel: This David will be a shepherd over Israel whom shall feed them (Ezek. 34:23-24).

Note: Elder McConkie in "The Millennial Messiah" seems to suggest that this David is Christ himself, but it seems the text shows this David figure as a leader who helps prepare the way for Christ to return by building the temple in Jerusalem, and that he is to be a powerful servant in the hands of Christ (D&C 113:4).

Isaiah: God gives this David as a commander and leader of the people and a witness to the people. The Lord will glorify him and cause that he "shalt call a nation that thou knowest not, and nations that knew not thee shall run unto thee because of the LORD thy God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he hath glorified thee." (Isa. 55:3-5)

Crowther: It could be that the passage in **Isa. 11:1-5** is also referring to this David: " 1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: 2 And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD; 3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: 4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. 5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins."

D&C 113:4: The stem of Jesse in Isa. 11:1-5 is Christ. The rod in Isa. 11:1-5 is someone from the house of Jesse and Ephriam: "1 Who is the Stem of Jesse spoken of in the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th verses of the 11th chapter of Isaiah?

2 Verily thus saith the Lord: It is Christ.

3 What is the rod spoken of in the first verse of the 11th chapter of Isaiah, that should come of the Stem of Jesse?

4 Behold, thus saith the Lord: It is a servant in the hands of Christ, who is partly a descendant of Jesse as well as of Ephraim, or of the house of Joseph, on whom there is laid much power.

5 What is the root of Jesse spoken of in the 10th verse of the 11th chapter?
6 Behold, thus saith the Lord, it is a descendant of Jesse, as well as of Joseph, unto whom rightly belongs the priesthood, and the keys of the kingdom, for an ensign, and for the gathering of my people in the last days."

Isaiah 11:10: The root of Jesse "shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious." p180. Crowther speaks of this being this David, given that D&C 113:4 refers to him as the rod being one of Jesse and Ephriam lineage.

D&C 113:5-6: The root is: " 5 What is the root of Jesse spoken of in the 10th verse of the 11th chapter? 6 Behold, thus saith the Lord, it is a descendant of Jesse, as well as of Joseph, unto whom rightly belongs the priesthood, and the keys of the kingdom, for an ensign, and for the gathering of my people in the last days."

Note: The David may be Joseph Smith, the head of this dispensation, whose goal has always been the gathering in the last days. Many have prophesied of a return of Joseph Smith to carry out final missions of gathering. But beware that you do not embrace radical groups who claim this or that about Joseph, while spurning at the church he established. It could also very well be someone else. Not one person has to do everything.

Isaiah and the D&C speak of this root rod branch person as that:
1. He will live during a period before the Millennium wherein he can both judge the poor with righteousness and cause the wicked to be slain (Isa. 11:1-5).
2. He will live on into the Millennium (Isa. 11:6-10)
3. He will stand as an ensign of the people (Is. 11:10) and to him will the Gentiles seek (this could be as the Gentiles covet the wealth of Palestine and cause the Battle of Armageddon).
4. He will be an important and powerful servant in the hands of Christ (D&C 113:4)
5. He will be a descendant of both Judah (through Jesse) and Joseph (through Ephraim). (D&C 113:4, 6)

Moroni speaking to Joseph Smith: the prophecy of Isa. 11 is about to be fulfilled. p181

Ezekiel: A prince (David?) will help in temple offerings. P181

Ezekiel: A prince is given a special door in the temple to approach the Lord while the Lord is there. p181

Note: This shows the prince being referred to can't be the Lord himself.

Ezekiel: This prince will have political lands, not just religious influence. P181

Orson Pratt: The 10 tribes will come from the north to Missouri Zion and do farming and ranching there for a while, then 12,000 from each tribe will be chosen to fill the ranks of the 144,000, they go back to Palestine (the land of their inheritance). The 144,000 will be sealed in their foreheads to be immune to the plagues and death. p182

Orson Pratt: John the revelator will be laboring among the 10 tribes. p183
Note: Joseph Smith taught this as well.

Orson Pratt: The "whole of the tribes of Israel" return to Palestine to build the temple there before the 2nd Coming and before Armageddon. p183.

Orson Pratt: Asia and Africa have Israel in them though they are heathen nations. Some of Asia and Africa will repent since they'll see the power and glory of God manifested in Israel. p183.

Orson Pratt: The biblical feasts will return. p183

Orson Pratt: After God overthrows the nations, He will gather the tribes of Israel and return them to their own land. p183

Gather Israel to Palestine between 6th plague and Battle of Armageddon. p185

The heathen will come to knowledge of God by seeing Gog fall in battle of Armageddon. p185

Crowther: Apparently Israel and Judah will be united in battles before Armageddon. p185

The Battle of Armageddon and Christ's Coming to the Mount of Olives

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Orson Pratt: "When the Rothschild's and the great bankers among the Jewish nation shall return back to their own land to rebuild the city of Jerusalem, carrying their capital with them, it will almost ruin some of the nations, and the latter will go up against Jerusalem to take a spoil." p198

Ezekiel names several places as the persons who attack Jerusalem, and the modern day equivalent geographical nations to that are Turkey, Persia, Ethiopia, Libya, and the southern tip of Russia just above the Caspian Sea. More information in the text is presented about these things, including a map. p199

Note: Jonathan Cahn says these nations had some involvement in the October 7 2023 attack on Israel, which may have initiated these battles. In fulfillment of prophecy, nations are gathering against Israel.

Ezekiel 39:21-3: The heathens will see Gods judgment when he overthrows Gog and his forces.

Orson Pratt: By miracles the devil gathers many to fight the Jews at Jerusalem in Armageddon. It is when the Kingdom of God is over the whole earth and sun turned dark; millions upon millions come for war. **Christendom will be so darkened from priestcraft that they will not understand** these things. The Devil will drive them around at this time as a whirlwind. p201-202

Note: It's becoming popular to hate Israel, even in Christian circles.

Crowther: Rev. 9:13-21 seems to show with the 2 prophets laboring for 1260 days (42 months), that the time of universal conflict and the time of the battle of Armageddon are 2 separate times. Armageddon might be the consummation of the period of universal conflict. p205

Rev. 11:13: There will be a major earthquake at the time the 2 prophets are taken into heaven. Compare this with **D&C 45:47-50**: There will be a great earthquake at the time when Christ puts his foot on the Mount of Olives.



Crowther: There seems not to be evidence to support the idea that the 2nd coming starts with Christ putting his foot on the Mount of Olives. p211

John: after the Armageddon, beasts will pray upon the bodies a long time. This is the supper of the great God. p213-4

Ezekiel: Christ comes to the temple in Jerusalem. p215. Much more from scripture presented here about these times and events.

Zechariah, etc.: After Armageddon, a time period where those who won't worship at Jerusalem and keep feast of tabernacles will have no rain and will have plague. This is pre-millennium. p216-219 for references.

Crowther: the David rule before Armageddon, then after Armageddon is a missionary work to heathen era, then the Millennium. The David will still be alive when the Millennium begins so this must be a short interval. For references, see Ch. 12. p220

Crowther: There is to be a final gathering at time of heathen gathering or shortly after for all regardless of all and this before the burning, and after Armageddon. The righteous are at this time gathered to New Jerusalem or Palestine. p220

Christ's Glorious Coming, The Great & Dreadful Day

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 88:95-110 Shows the drama that will accompany the coming of Christ. p228-9

Orson Pratt: The silence in heaven for a half hour comes immediately after a trump. This half hour may be our time or the Lord's (longer) time. During it, all is perfectly still. No angels flying, no trumpets sounding, no noise in heavens above. Then immediately after it, the curtain of heaven is unfolded as a scroll. p230

Orson Pratt: When Christ comes the **mortal Saints will be transfigured** and sanctified, not immortalized. They'll be prepared for the Millennial reign. Then tables will be spread and they will eat the sacrament. p230

Orson Pratt: There will be an audible sound of a trump, that of the archangel, when this coming happens. At that time, the dead in Christ will come forth out of their tombs. Also at this trump the Saints still living will instantaneously be caught up in the air to meet the Lord. p231

Joseph Fielding Smith describes 3 resurrections: At the coming of Christ, those whom will dwell forever with God, the exalted, will resurrect. They will meet the Lord in the air. **Then** those who were honorable but not qualifying for the highest blessings, those of the Celestial and Terrestrial kingdom but not the highest part thereof, will resurrect. They will not get to meet Christ in the air. This includes honorable Christians who wouldn't join the Latter-day Church. **After the Millennium** is over, the telestial people resurrect, namely the wicked who are condemned to suffer the wrath of God on the earth. p231-3

D&C 88:110 & Rev. 20:1-3 It's after each of the angels has sounded their trumpet twice that Satan is to be bound for 1000 years for the Millennium.

D&C 29:9-13 At the coming of Christ a trump will sound long and loud even as it did on Mount Sinai (Ex. 19:13-19). p234

Orson Pratt: When the Lord appears, some of those who will come with him will be all the former day Saints, the city of Enoch, Abraham Isaac and Jacob sitting upon thrones, all the redeemed persons. This is when the people of earth meet those of the Church of the Firstborn, and long to be with them. This is what Paul meant when he said all things in heaven and

earth are to be brought together in one in the dispensation of the fullness of times. p234 (This seems to be an interpretation of D&C 27:5-14)

Crowther: Based on several scriptures, it's hard to tell whether Christ coming in red is referring to the coming in glory, or to the coming during the battle of Armageddon wherein he steps on the Mount of Olives. The coming in glory is to be so bright that it makes the sun look pale. p236

Isa. 63: 1-6 Speaks of the Lord coming in red and telling the people he tread the winepress alone, and that he will (future) trample the people in his fury. In this passage he also speaks of how his fury upheld him during the Atonement. 237

Orson Pratt: When the Lord comes in glory all will see him, even the dead. p237

Moroni 9:2-5 When Christ comes we will see our nakedness and the glory of God, and it will cause a flame of unquenchable fire to come upon the wicked. The wicked would be more comfortable living with the damned in hell than with the Lord. p238

D&C 133:21-25 The land of Jerusalem and the land of Zion will return to their own place. The earth will become as it was before it was divided. This happens after Christ puts his foot on the Mount of Olives. p239

Note: D&C 133:26 says those of the North countries will remember God at this time, and return on a highway, overcoming all their enemies. This could be referring to the lost tribes of Israel gathering to Jerusalem. This could mean that those tribes are the persons in the heathen nations which will not be converted until after Armageddon. Elder Bruce R McConkie in "The Millennial Messiah" said that the gathering of the lost 10 tribes would be after the Millennium started; after Christ's coming in glory that is. This passage seems to fit well with that. However, as referenced earlier in this book, these is much supporting evidence that the 10 tribes will return before the Millennium so the 144,00 can preach before the Millennium happens. Another theory is that only 12,000 from each tribe of the lost `10 tribes are gathered in before the Millennium to fill the ranks of the 144,000, then after the Millennium begins, the rest of the masses of those tribes are gathered in. All who accept the gospel of course.

Joseph Fielding Smith: Adam dwelt on this American continent. But when he did, it wasn't the American continent or even the western hemisphere. The land was all in one place, and the water was all in one place. No Atlantic ocean separated the hemispheres. The creation account even tells that God caused the water to gather in one place, as well as the land. Then in Genesis we read of a time where the earth was divided. That means the land was actually divided, not just a sociology statement. The land returning to its original form is part of the great restoration. John saw this and said that every island will flee, and mountains are not found. p239-240

In **JS 2:27**, **Moroni** said to Joseph Smith: those who come with the Lord at his Second Coming will be who burn the wicked. P240-241. Also in D&C 29:9 the Lord says he will burn the wicked.

3 Ne. 26:3 The elements will melt. p240

Orson F Whitney: The earth was baptized with water at the time of Noah, and it is to be burned, baptized with fire and the Holy Ghost in the day of the coming of the Lord. P241

Orson Pratt: As man becomes righteous man via baptism of water and the spirit, so does the earth become righteous earth. These purifying elements will come upon earth. p242

Joseph Fielding Smith: Those who will be burned at the 2nd coming will be the telestial law livers. Those who have lived virtuously, and been honest, doing good to the best of their understanding, will survive, regardless of their beliefs and religious doctrine. p242

Joseph Smith: We believe the earth will be renewed and receive its paradisiacal glory. This means it will be like it was before there was death or evil in it. P243

John Taylor: The Zion city of Enoch went into the sky. At the 2nd coming of Christ in glory, it will descend, and the city of Zion on earth which the Saints will have built up will ascend, and they will meet each other in the air, and fall on each other's necks and kiss each other. They will be similar peoples. p243

Joseph Fielding Smith: The prophecy of the marriage of the Lamb is about the 2nd coming of Christ and the feast the righteous will have with him at this time. The bridegroom represents Christ. p244

The Millennium

(For references see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 63:50-52 Rather than lying down dead, you'll be changed into a resurrected being in the twinkling of an eye.

Orson Pratt: In the Millennium, mortals will mingle with immortals, but part of the glory of the immortals will probably be withheld from the mortals during the entire Millennium. Ancestors will mingle freely with their posterity. Mortals can be taught by immortals, which will prepare them in essential ways for when the Earth goes through a greater change.

Erastus Snow: Satan being removed from earth will cause earth itself and its atmosphere to improve; the curse will be removed; the elements will be sanctified; those growing up in the Millennium without sin won't experience pain and sickness like we do because Satan won't be involved; there will be no breach to the laws of life and health; no intemperance; no evil spirit to allure and draw into sin; the Spirit of the Lord will be with every person to guide him constantly; all will know the way of the Lord to such an extent that we won't have to teach or encourage each other to do what is right. There will be a good influence continually, and people will grow up without sickness, pain, or death. p249-50

Joseph Fielding Smith: **Joseph Smith**: There will still be wickedness on earth during the Millennium; those who won't come up to worship will be destroyed eventually from off the face of the earth. When Joseph Smith refers to wicked in this statement, he is referring to those who have not yet embraced the gospel. **D&C 84:49-53** says wicked means you have not embraced the gospel, and such a person is in a condition of being under the bondage of sin, having not been baptized. The terrestrial order will remain on the earth during the Millennium, and this class is without the gospel ordinances. p250

Orson Pratt: People will be capable of sinning in the Millennium because they still have their agency. Wherever you find intelligent beings, you will

find agency, to some extent. Satan's agency will be very limited when locked in the pit and unable to tempt men. If people sin in the Millennium, it will not be because of being tempted by Satan, but of choosing to do so of their own free will. p251

Note: Satan is without light and truth, which is intelligence. Thus, he ceases to be an object to act upon and becomes an object to be acted upon, one with minimal or no agency, because he has minimal or no intelligence, intelligence being defined as light and truth in the D&C. I believe it was Ken Bowers who pointed this out.

Brigham Young: The Millennium consists in every heart in the Church and Kingdom of God being united; the Kingdom increasing to the overcoming of everything opposed to the economy of heaven, and Satan being bound with a seal set upon him. All else, eating, drinking, and wearing clothing, will be as it is now. p251

Note: However, three scriptures in the D&C say there will be no immodesty in the New Jerusalem. Clearly, Brigham is referring to the fact that food and clothing will continue in the Millennium. We also won't eat meat during the Millennium; there are a few changes from how we do things now—tons of changes, but life will go on with many similarities. Recall Nibley saying that we are a million miles away from how things are done in heaven, not even close. The Millennium will be about getting closer to heaven, and at the end thereof, many will be ready to ascend with the Earth to a celestial state in the presence of God.

Orson Pratt: Out of Zion will come the law; that law will govern the nations; to teach them how to be saved; to inform everyone how to save themselves and their dead. p252

1st Presidency Statement: When the Saints receive their inheritance, it will be through the authorized channels of the Church according to that order of government. p253

Orson Pratt: The righteous dead receive their inheritances first, then the righteous living receives theirs. The Saints will be given inheritances divided by lot according to their faithfulness in stewardship. The revelation (D&C 88:95-110) shows that when the Saints are resurrected, caught up into heaven, and the living Saints are also caught up, and the 7th trumpet is

sounded, then the Saints will receive their inheritances. Yes, the earth will be divided among them. p254

Orson Pratt: Jesus and the 12 Apostles will be with us. The 12 tribes will return, and 12 men sitting on 12 thrones in the land of Palestine will rule over them. Also, the 12 disciples from ancient America, about 1800 years ago, will have their thrones. They'll be judged by the Twelve in Jerusalem, who judge the remnant of the tribe of Joseph. They will do this work in the eternal worlds. p255

Orson Pratt: To some of the Saints will be given one city to rule over, others 5, etc., according to their works in this life. The 12 will each have a throne to judge the 12 tribes of Israel. The tribes will need judges during the whole 1000 years they live on the earth; they will need judges in their midst to show them what is important for them to know. Along with them, there will be other judges who have proven worthy. p256

Brigham Young: When judgment is given to the Saints, it will be because of their righteousness, that they'll judge like the angels and gods in heaven; not like the present situation; rather, they'll love justice, kindness, love mercy, and truth. p256

B.H. Roberts: The passage of Joel 2:18-9 refers to the Millennium: Everyone will have the Spirit during the Millennium.

Orson Pratt: When the knowledge of God covers the earth, even animals will manifest greater intelligence than they show now in their fallen condition. They'll have language, and praise God. p260

George Q. Cannon: When the will of God is written on people's hearts, they'll understand his law. This will be the case in the Millennium. p260

Brigham Young: In the Millennium, people of other religions will come to Zion, wondering at the wisdom and knowledge of those people, and thinking that their wisdom is merely from the cunning and craftiness of men. Various religions won't be allowed to persecute each other. Everyone will be required to bow the knee to confess that God rules the world, and that Jesus Christ is the redeemer thereof, of all humans and creatures therein, and once they do that, they'll be allowed to go and worship whatever, even a white dog or the sun, and however they want as long as they mind their own business and leave they neighbors alone to let them also worship how they will. p262

Brigham Young: You'll be able to do the religion of your choice in the Millennium, but you won't be able to take God the Father and Jesus Christ so lightly; you must confess their glory. p262

Brigham Young: The kingdom that Daniel saw will actually make laws to protect every man in his rights, as our government does now, whether the religions of the people are true or false. Everyone will have sufficient evidence to believe in the New Testament and Jesus Christ and the Book of Mormon and Joseph Smith, the prophet and revelator, but those who won't humble themselves won't join the Church, and thus they won't get the benefits of the everlasting Priesthood. These people don't live by every word that proceedeth from the mouth of God. All people are capable of accepting these things. p263

Brigham Young: During the Millennium, there'll still be millions who won't believe Christ, but they will be obliged to acknowledge his kingly government. There is no true government on earth but the government of God, or the holy Priesthood. It is a perfect system of government. There is no other true government in heaven or upon the earth. Do not blame me for believing in a pure and holy government. p263

Joseph Fielding Smith: The gospel will be taught with greater intensity and power during the millennium until all the inhabitants of the earth shall embrace it. Satan will be bound and unable to tempt man. Anyone who refuses the gospel in these circumstances will be cursed. Eventually, in the millennium, every person will embrace the truth universally. It will become unnecessary to introduce people to the Lord. p264

George Q. Cannon: In the millennium, there will be neither disease nor crime, and we will do the temple work for the unnumbered millions who lived and died on the earth without hearing and obeying the plan of salvation. p264

John Taylor: In the millennium 1000's of temples will be in use. p265

Wilford Woodruff: In the millennium, there will be many temples in North and South America, Europe, and many other places. All the posterity of Noah must be officiated for in temples before Christ can say "it is finished." p265

Brigham Young: Angels of God will reveal information we need to do temple work, so all can be recorded correctly. Their relatives will officiate

for them. The wicked will be cleansed and purified as by fire; some of them will be saved as by fire. p265

Brigham Young: Resurrected bodies walk, eat, drink, and enjoy. Those who are not yet resurrected are those who do the temple ordinances. Those who are resurrected are those who take orders from God on what is to be done. They'll go into the temples and commune with God. When Saints have passed through death, they cannot officiate in this wicked world but will dictate to those who are here. p266

Erastus Snow: The resurrection is soon upon us; Joseph Smith and the Elders of Israel will direct temple work; we will find this to be the case. This will continue in the Millennium. p266

Orson Pratt: Ancient Patriarchs like Adam will come here to earth during the Millennium "from their ancient celestial world, where they were first made spiritual"; they will have a homestead here, and will gather with the faithful frequently; they will teach us many things we know not of which they have gained from dwelling with God; they will teach us what is to be enjoyed by those in the highest celestial kingdom; even those not yet resurrected, those still mortal, will learn these things from them; By degrees, we will at this time learn more than we are now capable of learning; these teachings will go forth until the whole earth is familiar with the ways and countenance of heaven and Christ. The Millennium is the great Sabbath of the creation. p267

Before the End of the Earth

(For references, see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

Joseph Smith: The Battle of Gog and Magog will be after the Millennium; The remnant of nations that fight against Jerusalem were commanded to go up to Jerusalem to worship in the Millennium. p269

George Q Cannon: When the adversary can't tempt us, it's from our obedience; and when we stop obeying, he can tempt us more. His best way

of getting power over men is by their cupidity, avarice, and low selfish desires. p269

Orson Pratt: After the Millennium, Satan can tempt people for a season, but not the resurrected beings. When they get their immortal bodies, Satan will have no power over them. The tempted will be the posterity who aren't yet resurrected. During the Millennium, many generations will live and become resurrected. When this generation of post-Millennium non-resurrected people sins, it will be an open rebellion, not dwindling or ignorance like the Lamanites did. So great will be the power of Satan that he will gather them against the beloved city, and fire will come out of heaven and consume them. p270

Rev. 12: 4, 7-9: The battle of Gog and Magog will be akin to the preexistence battle when Michael fought Satan and his forces. p270

Orson Pratt: There will be a government during the Millennium, and it will continue 1,000 years, then there will be a great divide away from it because of Satan. The Saints at this time will have become more numerous than ever before. They'll be so large that they'll have to pitch their tents around their beloved city; it will not be large enough for them. Satan will gather every fallen angel from premortality and otherwise, and all apostates. His army will be so great it will be able to come upon the Saints on all sides. Satan probably doesn't understand all the designs of God. p271

Rev. 20:9-10: Satan and all of his army will be destroyed forever. p272

D&C 43:31-33 Seems to say that the battle of Gog and Magog will be at the end of the Millennium, the fire on them then, and this marks the end of the Millennium. Then those still mortal all become resurrected. p272

Rev. 20:11-15 Some ordering of events is as follows: God appears on a white throne, then earth and heaven flee, then judgment, then resurrection. p273 Note: There are several resurrections.

Orson Pratt: After the Millennium and the little season after, in which Satan's army marshals against the Saints, then the last trump sounds and the last resurrection occurs. Jesus comes with greater glory than ever before at this time. Also, at this time, the glory of Jesus will cause the earth and heaven to flee. p273-4

Orson Pratt: After Satan and his army are cast into hell, all will be judged, the white throne with Christ seated on it will be there, and when this happens the earth itself and the literal temporal heavens that are over them will flee away, and no place shall be found for them. p274

D&C 29:26: The final resurrection happens before the earth passes away. p274

Crowther: Thus, the order apparently is: 1. The 2nd Resurrection. 2. Jesus appears on a white throne, and the final judgment takes place. 3. Heaven and earth pass away. p274-5

Orson Pratt: God will probably use agents to help him judge the dead. p279

First Presidency Statement: The Saints will rule once they are crowned. That is why they are going to be crowned, to be rulers. p281

Brigham Young: All of this dispensation of the fullness of times will be inspected and approved by Joseph Smith before they can enter heaven, the Holy City. Jehovah has decreed this. p282-3

Heber C. Kimball: Joseph Smith had a vision showing that every member of the church who will be crowned kings and priests unto God will be conducted to the throne of God by Adam, one by one. p283

D&C 63:20-21: Those who overcome are given an inheritance on earth once the earth is translated. p283

Brigham Young: In the Millennium, there will be 1,000s of temples. The Saints will receive inheritances of their own once all those assigned to this earth have been preached to, even the dead, and when Jesus presents the work as finished to his father, and the earth is placed in the cluster of the Celestial Kingdoms, and the Savior is crowned. Not until this will the Saints receive their everlasting inheritance. p283-4

Orson Pratt: If we aren't sanctified in the fullness of the gospel, if we fail to endure to the end, we will not dwell in the Celestial kingdom, but in a lesser creation prepared for such persons. There the glory of God will not be made manifest to the same extent. They will be governed by laws adapted for their inferior capacity and to the condition which they have plunged themselves in. They will suffer after this life, and they will not receive

exaltation and glory and power in the presence of God the Eternal Father; they will fail to receive an everlasting inheritance on this earth. p284

D&C 88:25-6: The earth will die and be resurrected.

Orson Pratt: Because of the fall of Adam, the earth must die. Fire will waste away its element. But, like the humans, because of Christ, it will also be born again, and be the same as it was when it first issued from the womb of chaos. p285

Orson Pratt: Though all will be redeemed from the Fall of Adam, the original sin as some call it, we have great reason to fear that but few will be redeemed from their own sins. Those who are redeemed will receive the earth for an eternal inheritance. The earth has been corrupted from the sins of men and hence needs redemption, and will receive such. p285-6

Orson Pratt: Before the earth dies the New Jerusalem will be taken into heaven as well as the holy city. When these are taken up, the earth flees from Christ on his throne, and dies. When earth dies, it will cease to exist as an organized globe. It won't be a world capable of habitation. The globe will pass away. Fire will convert its elements into their original form. When the earth dies, it will return to its elemental state and will pass away into space. It then will be called back and resurrected just as the bodies of mankind will be. The power of bringing the earth back together will be by a power greater than any known to man. It will be by the power of God's word. Death will no longer be connected with it as we see it is now. It will be the same as it was when the Lord first formed it. P286

Orson Pratt: Before earth dies, New Jerusalem on the western continent and Old Jerusalem on the eastern continent will go up into heaven. Then these cities with their glorified throng, will descend on resurrected earth and be the world capitals of the new creation. No whoremongerers or idolaters or murderers or sorcerers will be there. p286-7

Earth's Final Condition

(For references, see pages indicated in Crowther's "Prophecy Key to the Future")

D&C 130:9: Sanctified earth will be immortal, like crystal, and will be an Urim and Thummim, and those dwelling thereon will know all things pertaining to lesser kingdoms. p289

John speaks of the Holy Jerusalem as 1377 miles in each of its three dimensions; this could be a way of putting the people onto the celestial earth and transporting them there after their death and resurrection. The cubit numbers are all 12s and compounds of 12, and thus, they may have a dual meaning of God's presence, the whole city being a Holy of Holies.

Rev. 21:24-7: There'll be kings and nations on the Celestial earth.

Rev. 22:1: A river of water of life will proceed out from God's throne on the Celestial earth.

Orson Pratt: Jesus in the Millennium will have a throne in Zion (the New Jerusalem in Missouri) and another throne in the temple at Jerusalem (Palestine). The original 12 Apostles will be with him. After 1,000 years, Jesus leaves to visit people on other planets for whom he is Lord. Celestial worlds are, by and by, after their temporal state, glorified together. Then from then on, there will be no veil between God and his people who are sanctified and glorified, and Jesus will not be in the need of withdrawing from one to see another, for they will all be in his presence. p292

Orson Pratt: No matter which Celestial place you are you'll be able to see God at all times no matter where God is dwelling, because the only thing shutting us from the presence of God are the fall and the veil, and those will have ended. This will be the case despite even millions of miles of distance between you. You'll see each other as easily as one person sees another whom is in the same room. This is perfect redemption, enjoying His presence always. This is only for Celestial exalted people. A channel of communication. Those who are made like him will be able to see, understand, and converse with each other though they be millions and millions of miles apart. p292-3

Rev. 21:4: No more sorrow pain or death.

Orson Pratt: When this earth in its wonderful Celestialized state gets full, more worlds will be created for the posterity of the exalted beings. Yes, they continue to have posterity. p294

Note: That's the whole point.

D&C 29:23-5; 77:2 Animals will also be resurrected, and not one hair of their head to be lost, for it is the workmanship of Gods hand.

Orson Pratt: Generations of the children of exalted people on the earth will dwell here on this earth when it's celestialized until it's too full for them, then they'll create more worlds. Exalted beings indeed continue to have children of their own, the same as you and I were before we took these mortal tabernacles. p294

Orson Pratt: Like the resurrected Lord, exalted beings will be able to go from one world to another. Heaven is not one place, but many. It is many worlds. New worlds continue to be made for the offspring of exalted beings. p295



Analysis of A Chronology of 50 Last Days Events from "Understanding the Book of Daniel" by Duane S. Crowther

These are 50 last days events identified by Duane Crowther. He has done extensive research on this and other gospel subjects and is a renown Latter-day Saint author. In the book there are supporting references from scriptures ancient and modern, as well as supporting and clarifying statements from the prophets. Some of his other books which even further ratify this

chronology include "Prophecy: Key to the Future" and "Inspired Prophetic Warnings."

I suggest that we are around event 7-10 or maybe even 14-15 in the timeline.

1. The **apostasy**
2. The coming forth of the **Book of Mormon**
3. The **restoration** of the Church
4. The beginning of the **times of the Gentiles**
5. **War** poured out upon **all** nations
6. The period of **preparatory wars**

7. The **fullness of the times of the Gentiles**
8. The **rising of slaves** against their masters
9. **WW3**
10. The **saints to suffer** persecution

[11-14 occur concurrently]

11. The **fulfilling of the times of the Gentiles**
12. Saints in foreign lands will **gather to the Americas**

13. The **gospel will be taken from the Gentiles** and later given to Israel
14. God will pour out his **judgements** upon the Earth

15. **Internal wars** in the US
16. World-wide **revolutions** and deterioration of governments occur as the period of wars of total destruction begins
17. The saints in America will gather to **places of refuge** in the western mountains (& other designated places of refuge)
18. The **political kingdom** of God will be established
19. The law of **consecration** will be established
20. The **New Jerusalem** and its temple will be built in Missouri
21. The conversion of the **Lamanites**
22. The **10 tribes** of Israel will come from the north to Missouri
23. **Christ** will come to the New Jerusalem temple
24. **144,000** high priests will be called
25. A period of great **plagues** & destruction
26. **WW4**, a universal conflict
27. The coming of the Ancient of Days and the Savior to the council at **Adam-ondi-Ahman**
28. The **fall of the great and abominable** Church
29. The **gathering to the New Jerusalem & its rise** as a world center of influence

30. The gathering to the land of **Israel** of the scattered remnants of Judah
30 & 31. General references to the **gathering** of the **House of Israel**
31. The removal of the **10 tribes** from America to the land of **Israel**
32. The rule of **David** the prince
33. The construction of the **temple in Jerusalem**
34. **Israel's political** affairs (pre/during Armageddon)

[35-38 occur concurrently]
35. The Battle of **Armageddon**
36. The fall of **Rome**
37. The appearance of Christ on the **Mount of Olives**
38. The **conversion** of the House of Israel

39. **Christ** will come to the **Jerusalem temple** and place His **glory** upon Zion
40. A mission to the **heathen** nations
41. **Israel's growth** following the Battle of Armageddon
42. **Christ's** coming in **glory**
43. The **1st resurrection**, resurrection of the righteous
44. The **Millennium**
45. The Battle of **Gog & Magog**
46. The **2nd resurrection**, resurrection of the unrighteous
47. The final **judgement**
48. The crowning & **exalting** of Christ & the saints
49. The **dissolution** of the Earth and its heaven
50. The **re-creation** of the Earth as a celestial world

Bonus: Timeline by Hugh Nibley

This is typed up in the journal of a friend. It is reportedly based on the work of Hugh Nibley. Though I am unawake of it appearing in any of Nibley's official publications, people often don't put things like this into their books, especially big figures like Nibley, as a way of avoiding controversy. This account aligns well with the general prophetic picture and I have no reason to assume the report is lying. The description at the bottom of the page is a claim that someone (the text is unclear, but seems to suggest Nibley himself) took this sequence of events to various church leaders who approved of it. Here it is, first the transcript, then the image the transcript is based on.

Events in the 10 1/2 years:

First 3 1/2 years

Mark of the Beast
Saints uphold the Constitution
Droughts, famines, and earthquakes
Saints gathered by the beginning of the first 3 1/2 years
Christian nations in war with Heathen nations
Complete collapse of the government of the United States
All Christian nations destroyed
Adam-Ondi-Ahman at the very end of the first 3 1/2 years

Second 3 1/2 years

Adam-Ondi-Ahman at the very beginning of the second 3 1/2 years
Seventh Seal opens with Adam-Ondi-Ahman takes place
Saints return to Jackson County
Building of the New Jerusalem city started
Jackson County Temple built
Ten Tribes return
144,000 called and sealed. Sent out to the nations ____ the earth as missionaries.
War between the three heathen nations killing one third of all men. (Revelations 9:15–18)
Jews offer daily sacrifices at Jerusalem
About 30 days before the end of this second 3 1/2 years, the daily sacrifice will be taken away and the abomination of desolation set up.
Jewish power to protect themselves taken away
Two prophets come to Jerusalem at the very end of this second 3 1/2 years.

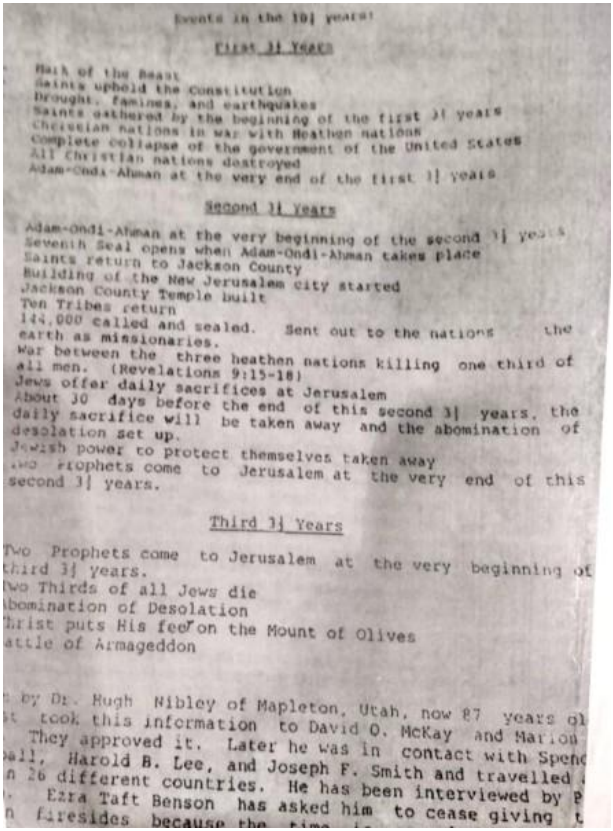
Third 3 1/2 Years

Two Prophets come to Jerusalem at the very beginning of third 3 1/2 years.
Two thirds of all Jews die
Abomination of Desolation
Christ puts His feet on the Mount of Olives
Battle of Armageddon

By Dr. Hugh Nibley of Mapleton, Utah, now 87 years old.
…took this information to David O. McKay and Marion [G. Romney]. They approved it. Later he was in contact with Spenc[er W. Kim]ball, Harold B. Lee, and Joseph F. Smith and traveled … 26 different countries. He has been interviewed by… Ezra Taft Benson has asked him to cease giving …firesides because…

[end of typed transcript]

[some of the text from the picture is illegible and cut off from the angle of the photo not capturing all of the page.]



Events in the 10½ years!

First 3½ Years

Mark of the Beast
Saints uphold the Constitution
Drought, famines, and earthquakes
Saints gathered by the beginning of the first 3½ years
Christian nations in war with Heathen nations
Complete collapse of the government of the United States
All Christian nations destroyed
Adam-Ondi-Ahman at the very end of the first 3½ years

Second 3½ Years

Adam-Ondi-Ahman at the very beginning of the second 3½ years
Seventh Seal opens when Adam-Ondi-Ahman takes place
Saints return to Jackson County
Building of the New Jerusalem city started
Jackson County Temple built
Ten Tribes return
144,000 called and sealed. Sent out to the nations the earth as missionaries.
War between the three heathen nations killing one third of all men. (Revelations 9:15-18)
Jews offer daily sacrifices at Jerusalem
About 30 days before the end of this second 3½ years, the daily sacrifice will be taken away and the abomination of desolation set up.
Jewish power to protect themselves taken away
Two Prophets come to Jerusalem at the very end of this second 3½ years.

Third 3½ Years

Two Prophets come to Jerusalem at the very beginning of third 3½ years.
Two Thirds of all Jews die
Abomination of Desolation
Christ puts His feet on the Mount of Olives
Battle of Armageddon

by Dr. Hugh Nibley of Mapleton, Utah, now 87 years ol
took this information to David O. McKay and Marion
They approved it. Later he was in contact with Spenc
Hall, Harold B. Lee, and Joseph F. Smith and travelled
in 26 different countries. He has been interviewed by P
Ezra Taft Benson has asked him to cease giving t
in firesides because the



APPENDIX 1: COLLECTION OF CLASSICAL LATTER-DAY PROPHET VISIONS OF THE FUTURE

Summary of Patriarch Charles Evans

- Fears for the State of the Union
- Sees the tribulation period and the wickedness of the country.
- Sees multitudes fleeing to the place of safety in the mountains where the church was established.
- Confidence is lost - wealth against labor, labor against wealth Sees economic collapse that triggers a civil war.
- Earthquakes begin in vast chasms all over the U.S.
- Multiple plagues are released, atmosphere is leaden hue.
- Foreign power invades the country, our men come out of the mountains to rescue the constitution and drive out the foreign troops.
- The gospel goes forth again. The New Jerusalem temple is built and becomes the center of the country.
- Details about the state of the Millennium.

Summary of President John Taylor

- Saw badges of mourning on every house in Salt Lake City (plague).
- Streets empty. People walking with bundles to get to the mountains.
- Civil war. Family against family, men killing one another, tulmult.
- Washington DC, White House was empty. Everything in ruins.
- Monuments blown up.

- Water in Chesapeake Bay stagnant.
- Philadelphia everyone was dead.
- New York dead everywhere, destruction, death and rapine.
- No carriages, buggies or cars were running.
- Mighty fire raging.
- Missouri River desolate, but 12 men dressed in temple robes consecrating the ground to build the New Jerusalem temple.
- Saw people coming from the desert mountains to build the temple.
- Great pillar of clouds hovering over the temple site.

Summary of Heber C. Kimball

- Army of Elders will be sent out to the four quarters to search out and warn the wicked of what is coming.
- Salt Lake City will be classed among the wicked cities of the world.
- A spirit of speculation and extravagance will take possession of the Saints, and the results will be financial bondage.
- Persecution comes next. All true LDS will be tested to the limit.
- Many will apostatize. Darkness will cover the land and the minds of the people.
- The judgments of God will be poured out on the wicked.
- Elders far and near will be called home.
- Missouri will be swept clean.
- Prophet Joseph will make an appearance to the faithful at Adom-ondi-Ahman.

Summary of President George Albert Smith

- There will be a another great war that will make the Great Depression look like a Sunday picnic.
- People will drop like flies.
- Soviet Union's military will dwarf the U.S. (happened under Obama)
- U.S. withdraws its missiles from Europe (happened in 1988) Until then all presidents will be of British or No. European ancestry.
- Trucks will be planted along the highways and detonate all at once.
- Nuclear strikes and an EMP.
- Conditions will return to pre-1800 ancestors.
- There will be a nuclear attack on a holiday after a new president is elected (but before he takes office).

Heber C Kimball Sees Deception, Persecution, Elders Called Home, Return of Joseph Smith, Gathering to Missouri – Printed In Deseret News

Deseret News Printing of Heber C. Kimball Prophecies:

(Heber C. Kimball, First Counselor in the First Presidency, May **1868**, printed in the **Deseret News, 23 May 1931**; see also J. Golden Kimball's reading of these things in the Conference Report Oct. 1930 p. 58-59)

An army of Elders will be sent to the four quarters of the earth to search out the righteous and **warn the wicked of what is coming**. All kinds of religions will be started and **miracles performed that will deceive the very elect** if that were possible. Our sons and daughters must live pure lives so as to be prepared for what is coming. After a while the Gentiles will gather by the thousands to this place, and **Salt Lake City will be classed among the wicked cities of the world**. A spirit of **speculation and extravagance will take possession of the Saints, and the results will be financial bondage**.

Persecution comes next and all true Latter-day **Saints will be tested to the limit**. **Many will apostatize** and others will be still not knowing what to do. Darkness will cover the earth and gross darkness the minds of the people. The **judgments** of God will be poured out on the wicked to the extent that our **Elders from far and near will be called home**, or in other words the gospel will be taken from the Gentiles and later on carried to the Jews.

The western boundary of the State of **Missouri will be swept so clean** of its inhabitants that as President Young tells us, when you return to that place, there will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.

Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to a test that will try the integrity of the best of them. The **pressure will become so great that the more righteous among them will cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance** comes.

Then the Prophet **Joseph and others will make their appearance** and those who have remained faithful will be selected to return to Jackson County, Missouri and take part in the building of that beautiful city, the New Jerusalem.

(Heber C. Kimball, First Counselor in the First Presidency, May 1868, in Deseret News, 23 May 1931; see also see also J. Golden Kimball's reading of these things in the Conference Report Oct. 1930 p. 58-59)

Compare also with this: Heber C Kimball (as reported by Amanda H. Wilcox in Salt Lake City in May 1868) said, "The western boundries of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that, as President Young tells us, when we return to that place, 'There will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.'" (Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox, n.p., n.d., p. 6.)

Consider also Heber's teaching on Salt Lake City becoming wicked. J. Golden Kimball quotes him in this address: "I claim not to be a prophet, but **I am a son of a prophet**, and I expect to give you evidence-whether you question the truth of it or not-that shall be left with you-that Heber C. Kimball was a prophet of God. President Brigham Young on more than one occasion said: 'Heber is my prophet, and I love to hear him prophesy.' In May, 1868-that is sixty-two years ago–he said: '**After a while the gentiles will gather in Salt Lake City by the thousands, and this will be among the wicked cities of the world."** *J. Golden Kimball, conference address in*

Joseph Smith's White Horse Prophecy

Some questions have arisen regarding the authenticity of the "White Horse Prophecy" because it was not documented at the time that it was to have been given. Edwin Rushton and Theodore Turley were witnesses to this prophecy, recorded it, and gave their testimony to its validity.

A few years before the death of Edwin Rushton in 1904, he was requested by several close friends to make a recorded and notarized statement regarding this prophecy. His friends James H. Anderson acted as recorder and Arnold G. Giauque was notary for the following account of this prophecy.

[49] On or about the 6th day of May, 1843, a grand review of the Nauvoo Legion was held in Nauvoo. The Prophet Joseph complimented them for their good discipline and evolutions performed. The weather being hot, he called for a glass of water. With the glass of water in his hand he said, "I drink to you a toast to the overthrow of the mobocrats."

The next morning a man who had heard the Prophet give the toast returned to visit the mansion of the Prophet, and so abused him with bad language, that the man was ordered out by the Prophet. It was while the two were out that my attention was attracted to them and hearing the man speaking in a loud tone of voice, I went toward them; the man finally leaving. There were present the Prophet Joseph Smith, Theodore Turley and myself. The Prophet began talking to us of the mobbings and drivings and persecutions we as a people have endured, but, said he, "We will have worse things to see; our persecutors will have all the mobbings they want. Don't wish them any harm, for when you see their sufferings you will shed bitter tears for them.

"While this conversation was going on, we stood by his south wicket gate in a triangle. Turning to me he said: "I want to tell you something. I will speak in a parable like unto John the Revelator. You will be in the Rocky Mountains, and you will be a great and mighty people established there,

which I will call the White Horse of Peace and Safety." When the Prophet said you will see it, I asked him, "Where will you be at that time?" He said, "I shall never go there. Your enemies will continue to follow you with persecutions and will make obnoxious laws against you in Congress to destroy the White Horse, but you will have a friend to defend you to throw out the worst part of [50] the laws, so they will not hurt much. You must continue to petition Congress all the time, but they will not give you your rights but will govern you with strangers and commissioners; you will see the Constitution of the United States almost destroyed; it will hang by a thread, as it were, as fine as the finest silk fiber."

At this point, the Prophet's countenance became sad; he said, "I love the Constitution. It was made by the inspiration of God, and it will be preserved and saved by the efforts of the White Horse and the Red Horse, who will combine in its defense. The White Horse will raise an ensign on the tops of the mountains of peace and safety. The White Horse will find the mountains full of minerals and they will become very rich. You will see silver piled in the streets. You will see gold shoveled up like sand. Gold will be of little value even in a mercantile capacity, for the people of the world will have something else to do in seeking for salvation. The time will come when the banks in every nation will fail and only two places will be safe where people can deposit their gold and treasures. These places will be the White Horse and England's vaults.

A terrible revolution will take place in the land of America, such as has never been seen before; for the land will literally be left without a supreme government and every species of wickedness will run rampant. Father will be against son, and son against father, mother against daughter, and daughter against mother. The most terrible scenes of murder and bloodshed and rapine that have ever been looked upon will take place.

Peace will be taken from the earth and there will be no peace only in the Rocky Mountains. This will cause many thousands of the honest in heart to gather there; not because they would be saints, but for safety and because they would not take up the sword against their neighbor.

You will be so numerous that you will be in danger of famine, but not for the want of seed time and harvest, but because of so many to be fed. Many will come with bundles under their arms to escape the calamities, and there will be no escape except by fleeing to Zion.

Those that come to you will try to keep the laws and be one with you, for they will see your unity and the greatness of your organization. The Turkish Empire will be one of the first powers to be disrupted, for freedom must be given for the Gospel to be preached in the Holy Land.

The Lord took the best blood of the nations and planted them on the small islands now called England and Great Britain, and gave them great power in the nations for a thousand years and their power will continue with them, that they might keep the balance of power and keep Russia from usurping her power over all the world. England and France are now bitter enemies, but they will be allied together and be united to keep Russia from conquering the world.

The two Popes, Greek and Catholic, will come together and be united. The Protestant religions do not know how much they are indebted to Henry the VIII for throwing off the Pope's Bull and establishing the Protestant faith. He was the only monarch who could do so at the time, and he did it because this [52] nation, England, was at his back to sustain him. One of the peculiar features of England is the established red coat, a uniform making so remarkable a mark to shoot at, and yet they have conquered wherever they have gone. The reason for this will be known by them some day. The Lion and the Unicorn of Israel is their ensign; the wisdom and statesmanship of England comes from having so much of the blood of Israel in the nation.

While the terrible revolution of which I have spoken has been going on, England will be neutral until it becomes so inhuman that she will interfere to stop the shedding of blood. England and France will unite together to make peace, not to subdue the nations; they will find the nations so broken up and so many claiming government, till there will be no responsible government. Then it will appear to the other nations as though England had taken possession of the country. The Black Horse will flee to the invaders and will join with them, for they have fear of becoming slaves again, knowing England did not believe in slavery, fleeing to them they believe would make them safe; armed with British bayonets, the doings of the black horse will be terrible." (Here the Prophet said he could not bear to look on the scene as shown him in vision and asked the Lord to close the scene.)

Continuing, he said, "During this time the great White Horse will have gathered strength sending out Elders to gather the honest in heart among the

Pale Horse, or people of the United Stales, to stand by the Constitution of the United States, as it was given by inspiration of God."

In these days God will set up a kingdom, never to be thrown down, for other kingdoms to come unto. And these kingdoms that will not let the gospel be preached will be humbled until they will. England, Germany, Norway, Denmark, Sweden, Switzerland, Holland and Belgium have a considerable amount of the blood of Israel among their people which must be gathered. These nations will submit to the Kingdom of God. England will be the last of these kingdoms to surrender; but when she does, she will do it as a whole in comparison as she threw off the Catholic power. The nobility know that the gospel is true, but it has not enough pomp and grandeur and influence them to embrace it.

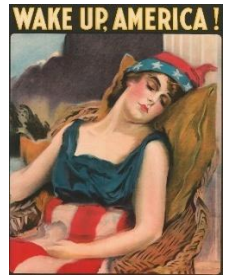
They are proud and will not acknowledge the kingdom of God, or come unto it until they see the power which it will have. Peace and safety in the Rocky Mountains will be protected by a cordon band of the White Horse and the Red Horse.

The coming of the Messiah among this people will be so natural that only those who see Him will know that He has come, but He will come and give His laws unto Zion, and minister unto His people. This will not be His coming in the clouds of Heaven to take vengeance on the wicked of the world. The Temple in Jackson County will be built in this generation. The saints will think there is not time enough to build it; built with the help you will receive, you can put up a great temple quickly. They will have all the gold, silver, and precious stones; for these things only will be used for the beautifying of the temple; all the skilled mechanics you want, and the Ten Tribes of Israel will help you build it. When you see this land, bound with iron, you may look toward Jackson County.

At this point, he made a pause, and looking up as though the vision was still in view, he said, "There is a land beyond the Rocky Mountains that will be invaded by the heathen Chinese unless great care and protection are given. Where there is no law, there is no condemnation, and this will apply to them (the heathen nations). Power will be given the White Horse to rebuke nations afar off, and they will be one with the White Horse, but when the law goes forth they will obey; for the law will go forth from Zion. The last great struggle Zion will have to contend with will be when the whole of the Americans will be made the Zion of our God. Those opposing will be called

Gog and Magog (some of the nations of the world led by Russian czar) and their power will be great, but all the opposition will be overcome and then this land will be the Zion of our God."

Charles D Evans, Patriarch, Dream of Last Days, Published in The Contributor



(The Contributor, Vol. 15, 1893; TRUTH 1:12, pp. 161-163; see also Visions of the Latter Days, p. 55)

Note: Wikipedia describes The Contributor as follows: “The Contributor was an independent publication associated with the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (LDS Church) between 1879 and 1896. It was a monthly periodical” (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Contributor_(LDS_magazine))

This is a dream from a volume at BYU Special Collections. This dream was included in The Contributor, Young Men's Mutual Improvement Association of the Latter-day Saints published in 1894 by The Deseret News Publishing Company.

Charles D. Evans was a church patriarch in the 1890s while living in Springville, Utah.

Note: There’s also a reading of the full vision shared by “Consider the Truth” channel here: https://youtu.be/Gy_FnWgIetI

First some highlights of key points:

- Labor became organized against capital.
- Multitudes going about and strikes and lawlessness.
- Bankruptcy famine and people killing each other with bodies lying in the streets by the thousands.
- Monuments of Great Men were destroyed.
- Earthquakes made great chasms feeling multitudes of people.
- Waters came and carried away whole cities missiles came.
- An unparalleled plague began a purple spot on the hand or cheek was noticed or the back and it increased
  Certain death followed.
- It rotted the eyes and consumed the tongue and women whose babies had it cast them away.
- A powerful chemical was put in the water to change it as blood.
- A foreign power invaded America and it looks like it was going to put in a monarchy.
- A power Rose in the west declaring itself in favor of the constitution in its original form.
- Every lover of constitutional rights gave support to the group of the West.
- It was fiercely contested but the flag still flew.
- The government based on the Constitution now and forever said one flag.
- There were various flags political and otherwise.
- In Zion, schools and universities were erected to which all had access and Urim and Thummim was used to study. Laws governing spirit matter were plainly taught as well as laws governing courser matter and they were flower gardens which for most beautiful.

Full Text:

While I lay pondering, in deep solitude, on the events of the present my mind was drawn into a reverie such as I had never felt before. A strong solitude for my imperiled country utterly excluded every other thought and raised my feelings to a point of intensity I did not think it possible to endure. While in this solemn, profound and painful reverie of mind, to my infinite surprise, a light appeared in my room, which seemed to be soft and silvery

as that diffused from a northern star. At the moment of its appearance the acute feeling I had experienced instantly yielded to one of calm tranquility.

Although it may have been at the hour of midnight, and the side of the globe whereon I was situated, was excluded from the sunlight, yet all was light and bright and warm as an Italian landscape at noon; but the heat was softer or more subdued. As I gazed upward, I saw descending through my bedroom roof, with a gently gliding movement, a personage clothed in white apparel, whose countenance was smoothly serene, his features regular, and the flashes of his eye seemed to shoot forth scintillations, to use an earthly comparison, strongly resembling those reflected from a diamond under an intensely illuminated electric light, which dazzled but did not bewilder. Those large, deep, inscrutable eyes were presently fixed upon mine, when instantly placing his hands upon my forehead his touch produced an indescribable serenity and calmness, a calmness not born of earth, but at once peaceful, delightful and heavenly. My whole being was imbued with a joy unspeakable. All feelings of sorrow instantly vanished. Those lines and shadows which care and sorrow impress upon us were dispelled as a deep fog before a blazing sun. In the eyes of my heavenly visitor, for such he appeared to me, there was a sort of lofty pity and tenderness infinitely stronger than any such feeling I ever saw manifested in ordinary mortals. His very calm appeared like a vast ocean stillness, at once overpowering to every agitated emotion.

Son, I perceive thou hast grave anxieties over the perilous state of thy country, that thy soul has felt deep sorrow for its future. I have therefore come to thy relief and to tell thee of the causes that have led to this peril. Hear me attentively. Seventy-one years ago, after an awful apostasy of centuries, in which all nations were shrouded in spiritual darkness, when angels had withdrawn themselves, the voice of prophets hushed, and the light of Urim and Thummim shone not, and the vision of the seers was closed, while heaven itself shed not a ray of gladness to lighten a dark world, when Babel ruled and Satan laughed, and church and priesthood had taken their upward flight, and the voice of nations, possessing the books of the Jewish prophets, had ruled against vision and against Urim, against the further visits of angels, and against the doctrine of a church of apostles and prophets, thou knowest that then appeared a mighty angel with the solemn announcement of the hour of judgment, the burden of whose instructions

pointed to dire calamities upon the present generation. This, therefore, is the cause of what thou seest and the end of the wicked hasteneth."

My vision now became extended in a marvelous manner, and the import of the past labors of the Elders was made plain to me. I saw multitudes fleeing to the place of safety in our mountain heights. The church was established in the wilderness. Simultaneously the nation had reached an unparalled prosperity, wealth unbounded, new territory was acquired, commerce extended, finance strengthened, confidence was maintained, and peoples abroad pointed to her as the model nation, the ideal of the past realized and perfected, the embodiment of the liberty sung by poets, and sought for by sages. "But," continued the messenger, Thou beholdest a change. Confidence is lost. Wealth is arrayed against labor, labor against wealth, yet the land abounds with plenty for food and raiment, and silver and gold are in abundance. Thou seest also that letters written by a Jew have wrought great confusion in the finances of the nation which, together with the policy of many wealthy ones, has produced distress and do presage further sorrow."

Factions now sprang up as if by magic; capital had entrenched itself against labor throughout the land; labor was organized against capital. The voice of the wise sought to tranquilize these two powerful factors in vain. Excited multitudes ran wildly about; strikes increased; lawlessness sought the place of regular government. At this juncture I saw a banner floating in air whereon was written the words Bankruptcy, Famine, Floods, Fire, Cyclones, Blood, Plague. Mad with rage men and women rushed upon each other. Blood flowed down the streets of cities like water. The demon of bloody hate had enthroned itself on the citadel of reason; the thirst for blood was intenser than that of the parched tongue for water. Thousands of bodies lay untombed in the streets. Men and women fell dead from the terror inspired from fear. Rest was but the precursor of the bloody work of the morrow. All around lay the mournfulness of a past in ruins. Monuments erected to perpetuate the names of the noble and brave were ruthlessly destroyed by combustibles. A voice now sounded aloud these words, Yet once again I shake not the earth only, but also heaven. And this word yet once again signifies the removing of things that are shaken, as of things that are made; that those things that cannot be shaken may remain."

Earthquakes rent the earth in vast chasms, which engulfed multitudes; terrible groanings and wailings filled the air; the shrieks of the suffering were indescribably awful. Water wildly rushed in from the tumultuous ocean whose very roaring under the mad rage of the fierce cyclone, was unendurable to the ear. Cities were swept away in an instant, missiles were hurled through the atmosphere at a terrible velocity and people were carried upward only to descend in unrecognized mass. Islands appeared where ocean waves once tossed the gigantic steamer. In other parts voluminous flames, emanating from vast fires, rolled with fearful velocity destroying life and property in their destructive course. The seal of the dread menace of despair was stamped on every healing visage; men fell exhausted, appalled and trembling. Every element of agitated nature seemed a demon of wrathful fury. Dense clouds, blacker than midnight darkness, whose thunders reverberated with intonations which shook the earth, obscured the sunlight. Darkness reined, unrivalled and supreme.

Again the light shone, revealing an atmosphere tinged with a leaden hue, which was the precursor of an unparalleled plague whose first symptoms were recognized by a purple spot which appeared on the cheek, or on the back of the hand, and which, invariably, enlarged until it spread over the entire surface of the body, producing certain death. Mothers, on sight of it, cast away their children as though they were poisonous reptiles. This plague, in grown persons, rotted the eyes in their sockets and consumed the tongue as would a powerful acid or an intense heat. Wicked men, suffering under its writhing agonies, cursed God and died, as they stood on their feet, and the birds of prey feasted on their carcasses.

I saw in my dream the messenger again appear with a vile in his right hand, who addressing me said: Thou knowest somewhat of the chemistry taught in the schools of human learning, behold now a chemistry sufficiently powerful to change the waters of the sea."

He then poured out his vile upon the sea and it became putrid as the blood of a dead man, and every living soul therein died. Other plagues followed I forbear to record. A foreign power had invaded the nation which, from every human indication, it appeared would seize the government and supplant it with monarchy. I stood trembling at the aspect, when, lo, a power arose in the west which declared itself in favor of the constitution in its

original form; to this suddenly rising power every lover of constitutional rights and liberties throughout the nation gave hearty support. This struggle was fiercely contested, but the stars and stripes floated in the breeze, and, bidding defiance to opposition, waved proudly over the land. Among the many banners I saw, was one inscribed thus: The government based on the constitution, now and forever;" on another Liberty of Conscience, social, religious, and political."

The light of the gospel which had but dimly shown because of abomination, now burst forth with a luster that filled the earth. Cities appeared in every direction, one of which, in the center of the continent, was an embodiment of architectural science after the pattern of eternal perfections, whose towers glittered with a radiance emanating from the sparkling of emeralds, rubies, diamonds and other precious stones set in a canopy of gold and so elaborately and skillfully arranged as to shed forth a brilliancy which dazzled and enchanted the eye, excited admiration and developed a taste for the beautiful, beyond anything man had ever conceived. Fountains of crystal water shot upward their transparent jets which in the brilliant sunshine, formed ten thousand rainbow tints at once delightful to the eye. Gardens, the perfections of whose arrangement confound all our present attempts at genius, bedecked with flowers of varied hue to develop and refine the taste, and strengthen the love for these nature's chastest adornments. Schools and universities were erected, to which all had access; in the latter Urims were placed, for the study of the past, present and future, and for obtaining a knowledge of the heavenly bodies, and of the constructions of worlds and universes. The inherent properties of matter, its arrangements, laws, mutual relations were revealed and taught and made plain as the primer lesson of a child. The conflicting theories of geologists regarding the formation and age of the earth were settled forever. All learning was based on eternal certainty. Angels brought forth the treasures of knowledge which had lain hid in the womb of the dumb and distant past.

The appliances for making learning easy surpass all conjecture. Chemistry was rendered extremely simple, by the power which the Urims conferred on man of looking into and through the elements of every kind; a stone furnished no more obstruction to human vision than the air itself. Not only were the elements and all their changes and transformations plainly understood but the construction, operations, and laws of mind were thus rendered equally plain as those which governed the coarser elements. While

looking through the Urim and Thummim I was amazed at a transformation, which even now is to me marvelous beyond description, clearly showing the manner in which particles composing the inorganic kingdom of nature are conducted upward to become a part of organic forms; another astounding revelation was a view clearly shown me of the entire circulation of the blood both in man and animals. After seeing these things and gazing once more upon the beautiful city, the following passage of Scripture sounded in my ears: Out of Zion the perfection of beauty God shineth."

On this I awoke to find all a dream.

I have written the foregoing, which is founded on true principle, under the caption of a dream, partly to instruct and partly to check the folly of reading silly novels now so prevalent.

Charles D. Evans Springville, Utah.

John Taylor's Last Days Vision #1: Plague Across US

By John Taylor (Source: Wilford Woodruff's Journal, June 15, 1878, "A Vision, Salt Lake City, Night of Dec 16, 1877″)

NOTE: There are some that dispute whether it was John Taylor that had this vision. The vision does, in fact, come from the journal of Wilford Woodruff. It is verified that it was not Wilford Woodruff that had the vision. Many believe it to be John Taylor's vision. It ended up in both of their journals but one of them had it in French, and that would only be John Taylor. There are other visionaries who had the very same dream. Sarah Menet even named the same six cities in her dream that Taylor had. Any vision that prophets an apostles have everybody picks apart and tries to discredit. They never said this was revelation or prophecy, they just put them in their journals. Cleon Skousen and Duane Crowther both put this vision in their books, and these are both known for high quality research.

Here it is:

I went to bed as usual at about 7:30PM. I had been reading a revelation in the French language. My mind was calm, more so than usual if possible, so I composed myself for sleep, but could not. I felt a strange feeling come over me and apparently became partially unconscious. Still I was not asleep, nor exactly awake, with dreary feeling. The first thing that I recognized was that I was in the tabernacle of Ogden, Utah. I was sitting in the back part of the building for fear they would call on me to preach, which however they did, for after singing the second time they called me to the stand.

I arose to speak and said that I didn't know that I had anything especially to say, except to bear my testimony of the Latter-day work, when all at once it seemed as if I was lifted out of myself and I said, "Yes, I have something to say and that is this: Some of my brethren have been asking, "What is becoming of us? What is the wind blowing?" I will answer you right here what is coming very shortly."

I was then in a dream, immediately in the city of Salt Lake, and wandering around in the streets and in all parts of the city, and on the doors of the houses I found badges of mourning and I could not find a house but was in mourning. I passed my own house and found the same sign there, and I asked the question, "Is that me that is dead?" Someone gave me the an-swer, "No, you will get through it all."

It seemed strange to me that I saw no person in the streets in all my wandering around the country. I seemed to be in their houses with the sick, but saw no funeral procession, nor anything of the kind, but the city looking still and as though the people were praying. And it seemed that they had controlled the disease, but what the disease was I did not learn; it was not made known to me. I then looked over the country, north, east, south, and west, and the same mourning was in every land and in every place.

The next thing I knew I was just this side of Omaha. It seemed though I was above the earth, and looking down upon it. As I passed along upon my way east I saw the road full of people, mostly women, with just what they could carry in bundles on their backs, traveling to the mountains on foot. I wondered how they would get through with such a small pack on their backs. It was remarkable to us[?] that there were so few men among them. It didn't seem to me as though the cars were running, the rails looked rusty and the roads abandoned; and I have no conception of how I traveled as I looked down upon the people.

I continued east by the way of Omaha and Council Bluffs, which were full of disease. There were women everywhere. The state of Illinois and Missouri were in a tumult, men killing one another, women joining the fighting, family against family in the most horrid manner.

I imagined next that I was in Washington and I found desolation there. The White House was empty and the Halls of Congress the same, and everything in ruins. The people seemed to have left the city and left it to take care of itself.

I was in Baltimore. In the square where the Monument of 1812 stands in front of the Charles Hotel. I saw dead piled up so as to fill the street square. I saw mothers cutting the throats of their own children for their blood. I saw them suck it from their throats to quench their own thirst and then lie down and die. The water of Chesapeake Bay was stagnant, and the stench arising from it on account of their throwing their bodies into it so terrible, that the very smell carried death with it. I saw no man except they were dead or dying in the streets and very few women. Those I saw were crazy and in an ugly condition. Everywhere I went I beheld the same sights all over the city; it was terrible beyond description to look upon.

I thought this must be the end; but no, I was seemingly in an instant in the city of Philadelphia. There everything was still. No living soul was there to greet me. It seemed the whole city was without any inhabitants. In the south of Chestnut Street and in fact everywhere I went, the putrefaction of the dead caused such a stench that it was impossible for any living thing to breathe, nor did I see any living thing in the city.

Next I found myself in Broadway, in the city of New York, and there it seemed the people had done the best they could to overcome the disease, but in wandering down Broadway I saw the bodies of beautiful women lying, some dead and others in a dying condition, on the sidewalks. I saw men come out of cellars and ravish the persons of some that were yet alive and then kill them and rob their bodies of all the valuables they had upon them. Then before they could get back to the cellar they would roll over a time or two and die in agony. In some of the back streets I saw them kill some of their own offspring and eat their raw flesh, and in a few minutes die themselves. Everywhere I went I saw the same scene of horror and destruction and death and rapine.

No carriages, buggies, or cars were running; but death and destruction were everywhere. Then I saw fire start and just at that moment a mighty East wind sprang up and carried the flames over the city and it burned until there was not a single building left standing there, even down to the waters edge. Wharves and shipping all seemed to burn and follow in common destruction where the "great city" was a short time ago. The stench from the bodies that were burning was so great that it was carried a long distance cross the Hudson Bay and carried death and destruction wherever it penetrated. I cannot paint in words the horror that seemed to compass me about; it was beyond description of man.

I supposed this was the end; but it was not. I was given to understand the same horror was being enacted all over the country, east, west, north, and south. Few were left alive, still there were some.

Immediately after I seemed to be standing on the left bank of the Missouri River, opposite the City of Independence, but there was no city. I saw the whole state of Missouri and Illinois and all of Iowa, a complete desert with no living being there. A short distance from the river however, I saw twelve men dressed in temple robes, standing in a square or nearly so (and I understood it represented the Twelve Gates of the New Jerusalem.) Their hands were uplifted in consecration of the ground and laying the corner stone of the temple. I saw myraids of angels hovering over them, and saw also an immense pillar of clouds over them and heard the angels singing the most heavenly music. The words were "Now is estab-lished the King-dom of God and his Christ, which shall never more be thrown down."

I saw people coming from the river and from the desert places a long way off to help build the temple and it seemed that hosts of angels all helped to get material to build with and I saw some of them who wore temple clothes come and build the temple and the city, and all the time I saw the great pillar of clouds hovering over the place.

Instantly, however, I found myself again in the tabernacle at Ogden. And yet, I could still see the building go on and I got quite animated in calling on the people in the tabernacle to listen to the beautiful music, for the an-gels were singing the same music I had heard be-fore. "Now is estab-lished the King-dom of God and his Christ, which shall never more be thrown down."

At this I seemed to stagger back from the pulpit and Brother Francis D. Richards and some others caught my arm and prevented me from falling.

Then I finished so abruptly. Still even then I had not fainted, but was simply exhausted.

Then I rolled over in bed and awoke just as the city clock was striking twelve.

John Taylor's Last Days Vision #2: Records Out of Salt Lake, Many Leave the Church (The "Horseshoe" Shaped Travel Path Vision)

Note that there are many teachings and scriptures on staying with the majority of the church, such as D&C 20:65; 26:2; 28:13; 38:34; 41:9; 51:4; 124:144, and further quotations and analysis support this doctrine as reported in an Ether's Cave blog essay by Matthew Rober at https://etherscave.blogspot.com/2014/10/a-key-that-will-never-rust-majority-of.html.

The 'Horseshoe prophecy' along with some helpful analysis of its source was shared by the Joseph Smith Foundation (https://josephsmithfoundation.org/the-horseshoe-prophecy-john-taylor/). I share their analysis with permission here, including a quotation from a church memorandum on the same, along with the full text of the prophecy. Though this source has possible issues, I present all the facts I'm aware of concerning it, and share the prophecy, seeing some good in it.

A Remarkable Prophecy By President John Taylor As Told by Edward Lunt An Ordinance Worker in the Mesa Temple, Jan. 1951.

The following statement is published for research purposes. Note that the First Presidency (consisting of Joseph Fielding Smith, Harold B. Lee and N. Eldon Tanner) published a letter to stake presidents, bishops, and mission presidents in the United States and Canada on March 30, 1970 expressing concerns with the authenticity of the statement as follows:

This purported statement, if ever given under such unheard of circumstances, was never presented to any of his associates or in any council of the Church and no record whatsoever is to be found in the historian's

office. We have the following memorandum from the Church Historian's Office in Salt Lake City under the date of February 11, 1970 which reads as follows: "TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

The so-called `Horse Shoe Prophecy' of President John Taylor has a questionable background and history.

1. The `prophecy' was first written down in 1951 by Edward Lunt which is between 64 and 74 years after it was supposed to have been given.

2. His mother ran the hotel from 1877 to 1888 during which time the `prophecy' was supposed to have been given. President Taylor died July 25, 1887.

3. George A. Smith was supposed to have been there with President Taylor but he died in 1875, which was two years prior to the time Brother Lunt's mother was in the hotel.

4. He states that his mother did not tell him until 1903 or 1904, which was about 25 years after it was supposed to have been given.

5. We have five different copies and no two of them are identical in wording.

6. One contains a statement about the Negro that purportedly is not in any of the others and particularly the one `version' which was signed by Edward Lunt.

7. In checking the Deseret News we can find no record of President Taylor being in Cedar City after 1883. Nor is anything in the Parowan Stake Conference minutes.

8. There is no record by any of the General Authorities about it nor is there anything in the diaries of which we have copies."

*"**First Presidency Explains So-Called Prophecy**," Church News, April 4, 1970, 3.*

Now here is the prophecy:

The following incident occurred at my father's home in Cedar City, at the time a stake conference was being held in that city, at which President John Taylor and George A. Smith were present.

Apostle Smith was asked to conduct the conference, as President Taylor wished to rest after his having held meetings in the different wards and stakes between Salt Lake City and Cedar City. President Taylor asked Elder George A. Smith to start the conference, as he wished to rest until the afternoon meeting. President Taylor, with some of the authorities, was staying at the home of my parents during this conference.

President Taylor wished to go to his room and lie down. He asked my mother to awaken him in time for the afternoon conference, as he feared he might oversleep and thus fail to arrive at the conference in time. My mother was busy preparing dinner for the visitors but was surprised to see President Taylor come into the kitchen so soon after retiring for his much needed rest. He immediately started telling mother of a most remarkable vision that he had just had while in his room.

He stated that he saw that Salt Lake City would become a great city with many beautiful paved roads and streets of cement construction, and that the people had become wealthy. He saw that the city extended almost to the point of the mountain south of the new 1951 State prison.

The people, he saw, had **become quite indifferent to the counsel and advice of the authorities of the church**, and were **more interested in the accumulation of wealth** than they were in living their religion. He told mother that he saw that **war** had been started, and that so great was the destruction of life within the city that blood ran down the gutters as though it were streams of water, and the violence was such that it would cause the destruction of the beautiful city. The people were **fighting among themselves until it became necessary to remove the church records across the Colorado river**.

President Taylor said to mother, "If you are alive at that time, **be sure that you are not behind the Church records**, because **after the Church records leave** and are made secure, the very powers of hell would be turned loose, and there will be **such destruction that there will be but little life remain**, —not only **in Salt Lake City, but in adjoining cities also**. And in **Jackson County, Missouri civilization will become entirely extinct**, and all means of transportation such as rail roads and highways will be destroyed, and the only means of travel will be on foot.

All means of **manufacturing will also be entirely destroyed**. Be sure when you see these things come that you have buttons, needles, cloth and things to

work with as much as possible, to **make yourselves clothing**, because all tools and every kind of machinery will be destroyed. It will be such a destructive war that in **comparison to the sufferings and the drivings of the people of Nauvoo, it would be only a drop** in the bucket.

"One **half of the Mormon people will entirely forsake their leaders, and half of the other half, because of their suffering, will leave the church**. **Many Mormons will die in the struggle**, but the Lord will bless those **who stick faithfully to the church and will bless them to the extent that they will not be destroyed**."

He said that faithful Latter-day **Saints would go to the south and would form a circle something like a horseshoe, before they return to Jackson County**, Missouri. Said he, "Those only will be privileged to help build Jackson County who will be found willing and glad to obey the counsel and advice of the authorities who will be placed over them, and who will seek counsel that they may be guided and protected from dire want and distress.

President Taylor also said that **we will assist the Lamanites in building the New Jerusalem in Jackson county**. He said that the vision to him appeared so terrible that he besought the Lord to close it up, but he saw that **those who would keep the commandments and adhere to the authorities of the church would be the ones who would survive and not be destroyed**. And that the lord would protect them as he did the children of Israel.

The above experience my mother told to me many, many times; and she held this great experience very sacred.

Subscribed and sworn to this 28th day of June, 1951.

Edward Lunt

Vision by President George Albert Smith

Recorded by DAVID HUGHES HORNE, P. E. Chemical Engineer, 28 February 1989

(David Horne is the nephew of George Albert Smith.)

(This account was printed, among other places, in the Dreams and Visions of the Last Days book by Roger Young.)

Sometimes rare, traumatic or shocking events become emblazoned into one's memory. This paper documents such an event. In 1946 I witnessed a prophetic utterance made by George Albert Smith, the Prophet and President of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter—day Saints from 1945 to 1951. I am a son of Dr. Lyman Merrill Horne and Myrtle Swainston Horne. My father was a g-grandson of George A. Smith, cousin of the Prophet Joseph and Counselor to Brigham Young. His grandson President George Albert Smith was dad's mother's first cousin. From 1944 until March 1947 we lived on the same block in the Yale Ward as George Albert Smith and frequently had contact with him. Many times he paused at our home while on his evening walk and talked with me as I worked in our front yard. My family visited him a few times at his home, and he visited my family at our home several times. He always showed pleasure when I met him and once told me what work the Lord had for me to do and what I must do to be prepared to do His work.

One day our father arranged for George Albert Smith to speak to us in a family time. The Prophet told us of a vision he had had. At least 11 elements of it have occurred, and the rest may occur soon. My record of his prophecy may be important, because it may not be officially recorded. Last year I visited the Church Historian's Library to read Pres Smith's journal to see what he had written about it but the staff knew nothing about it. I then discussed it with Leonard Arrington, former Church Historian, who said, “I have never heard of it.” Even Arthur Haycock, his faithful secretary, did not know of it, but he did not work with Pres. Smith until July 1947.

We dressed up in our best clothes. I shined my shoes again and again. Our father was disappointed with a sister who went to a movie with her boy friend. Dad asked her to stay with her beau, who had finished his navy service in August 1946, and share the evening with the Lord's Prophet, but she would not. We were seated at the given time in the living room ready for the Prophet to arrive. Present were my father, mother, sister, Alice Merrill Horne II (age 17), my brother, Robert H. Horne (14), my twin, Jonathan H. Horne, and I (11). It was after dark, and we had difficulty making the front porch light work. It was cold in that room, and I was glad to wear a coat. Thus I think his visit was between Oct 1946 and January 1947. Thereafter we were preparing to move. President Smith said much more than what I

remember exactly, but some of his statements were so impressive that I have a brilliant recollection of them.

When George Albert arrived we sang a verse of “We Thank Thee O God for a Prophet.” He stood and talked without notes for some time about the importance of keeping the commandments, always giving a full tithe, and being a good example wherever we are. He told us he once was on a train, in Mexico, with no other Northern European descent individuals. He said that a man recognized him as a leader of the “Mormon” Church, and introduced himself as a Mexican government official. President Smith noted how embarrassed he and the Church would have been had he not been acting as a faithful servant of the Lord should. I also heard him tell that story in another talk.

Then President Smith said, “I have had a troublesome vision of another great and terrible war

that made the war just ended look like a training exercise, and people died like flies. It began at a time when the Soviet Union's military might dwarfed that of the United States, and we, that is the United States, would have missiles that carried an atomic bomb in Europe. I saw the United

States withdraw its missiles to appease the Soviet Union, and then the war began.” He also said that we would have big missiles in deep holes he described like grain silos which the Soviets would try to destroy by their own missiles. They would hit military installations and some cities also. He said that the president at that time would be of Greek extraction.

Until then all the presidents would be of British or Northern European ancestry. He continued that the U.S. would be bound by numerous entangling alliances and would take away weapons owned by the people. He talked some about the initial attack and the ground warfare, but I can't remember enough to document all their tactics and in which countries various things occurred. One tactic, especially in Europe, was to transport tanks in thousands of big trucks like semi trailers on the super highways to have them located where they wanted them when the war was to begin. During that explanation I asked, “What about the Atomic Cannon?” to which he answered, “I didn't see anything like that.” Then he said, “The aftermath was dreadful. Think of the worst, most difficult times of the depression.” He turned to us children and said, “You won't remember the depression,” which was true. I didn't know there was a depression as I was

growing up; the sun came up every morning, flowers bloomed, we went to school, and there was church every Sunday. But he repeated to our parents, “Think of the worst condition of the depression. Can you think of something?” to which our father answered, “Oh yes!” Then President Smith continued, “You know how Sunday School picnics are complete with salad, chicken, root beer, and dessert, and everyone has a wonderful time. That worst time of the depression will seem like a Sunday School picnic when compared with how conditions will be after that great war.” When he finished speaking, he turned around and went to the front door. As he left I thought to myself, “What he said is really important. I've got to remember it!”

To understand Pres. George Albert Smith's woeful statement, “I have had a troublesome vision...” one first must comprehend the kind of man President Smith was. Those who knew him best describe him as the most humble, compassionate, magnanimous, kind, and merciful person they knew. He exemplified the Pure Love of Christ and showed his love for all of God's children by his unqualified service. For example, at World War II's end he organized a relief program for war torn Europe's destitute people. The Relief Society sisters made quilts and clothes. The Church welfare cannery produced millions of cases of food donated from farms and home gardens. Other materials and food were purchased from donations by church members world wide. Then he obtained U.S. Pres. Truman's permission to send the aid and assigned Elder Ezra Taft Benson to administer its distribution in Europe. The aid was not restricted to L.D.S. Church members. The government of Greece honored Pres. Smith for his and the Church's service to its people. Thereafter the Government initiated The Marshall Plan, and organizations like CARE sprang up. Thus for him to see an event of which he also said in his April 1950 Conf concluding speech, “..people by the millions will die like flies,” CR—4/50:5,l69 indeed must have been a troublesome vision (see also Harold B. Lee CR—l0/5l:28—29).

When President Smith told us of his vision, the U.S. and the USSR were allies. Some tiffs had occurred between the USSR and the U.S., but the idea that the Soviets would become an enemy wasn't popular. In 1946 the USA was the world's great military power. It seems the allies of the

U.S. succeeded in World War II because we had sent them material. The idea that the USSR would dwarf the US's military might was contrary to any reasonable expectation, but today it is exactly true. The Soviet‟s military

might is awesome. Nearly all their population including peasant farmers serve in their reserves and may become part of their army in time of war. They have amassed a year's supply of food (including U.S. grain) so they will not have to farm the first year of any war. They have about five times as many fighter and several times as many modern bomber aircraft as we do. They are well made, effective aircraft with well trained pilots and crews. Their infantry‟s weapons and logistics preparations are staggering. Thus, two elements of Pres. Smith's vision were exactly correct; the USSR became our enemy, and their military might dwarfs our own.

It's no secret we have nuclear warhead missiles in Europe and underground silos here But in 1946 nuclear missiles were beyond imagination. Even Massachusetts Institute of Technology's president in 1950 said, “Intercontinental ballistic missiles with nuclear warheads are impossible.” But we had them by 1963; I've worked in Minuteman Missile silos which accurately fit Pres.

Smith's description. But our cruise missiles were made after 1980. General Bernard Rogers,

NATO Commander, was so outspoken against the INF treaty that he was removed. General John Gavins, his successor, said that he could not maintain Europe in a war for more than two weeks without nuclear weapons. So five more elements of Pres Smith's vision are verified; we have missiles, in Europe, and in silos, that carry atomic bombs, and are essential for U.S. defense.

Next President Smith said that we would withdraw our missiles from Europe to appease the Soviets. Former UN Ambassador Jean Kirkpatrick said that the INF treaty hurts us militarily, but we have to do it. Dr. Eugene Callens says the treaty was politically motivated, missiles were used as bargaining chips in negotiations with the Soviets, which is a form of appeasement, and Pres. Reagan may have been buying time with their removal until other new systems were in place. During the negotiations we revealed we knew the USSR plans to violate the treaty. Thus two more elements of Pres. Smith's vision are verified; on 1 Sept 88 the U.S. began removing missiles to comply with a treaty designed to appease the Soviets. By 31 Dec 89 our missiles should be disarmed.

Just before Pres. Smith visited us, the newspaper headlined a giant, about 24 wheel, artillery piece named the Atomic Cannon. It was to have been like

Big Bertha Germany used to batter Liege, Namur and Paris. The Atomic Cannon was designed to fire atomic bombs 100—miles to assure no potential aggressor ever would start another war. But Pres. Smith said he did not see anything like that. History reveals the Atomic Cannon was a flop, and by about 1948 the program was canceled. The U.S. has a howitzer able to fire a nuclear weapon about 20 miles, but it is very different from the colossus shown in the news. Thus another element of Pres. Smith's prophecy is verified.

As predicted, all U.S. presidents have had North European or British ancestry. But in 1988 a man of Greek descent led the polls for a time. He may run again. Thus one more element of Pres.

Smith's vision is realized; we see how another element could occur.

The next elements in President Smith's prophecy were another great and terrible war, it would make World War II look like a training exercise, and people would die like flies. This obviously hasn't happened, but consider some of the Soviets' weapons and military preparations and the results of their use. The Soviets have 100—megaton hydrogen bombs which could be used against military bases and cities. Also, when the Soviets tested one of their first 100—megaton bombs the Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP), which is an incredibly high energy radio wave produced by the detonation, melted an electrical system power transformer's windings l90— miles away. The Soviets are far ahead of the U.S. in space technology and the number of satellites in orbit. From January through September 1987 the Soviets fired more than 700 vehicles into space, mostly military. The U.S. space program for that same time was almost stopped. And some military analysts believe some of the Soviet satellites in orbit above the U.S. contain high yield nuclear bombs purposefully to destroy the all transformers in the nation wide power grid, computers, radios, TVs, telephones and most other electronic devices in the U.S. Pacemakers and electronic watches may be blown out, too. Most transistors, diodes, integrated circuits and other semiconductor devices can tolerate less than 30—volts, but EMP is about a 50,000 volt/meter wave. Evacuation from cities before the bombs hit may be difficult, because new vehicle engines and alternators today have semiconductor controls. Their junctions could be melted in a millionth of a second by the EMP. It may be as if for an instant the entire continent Were a

microwave oven. Older vehicles with points in their distributors and mechanical voltage regulators may continue to operate if their alternator diodes are not blown. Diodes and electronic auto parts can be replaced if spares exist that were shielded. Amateur radio gear with electron tubes still may work afterward. But well pumps that supply our drinking water may be out of service for a long time.

The USSR's military buildup is not to protect their country from invasion. Who since Hitler has invaded the USSR? Instead, the USSR has been the aggressor in many wars throughout the world. Two reliable military sources have told me that on 4 July 1987 a Soviet Bear bomber 2,000 miles from Hawaii fired an intermediate range missile at Hawaii. When it was about 100 miles from Honolulu the U.S. had not destroyed it, and a Soviet aircraft that was there shot it down. The military information officer reported that when he revealed the story to the news media the media managers refused to air it saying, “It would be bad for business.” Recent reports of Soviet landings on the Aleutian Islands and other places suggest they are practicing for an Invasion.

If the war Pres Smith saw occurs, conditions will be like our pre—1800 ancestors knew with some shelters but few modern machines by which we work. Conditions will be worse for a long time. Government and major services including police; electricity; potable water & waste; fuel; and commercial food, medicines, & clothes may not exist. Engines to power pumps, vehicles and machines may not work; 3 Nephi 21:14—15 says that if the gentiles don't repent the Lord will destroy their chariots, cities, and strongholds. Our ancestors had wagons and horses for transportation and work. Shovels, hoes, seed, and bikes with puncture resistant tubes may be scarce. There may be no food from farms other than what will be carried, no manufactured goods, or any safe drinking water. Our forbearers knew how to do things without our machines that we do not know how to do. Thus, conditions could be exactly like Pres. Smith described; the worst conditions of the depression would seem like a Sunday School picnic in comparison.

In about 1940 my parents started a Sunday evening study group which their friend Dr. Sidney B. Sperry taught. In about 1964 while studying the Doctrine and Covenants Dr. Sperry noted Sect 1:17 said a calamity would come upon the children of men. He told us of an experience he had with Pres. George Albert Smith at the end of a conference. Dr. Sperry said, “I rushed up onto the platform to speak with Pres. Smith after the prayer.

When I arrived at his side he was standing, overlooking the congregation. The people were just starting to stand up, and the ushers were just starting to open the doors so they could leave. And I heard the President woefully mutter as he looked over the congregation... They‟ll die like flies.‟” Dr. Sperry explained his concern that Pres. Smith looked at the Saints and said, “They'll die like flies,” Neither my father, mother nor I said anything to the group what Pres Smith told us in our home. Knowing Pres. Smith considered Saints would be among those whom he told us would die like flies greatly concerns me, too. For I am one of them and was in the Tabernacle when that occurred. I went to conference in the Tabernacle when I was young and saw Dr. Sperry rush up to the speakers' platform at the end of a conference. Perhaps I feel like Laman felt about the Jews at Jerusalem being righteous- that many Saints are honorable, diligent in the Lord's work, and doers of the word, not hearers only. Yet I know Pres. Benson has said that the revelation on the production and storage of food may be as important to our temporal salvation as it was for Noah to get into the ark. And few have complied with this Counsel of the Lord's Living Prophet.

Remember the Lord said, “If ye are prepared ye shall not fear.” Ancient prophets knew our day would be difficult yet yearned to see it. The Saints are commanded to obey & teach the Lord's laws; to multiply and fill the earth; and build the Lord's Kingdom. Our task is not to shrink but to prepare for challenges that may demand our greatest efforts to survive free from AIDS or plagues that otherwise might infect everyone.

I record this as a witness of my friend and cousin, George Albert Smith's description of a prophetic vision he saw. I began writing it last Sept and have remembered more as I concentrated on his comments. I've not recorded here all I now remember. See also Pres. Smith's General Conference speeches CR-1O/46:149-153 & CR-10/50:180-181.

After reading my 28 Oct version my brother Robert said he remembered Pres. Smith's visit exactly as I wrote it but doesn't remember some I since added. Alice said she remembered some of the 23 Dec version. On 18 Dec Dr. Hugh Nibley said his mother (a close friend of Pres. Smith) told him about the vision which Pres. Smith received at a conference in the Bay Area and related it in his talk. Dr. Nibley also said he was close to LeGrand Richard's family and Sister Richards told him about the vision, too.

Copyrighted-All Rights Reserved. David Hughes Horne, P.E.

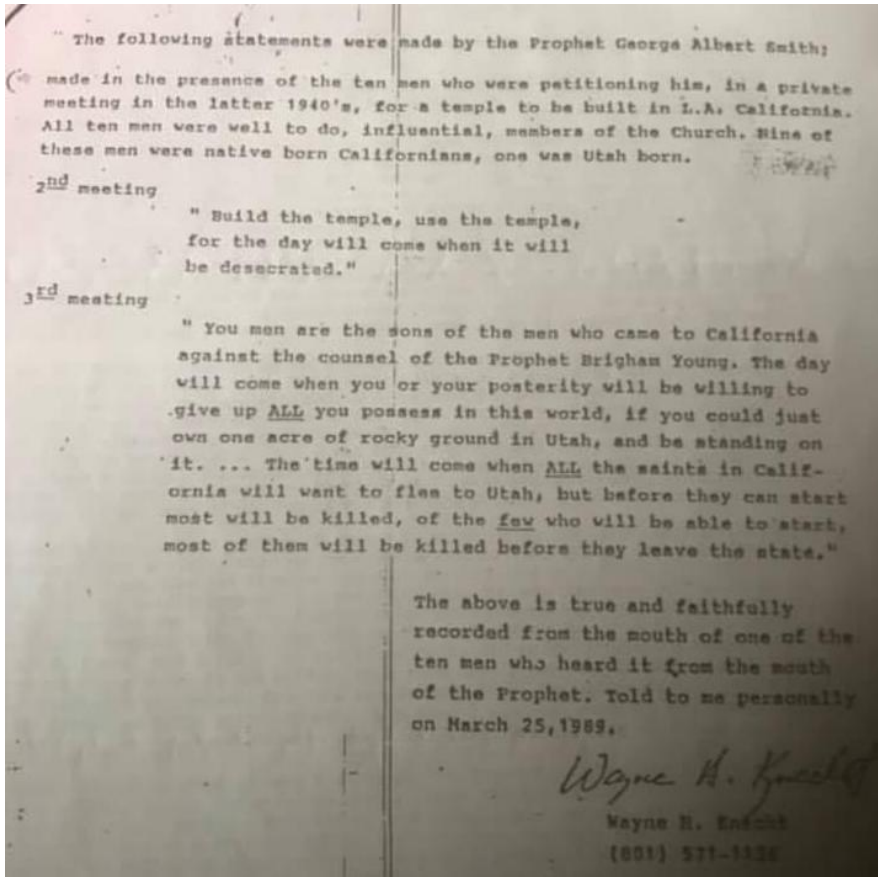
Additional Statement of David Hughes Horne, P.E., copyrighted March 26, 1989:

David Horne also mentioned that President Smith indicated that this nuclear attack would take place on a holiday after the new president was elected, but before he took office. The following war would involve many of the countries of the world but President Smith talked specifically about Europe, Germany, Hungary, Israel, Turkey, United States, and the Soviet Union, as well as a few others.

(Statement of David Hughes Horne, P.E., copyrighted March 26, 1989)

George Albert Smith: California Temple to be Desecrated, Many Will Flee to Utah

Here is a signed statement from Wayne H Knecht attesting to hearing George Albert Smith relate the following about fleeing to Utah from California and so forth:



" The following statements were made by the Prophet George Albert Smith; made in the presence of the ten men who were petitioning him, in a private meeting in the latter 1940's, for a temple to be built in L.A. California. All ten men were well to do, influential, members of the Church. Nine of these men were native born Californians, one was Utah born.

2nd meeting

" Build the temple, use the temple, for the day will come when it will be desecrated."

3rd meeting

" You men are the sons of the men who came to California against the counsel of the Prophet Brigham Young. The day will come when you or your posterity will be willing to give up ALL you possess in this world, if you could just own one acre of rocky ground in Utah, and be standing on it. ... The time will come when ALL the saints in California will want to flee to Utah, but before they can start most will be killed, of the few who will be able to start, most of them will be killed before they leave the state."

The above is true and faithfully recorded from the mouth of one of the ten men who heard it from the mouth of the Prophet. Told to me personally on March 25,1989.

Wayne H. Knecht

Wayne H. Knecht
(801) 571-1136

APPENDIX 2: PROPOSED SEQUENCES & TOPICAL OVERVIEWS OF PROPHETIC TEACHINGS

Phase 1: Cleansing of America

3 Sequence Pillars from Joseph Smith

1. **Dollar devaluation**. When they announce it is going to be de-valued.
2. It'll trigger a **civil wa**r. It'll make us so weak that
3. Foreign nations **invade** us.

These 3 pillars are based on a combination of 2 things Joseph said to Theodore Turley.

Based on a study of other teachings, we can tell these things happen before the deliverance of Adam-ondi-Ahman.

Already Complete: Jews Return to Jerusalem

D&C 45:21-26, esp. 25 "They (the Jews) shall be gathered again; but they shall remain until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled." See also **3 Ne. 20:28-29** The Jews will return to their promised land, Jerusalem. **Isa. 11:12; 1 Ne. 22:25; 3 Ne. 16:5:** These show that Jews will be gathered in from all the four quarters of the earth.

The reestablishment of a Jewish nation in the creation of Israel in 1949 is a tremendous fulfillment of this prophecy, one of the more sure signs that the times are upon us. They waited 2000 years since the Romans scattered them in 70AD, and in a single generation they took up the ancient Hebrew language as their spoken language.

Crowther summarizes some key developments in the miraculous gathering of the Jews which has taken place:

1836 The keys for the gathering of Israel were given to Joseph Smith.
1841 Palestine was dedicated for the return of Israel by Orson Hyde.
1873 George Albert Smith also dedicated the land of Palestine.
1878 The "Lovers of Zion" Jewish organization was formed.
1896 The Zionist Organization was organized and had its first conference a year later in Switzerland to establish the spirit of nationalism among the Jewish people.
1917 British forces took Palestine from Turkish forces and put a man of Jewish descent as governor of it, Sir Herbert Samuel. A proclamation called the Balfour Declaration invited the Jews to return to Palestine, and British helped fund such. 1949 the nation is made.
(See Crowther's Prophecy Key to the Future book p129-135)

2 Ne. 10:7 Jesus Christ has covenanted that when the Jews believe in Him he will gather them to the lands of their inheritance. (Note: Many non-Christian Jews have gathered to Jerusalem, having some amount of faith in God as they know Him from the Old Testament. That knowledge will grow to fully appreciate and accept Jesus Christ as the Messiah. It may be that more Jews, such as those in America, will gather to Jerusalem when they figure out Christ as Messiah. As I recall, about half of the Jews are now in Jerusalem, many of the rest are in America.)

The Missionaries are Called Home as things get bad:

- D&C 45 – when the times of the Gentiles are over, the Lord will preach his own sermons of tsunamis and earthquakes.
- The missionaries will be called home and Missouri will be swept clean (see Heber C Kimball).
- Brigham Young: Whole cities etc. will be destroyed after the missionaries are called home. See Crowther p37
- D&C 88:84-92 says times of Gentiles, then destructions, then a voice calls us to go out to meet the bridegroom.
- D&C 133:8-12 says Elders gather Gentiles, then Jews, then a call to go meet the bridegroom, and a call for the Gentiles to flee to Zion.

Economic Collapse:

- Heber C Kimball says speculation and extravagance among the saints leads to financial bondage, and persecution comes next.
- When the economy collapses, **basic order will fail**, including food supply chains. (according to Patriarch Evans & others.)
- The Great Depression will look like a picnic compared to the depression coming up. (see George Albert Smith)
- **Brigham Young** says that **gold and silver will be good for only 2 years** after the collapse, and then only food. The time will come that gold will hold no comparison in value to a bushel of wheat.
- **Heber C Kimball**: One dreamed that given the choice between a bag of gold and a cat, a person would choose the cat as you can eat a cat. See Crowther p.64
- **Heber C Kimball**: Trade your silks and fine things for grain and other needs, for we will have to depend on our own resources, for soon the curtain will be dropped between us and the rest of the USA. When that time comes you'll wish you had made your own clothing earlier. God requires that we go into home manufacturing. See Crowther p63

Famine:

- **Famine lasts 7 years**? (see parallel with book of Genesis and Book of Mormon both having 7-year famines).
- **Brigham Young**: No famine upon this people if we do right. See Crowther p65
- In the ancient famine there was deliverance from **Joseph in Egypt**. In the modern famine, there may be some relief in the Rocky Mountain Corridor (Utah Idaho Arizona) where the latter-day Joseph established a kingdom of saints and instructed them to store food. (Brigham Young talked about this. Brigham carried out Joseph's vision – on one occation he called himself an apostle of Joseph, though of course his core message was Christ.)

Remember to store food: a few key quotes on storing food for the famine:

Spencer W. Kimball said, "I remember when the sisters used to say, "Well, but we could buy it at the store a lot cheaper than we can put it up." But that isn't quite the answer. . . Because **there will come a time when there isn't a store**…" (Pres. Spencer W. Kimball, Conference Report, Oct. 1974)

President Ezra Taft Benson said having food storage in these days is similar to boarding Noah's ark before the flood: "From the standpoint of food production, storage, handling, and the Lord's counsel, wheat should have high priority. "There is more salvation and security in wheat," said Orson Hyde years ago, "than in all the political schemes of the world" (in Journal of Discourses, 2:207). Water, of course, is essential. Other basics could include honey or sugar, legumes, milk products or substitutes, and salt or its equivalent. The **revelation to produce and store food may be as essential to our temporal welfare today as boarding the ark was** to the people in the days of Noah." (Oct. 1980 Ezra Taft Benson Conf. Report, https://www.lds.org/general-conference/1980/10/prepare-for-the-days-of-tribulation?lang=eng))

President Nelson said, "For decades, the Lord's prophets have urged us to store food, water, and financial reserves for a time of need. . . . I urge you to take steps to be temporally prepared." (President Russell M. Nelson, "Embrace the Future with Faith," Ensign or Liahona, Nov. 2020, 74)

Heber C. Kimball said, "Harder times are coming by and bye, and there is going to be an awful famine. And if we do right, we shall take a course to lay up our surplus grain." (Heber C. Kimball, JD 109, 1856)

J. Richard Clark said, "There are some who feel that they are secure as long as they have funds to purchase food. Money is not food. If there is no food in the stores or in the warehouses, you cannot sustain life with money. Both President Romney and President Clark have warned us that we will yet live on what we produce." (J. Richard Clarke, Conference Report, Oct. 1980)

Heber C. Kimball said, "But the day will be, and it is right at our doors, when thousands and **millions** in the United States and in the old countries will **come to us** and render to us all the **rich things that this earth affords, in exchange for food.**" (Heber C. Kimball, JD 5:255, 1857)

A report of **Lorenzo Snow's** teaching says, "Elder Lorenzo Snow. . .spoke of the prediction of the servants of God that **wheat would be worth its weight in gold**. He asked what preparation had been made for that time. . . .**When this nation became disrupted by civil strife, thousands would flock here and we should have to feed them**. . . .As sure as there was a

God in Israel, the famine predicted would come to pass." (Des. Evening News, Jan. 31, 1877)

Civil War erupts in America Again:

- The next US Civil War begins in **Chicago** (according to Joseph Smith)
- **Brigham Young** says **only the Rocky Mountain corridor won't be at war**. Good people of all creeds will flock there to avoid war.
- **Joseph Smith**: The Independent American party will be created from the Republican and Democratic parties. The U.S. will spend its strength warring abroad. Others will want to divide it. USA citizens stand against it, swearing to sustain the United States on the blood of their forefathers. 1/2 of the US army will die in the conflict against the foreign nations who want to split up the US, and then the mountain boys of God will rush in and save it from ruin. Americans will be thankful and will want from then on only to receive men who can talk with God. (See Crowther p10.)
- **Orson Pratt** said in 1868: Many 100,000's to be destroyed in civil wars in USA. See Crowther p51
- **Orson Pratt**: Farming neglected as people flee city to city in an upcoming civil war. See Crowther p52
- **Joseph Smith**: US Supreme Government will cease to exist, people will run from place to place and families will turn on each other. See Crowther p53
- **Brigham Young**: Strife and opposition within communities is the knife that will cut down the USA. See Crowther p54
- **Orson Pratt**: Eventually fall of USA and Europe and in them all business cease from the chaos. See Crowther p55
- **Joseph Smith**: Make haste, when the wars come, we will need to flee to Zion. Gentiles will flow to us a constant stream then and our doors will be constantly open to them. See Crowther p61
- **Brigham Young**: The battles will even be Christians against Christians; all who won't fight will need to come to Zion to escape the fighting. See Crowther p58
- **Orson Pratt**: LDS Missionaries will be sent to all the world declaring there is a place in the heart of USA where peace and refuge from the major destructions can be found. See Crowther p59

- **Heber C. Kimball**: Millions on millions will come but not with handcarts, only with bundles and their children fleeing. See Crowther p62
- **Joseph Smith**: England (and France some also) will be neutral until the USA is so terrid they will try to step in to stop the bloodshed. It will seem they rule USA. USA will have many claiming government power till it has none at all. In the Rocky Mountains, there will be peace because of a cordon band of the white horse (the church) and the red horse (the Lamanites?) See Crowther p.63
- **Heber C Kimball**: They'll come with mere bundles and children coming to us for bread to eat. See Crowther p.64
- **Heber C. Kimball**: Risk of Saints famine since so many flee to west. Store extra food for them. See Crowther p.64

Refuge in the Rocky Mountain Corridor

- **Brigham Young** taught, "**An inland Empire** will be **established in these valleys of the mountains**, which will be a **place of refuge for millions** of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgments of God comes upon the earth, and the righteous come here for safety. Our people will go East, West, North and South, but the day will come, when they will be glad to come back. We will be shut out from the rest of the world." (Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock.)
- **Joseph Smith** taught, "A terrible revolution will take place in the land of America, such as has never been seen before; for the land will be literally left without a supreme government. And every species of wickedness will run rampant. Father will be against son, and son against father, mother against daughter, and daughter against mother. The most terrible scenes of murder and bloodshed and rapine that have ever been looked upon will take place. Peace will be taken from the earth and there will be **no peace only in the Rocky Mountains**. This will cause many hundreds and thousands of the honest in heart together there; not because they would be saints but for safety and because they would not take up the sword against their neighbor." (Joseph Smith's White Horse Prophecy)

- (More quotes on refuge in the Rocky Mountains are provided elsewhere.)
- Remember, not everyone needs to go to Missouri. Many will righteous will stay in the west. **Brigham Young** said, "Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. Are we all going? O no! of course not. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in these mountains than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our hard earned homes to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for related information.)
- D&C 88:89-91: Fear to come upon all when the calamities come.

The New World Order: Persecution, Apostacy, & Saints Driven into the Wilderness

- **Joseph Smith**: The whole government of the US will become one big mob. See Crowther p51
- **Ezra Taft Benson**: Unless we make communism treason, our nation will be destroyed. See Crowther p.11
- **Ezra Taft Benson:** The worldwide secret conspiracy that has risen in our day to fulfill these prophecies is easily identified. See Crowther p.12
- **Moses Thatcher** (Apostle): A secret band will sap the life from this nation and it will fall. See Crowther p53
- A wicked ruler comes to power and is a "short space" or "short feather" or "dies within days." (Rev. 17:10-11; 2 Esdras 11:31; Daniel 11:20)
- This wicked ruler overcomes the saints, aka, bans them from the public square, and drives them into the wilderness literally for about 3.5 years. See Daniel 7:21, and see 7a footnote – Rev. 12:13-17, and see Daniel 11:33.

- The wicked ruler dies, then Adam-ondi-Ahman happens. (Dan. 11:45, 12:1)
- You can't buy sell or trade without the mark (Rev. 13:17).
- Those who take the mark will go to hell (Rev. 14:10-11).
- If you still resist the beast, you will be beheaded (Rev. 20:4).
- **Heber C. Kimball**: "…the time is coming when we will be mixed up in these now peaceful valleys to that extent that it will be **difficult to tell the face of a Saint from the face of an enemy against the people of God**. Then is the time to look out for the great sieve, for there will be a great shifting time, and many will fall. **For I say unto you there is a test, a Test, a TEST coming.** This Church has before it many close places through which it will have to pass before the work of God is crowned with glory. The difficulties will be of such a character that **the man or woman who does not possess a personal knowledge or witness will fall…"** (Cited in a Conf. Report Oct. 1930 by J. Golden Kimball, p. 58-59)
- It is prophesied by Heber C Kimball that there will be such sore trials that will try us to the core, a major test.
- \
- About one half of Christians won't be prepared (see the parable of the 10 Virgins)
- See John Taylor 2nd vision on plagues etc.
- **Joseph Smith**: The Saints are **persecuted until** Adam-ondi-Ahman. Yes, the "horn" (see book of Revelation) made war with the Saints and overcame them until the Ancient of Days came; then he, Adam, gives judgment to the Saints, and they possess the kingdom. They become ministers here and in eternity. See Crowther p176

The Saints are Called to Places of Refuge

- **Brigham Young**: Latter-day Saints in the mountains dress as Babylon; only leaving tents could save them; it is better to live with Indians in wigwams than dwell in Babylon and miss the spiritual blessings. (for full quote & reference see Crowther See Crowther p.26-7

- **Joseph Smith**: When wars come we will have to flee to Zion, those who don't go when they have a chance to go will be afflicted by the devil. See Crowther p61
- **Wilford Woodruf**: Many women with bundles will go by foot to the mountains. See Crowther p87
- Only a tithe (%10) are chosen (see Isaiah speaking of a tithe remnant.)
- Saints are in the mountains. (See Crowther Prophecy Ch. 4 for many prophetic teachings on this, and Dream of Plagues (published in The Contributor. August 1884, 5:411)
- The wheat is safe gathered together in the barn, whereas the tares remain spread out in the field to be burned at Christ's coming. (See the scriptures. Further, President Nelson said the separation happens soon.)
- **Henry B. Eyring**: "Fear shall come upon all people. But you and I know that the **Lord has prepared places of safety to which he is eager to guide us**....It will be our choice whether or not to move up or stay where we are. But the Lord will invite and guide us upward by the direction of the Holy Ghost...." (Henry B. Eyring - Raise the Bar, BYU-Idaho Talk – January 25, 2005)
- **H. Aldridge**: "Just as in the days of Noah, **a way is already prepared for the escape of the Lord's elect Latter-Day Saints, if they are in tune with His prophets**." (Elder H. Aldridge, Second Quorum of the Seventy, LDS Business College Devotional, February 8th, 2005)
- **Harold B. Lee**: "Thus, clearly, the Lord has placed the responsibility for **directing** the work of **gathering** in the hands of the **leaders of the Church** to whom **he will reveal** his will where and when such gatherings would take place in the future. It would be **well <u>before</u> the frightening events** concerning the fulfillment of all God's promises and predictions are upon us, that the Saints in every land prepare themselves and **look forward to the instruction that shall come to them from the First Presidency of this Church as to <u>where they shall be gathered</u>** and not be disturbed in their feelings until such instruction is given to them as it is revealed by the Lord to the proper authority." (Harold B. Lee, Gen. Conf. April 1948)

- **Fleeing Nauvoo: a type of things to come?** There were three waves of departing Saints. The **first** group left in **February** (earlier than most everyone thought) in portable tabernacles (their wagons) and with the general authorities. The **second group left in April**, but they had no general authorities with them. The **third group left in September**, freezing and running **for their lives**. This third group was poor, sick, and they struggled mightily through that winter. (Thanks to friend of mine, brother Smith of Colorado for pointing this out to me.)

Major Destruction in America

- **Joseph Smith**: Destructions prepare the way for the 10 tribes to return from the north. See Crowther p33
- D&C 88:84: The major destruction time happens after the time of the Gentiles.
- **Orson Pratt**: Thousands will be left unburied in the US from so swift destruction. See Crowther p39
- **Brigham Young and Wilford Woodruf**: New York will be destroyed by earthquake, Boston by sea, Albany by fire. See Crowther p44 (they are referring to D&C 84:114-5)
- D&C 84:114-5 New York, Boston, Albany, these to be destroyed if not repent. See Crowther p44
- **Orson Pratt**: New York and others will have no inhabitants. See Crowther p44
- **Wilford Woodruf**: New York to be a mass of ruins, people will be in awe; houses remain but are left desolate. We will reminisce about the days before New York, Boston, and Albany were destroyed. Brigham Young said this saying of Woodruf is prophecy and will be fulfilled. See Crowther p45

Plague

- Plague decimates the East so bad that none are left to bury the dead. (see John Taylor)

- Plague and invasion. (see John Taylor.)
- Even in SLC all homes have a badge of mourning on the door. Saints who go to places of refuge miss this plague. (see John Taylor.)
- John Taylor sees the plague and says it hits 6 cities, first SLC, but he doesn't know how it hit.
- Isaiah says only a **tithe** of the people will survive, that's 10%. (See Isa. 6:11-13; 1:9; 10:20-2; 24:1-6)

Invasion of America by Foreign Powers

- George Albert Smith sees the nuke happens on a **holiday** before a new president can be inaugurated
- George Albert Smith sees an EMP (electro-magnetic pulse, a weapon to disable electricity) and resultant pre-1800s conditions.
- China invades the west, Russia invades the east. (see Joseph Smith White Horse prophecy & David Wilkerson)
- The records of the Church are moved across the Colorado River. A body of saints make a U-shaped trek out of Utah. (see John Taylor's 2nd 'horseshoe' vision.)

- The East won't have inhabitants to bury its dead, and it will be burned to get rid of the plague. (see John Taylor)

Saints Must be Tried Before Zion Cleansed & Redeemed

Heber C. Kimball:

- Heber C. Kimball (as reported by Amanda H. Wilcox in Salt Lake City in May 1868) said, **"The western boundries of the State of Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants that, as President Young tells us, when we return to that place, 'There will not be left so much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.'"** (Prophetic Sayings of Heber C. Kimball to Sister Amanda H. Wilcox, n.p., n.d., p. 6.)

- J Golden Kimball in a conference in 1930 cited his father Heber's prophecies from 1856 and 1868: "The western boundaries of the State of **Missouri will be swept so clean of its inhabitants** that as President Young tells us, '**when we return to that place there will not be as much as a yellow dog to wag his tail.**' **Before that day comes, however, the Saints will be put to the test that will try the very best of them**. The pressure will become so great that the righteous among us will **cry unto the Lord day and night until deliverance** comes."

Notice: The saints are tested to the max BEFORE Missouri is cleansed for their return.

Notice: This prophecy was given AFTER the first US Civil War, suggesting a pending fulfillment.

Some cast doubt on the Amanda Wilcox 1868 report since it's just her notes on the conversation with Heber C. Kimball. Wilcox source aside, many have promoted the Heber C. Kimball prophecies as valid including J. Golden Kimball, Duane Crowther (see pages 91, 86, 32, 62, 64, 63 of his prophecy book), the Deseret News, Gerald Lund, Cleon Skousen, and many others. Furthermore, the substance of Heber's message also aligns with the prophetic picture of events. Isaiah makes it clear that the saints will be tried and tested before they can redeem Zion.

Isaiah:

- **Isaiah 1:25–27:** 25 ¶ And I will turn my hand upon thee, and **purely purge away thy dross**, and take away all thy tin: 26 And I will restore thy judges **as at the first**, and thy counsellors **as at the beginning**: afterward thou shalt be called, **The city of righteousness,** the faithful city. 27 **Zion shall be redeemed with judgment**, and her converts with righteousness.
- **Isaiah 4:3–4:** 3 And it shall come to pass, that **he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy**, …
- **Isaiah 48:10:** 10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the **furnace of affliction**.
- **Isaiah 35:8–10:** 8 And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The **way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass** over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. 9 No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: 10 And **the ransomed of the Lord shall return**, and come to Zion **with songs and everlasting joy** upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and **sorrow and sighing shall flee away**.

- **Isaiah 52:1–2:** 1 Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O **Zion**; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: **for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.** 2 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

Isaiah says only a tithe of the people will remain:

- **Isaiah 6:11–13**: **11** Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until the cities be **wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man**, and the land be **utterly desolate**, **12** And the Lord have removed men far away, and *there be* **a great forsaking** in the midst of the land. **13** ¶ But yet in it ***shall be*** **a tenth**, and *it* shall return, and shall be eaten: as a teil tree, and as an oak, whose substance *is* in them, when they cast *their leaves: so* the holy seed *shall be* the substance thereof.
- **Isaiah 1:9: 9** Except the Lord of hosts had **left unto us a very small remnant**, we should have been as Sodom, *and* we should have been like unto Gomorrah.
- **Isaiah 10:20–22**: **20** ¶ And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* the **remnant** of Israel, and such as are **escaped** of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
  21 The **remnant** shall return, *even* the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God. **22** For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, *yet* **a remnant of them**
  shall return: the **consumption decreed shall overflow** with righteousness.
- **Isaiah 24:1–6: 1** Behold, the **Lord maketh the earth empty**, and maketh it **waste**, and turneth it **upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants** thereof. **2** And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury, so with the giver of usury to him. **3** The **land shall be utterly emptied**, and **utterly spoiled**: for the Lord hath spoken this word.
  4 The earth mourneth *and* fadeth away, the world
  languisheth *and* fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish. **5** The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the
  laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant.
  6 Therefore hath the **curse devoured the earth**, and they **that dwell therein are desolate**: therefore the **inhabitants of the earth are burned, and <u>few men left</u>**.

Note: Exactly where Isaiah's cleansing takes place is not certain, but Isaiah specifically speaks of Zion being redeemed by judgement, so I believe it fits in BEFORE the New Jerusalem is redeemed. This also aligns with teachings of Heber C. Kimball and other prophets and visionaries.

Missouri Cleansing Pending, Initial Refuge in the Rockies:

- General Doniphan thought that the Civil War fulfilled Joseph Smith's prophecy on the cleansing of Missouri, and BH Roberts promoted that perspective. Surely on some level it did. (Joseph said to Doniphan, "God's wrath hangs over Jackson County … and you will live to see the day when it will be visited by fire and sword. The fields and farms and houses will be destroyed, and only the chimneys will be left to mark the desolation.") (See Comprehensive History of the Church, 1:538–59) But I can't in good conscience say that is all there is to it, nor is Joseph's the only prophecy about the future of Missouri.
- More cleansing is to come to Missouri and everywhere else in America, except, God willing, a few little pockets of refuge in the Rockies where God directed His Church, as predicted by several prophets. Zion (in Missouri) cannot be redeemed until the Saints have been sufficiently tried and refined. Ask yourself, are we there?
- President **Brigham Young** spoke of the time when the Lord will "purge the land…cut off the evil doer, and prepare a way for the return of my people to their inheritance," and added that "if our enemies do not cease their oppression upon this people, as sure as the Lord lives it will not be many days before we will occupy that land [of Zion] and there build up a Temple to the Lord." (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 9:270) (See also Crowther Prophecy p.45)
- **Brigham Young** said, "**An inland Empire** will be **established in these valleys of the mountains**, which will be a **place of refuge for millions** of people to gather to, when the great day of the judgments of God comes upon the earth, and the righteous come here for safety. Our people will go East, West, North and South, but the day will come, when **they will be glad to come back**. We will be shut out from the rest of the world." (Statement made by Brigham Young to Benjamin Kimball Bullock as recorded by the latter's son, Ben H. Bullock. (Note: Researcher Duane Crowther, when citing this quote

in his Prophecy book on page 58 of version 39 of his book, states that he has a copy of notarized statements pertaining to the validity of this and other prophecies recorded by Bullock.))

- Remember also that not everyone needs to return to Missouri. **Brigham Young** said, "Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. Are we all going? O no! of course not. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in these mountains than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our hard earned homes to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for related information.)
- If you think you're out of dodge in Missouri, Utah, or anywhere else, think again. All of these places have extremely hard times coming their way. Only those places the Lord has specifically prepared, to which He will call his people at the times of these judgements, will be spared. Follow the spirit and the prophet, and God bless you! We do have a word of comfort from **Heber C. Kimball**. He said, "The trials in the last days will be numerous, **but to the faithful they will be of but [a] small moment,** for they will **live above these things**, they will **increase in power**." (Heber C. Kimball, June 29, 1856, Journal of Discourses 4:6)

Phase 2: Redemption of America

The Redemption of America: Adam-ondi-Ahman, New Jerusalem, & A New Holy Government

Adam-ondi-Ahman

- The wicked ruler ruled for 42 months (about 3.5 years) before Adam-ondi-Ahman.

- The wicked ruler's death is when Adam-ondi-Ahman happens. Dan. 11:45 (last verse) says "…he shall come to his end, and none shall help him." Then Dan. 12:1 (the next verse) says, "And at that time shall Michael [Adam] stand up…" That is a signal phrase for Adam-ondi-Ahman being initiated.
- **Heber C Kimball**: The gospel goes to the Gentiles, then to Jews, then Joseph Smith appears, and others, and then go to New Jerusalem. See Crowther p.32
- **Heber C Kimball** says the prophet Joseph Smith will make an appearance to the faithful at Adam-ondi-Ahman. Note: I would add, 'and so forth.'
- At the time of Adam-ondi-Ahman the saints are changed. They shall hunger no more, thirst no more, and they will be protected from the vials of wrath that are next in the sequence. See Rev 7:16-17 and Rev 8:1. Notice in Rev. 8:1 the footnote takes you to the Morning of the 1st Resurrection which happens at Adam-ondi-Ahman, including resurrection of the dead, and translation of the living. Cf. D&C 88.
- **Orson Pratt**: 20 million will be at Adam-ondi-Ahman. See Crowther p169-172
  Note: Elder Bruce R McConkie agreed with this, that there would be a vast number in attendance
- **Joseph Fielding Smith**: Adam-ondi-Ahman will be unknown of to the world at large, and to the church at large, it comes as a thief in the night, and only those officially called to attend will know of it and attend. See Crowther p172
- **Joseph Smith**: At Adam-ondi-Ahman, Daniel says the judgment was set and the books opened. This is for the purpose of giving the power of judgment to the Saints. Wars plagues fires etc. will continue until this meeting. See Crowther p174
  Note: It seems that the cessation of war and plague at the time of this event is for the saints, and that these things will continue for the rest of the world after this. Perhaps it is the hinge point at which the commotion is turned around.
- **Orson Pratt**: 12 Apostles were chosen among the 10 tribes in the north. See Crowther p174
- **Orson Pratt**: Be good so you'll be counted worthy to participate in the august [respected and impressive] ceremonies of Adam-ondi-Ahman. See Crowther p174

(Note: Some have suggested that the privilege of attendance may also be virtual or via spiritual vision, not just attendance in person. Whatever God decides is good.)

- **Orson Pratt**: The judgments to come after Adam-ondi-Ahman are the judgments from the Saints upon all the people of the world. Not the final judgment, but a judgment still. See Crowther p174-5
- **Joseph Smith**: The Saints are **persecuted until** Adam-ondi-Ahman. Yes, the "horn" (see book of Revelation) made war with the Saints and overcame them until the Ancient of Days came; then he, Adam, gives judgment to the Saints, and they possess the kingdom. They become ministers here and in eternity. See Crowther p176
- See Micah 5:8 on the "remnant of Jacob" coming against the gentiles as a "lion." Also, 3 Nephi 21 speaks of the lion coming to devour the enemy, that's the 10 lost tribes. Esdras also speaks of this.
- The Saints are to inherit the U.S. See Rev. 11:16, Daniel 7:22, D&C 136:41
- Note that the 144,000 aren't 19-year-old young missionary virgins. Virgin is symbolic of covenant fidelity to God, and that most completely happens in the holy order of the priesthood, meaning the marriage covenant (D&C 131:2).
- 3 Ne. 21:12-21; 20:15-17 teach that a remnant of Jacob (usually refers to Lamanites or the house of Israel) will tread down the Gentiles if they don't repent. They'll destroy the witchcraft, vehicles, cities, priestcrafts, groves, and we thus won't worship the works of our hands any more. These will happen at an unheard of level.

New Jerusalem

- Joseph Smith said the New Jerusalem, thought centered in Missouri, goes south to the northern tip of Mexico, North to the border of Canada, and West to what remains of California.
- Many righteous saints will remain in the West. Brigham Young made it clear that not all will journey to Jackson County. Many members of the Church will remain behind and maintain their homes in the western mountains. Remember, desert places are healed and become bountiful (Isaiah 35:1-7). **Brigham Young** said,

"Are we going back to Jackson County? Yes. When? As soon as the way opens up. Are we all going? O no! of course not. The country is not large enough to hold our present numbers. When we do return there, will there be any less remaining in these mountains than we number today? No, there may be a hundred then for every single one that is there now. It is folly in men to suppose that we are going to break up these our hard earned homes to make others in a new country. " (Brigham Young, Journal of Discourses 24:33) (Also cited in p. 90 of Crowther, Prophecy, Key to the Future, see that area of Crowther's book for related information.)

- **D&C 103:15-17:** A Moses-like man to lead Israel out of bondage is to come. This will be for the redemption of Zion.
- **Orson Pratt**: We know not who that man (referring to D&C 103:15-17) will be but that he will lead us as our fathers were in the wilderness. This Moses figure will lead us to Missouri. Also angles and Jesus will lead Latter-day Saints to Missouri. (This statement was made AFTER the Saints were in the Western US). See Crowther p84
- **Orson Pratt**: The Moses man bringing Latter-day Saints to Missouri may be yet the slain Joseph Smith. See Crowther p84
- **Erastus Snow**: Joseph Smith and Hyrum Smith will help prepare the way in Zion and her stakes and temples and will be resurrected and help the resurrection happen. See Crowther p85
- **Heber C Kimball**: Things will get so bad that the Latter-day Saints will call on God day and night. Then Joseph Smith and others will come and help take the faithful to Missouri. They'll help build that holy city the New Jerusalem. See Crowther p86
- **Orson Pratt:** A march of tens of thousands of Latter-day Saints will march to Missouri as a group; there will be a pillar of fire by night and cloud by day with them, and the voice of the Lord heard. They will frighten all nations as a body the Saints will return there after a few go ahead to purchase more land. An army of angels will protect them on the journey. See Crowther p86-87
- **Orson Pratt**: When the Lord is about to lay waste to the USA, he will call his people back to New Jerusalem. See Crowther p87
- **Joseph Smith**: Angels of heaven will protect the Latter-day Saints in their return to Zion. See Crowther p87

- **Joseph F. Smith**: There will be much peril on the journey to Missouri, ever fending off foes from taking your cows and family. They will not go by modern transportation nor railroad, but herding animals along the way. The success of the journey may only be seen by the children of who embarked. It might be not as visible to outsiders that God is helping. Most of the men will be gone (Note: from war probably). Many will not understand that God is who brings them. See Crowther p87-89
- **Orson Pratt**: The majority of the Latter-day Saints will return as a great people to Missouri and do so in peace. See Crowther p90 (Note: This statement is controversial, we know many righteous will remain in the Rocky Mountain corridor they've worked to settle, as Brigham Young taught. Brigham points out that we won't all fit in Missouri, though it could be a larger area centered in Missouri. Eventually all of what's left of America is cleansed and becomes Zion, including the west.)
- **Brigham Young**: Many of the Saints will stay in the west where they've built homes rather than going to Missouri. See Crowther p90
- **Orson Pratt**: Though not all the Latter-day Saints will be consolidated into one body to leave the west mountains all as one body, there will be a future time when many hundreds of the Latter-day Saints will be consolidated as a body and go to the eastern parts of Kansas and western Missouri to settle. See Crowther p90-91
- **Heber C Kimball**: There will be not so much as a yellow dog to wag its tail in Missouri, it will be swept clean. See Crowther p91
- **Wilford Woodruf**: At the time the New Jerusalem cornerstone is to be put in place, Missouri and Illinois will be totally desolate, a complete desert with no one living there. See Crowther p91

    - (Note: Whether this refers to the big cities of Missouri, or also the rural areas, I don't know. It seems, based on prophetic teachings on safety in the Rockies, that the saints will have to take shelter in the west before taking shelter in the east.)
- **Orson Pratt**: When we return to Missouri the law of consecration will be immediately in force; no one will be allowed to get property from the Church there unless they commit to consecrating it to the

trust of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. See Crowther p92

- **Orson Pratt**: The Latter-day Saints will be the richest people on earth; they'll have plenty of money to buy plenty of land around Missouri and thereabouts, building many cities and the headquarters in Jackson County. See Crowther p93
- **Orson Pratt**: The Lord will raise a servant to help with the New Jerusalem. See Crowther p98
- **John Taylor**: The New Jerusalem will have multiple cities. The Lord will guide the architecture of it; it is to surpass what we could make. It will be a city prepared to last forever. When the Zion from above comes down, this city will be the Zion that goes up and associates with the other Zion. See Crowther p98
- **Heber C. Kimball**: In Jackson County Missouri, historic Church leaders will be there in the flesh helping lay out the lands of our inheritance. They will also be at the grand council of God at Jerusalem, and the Church of the Firstborn. Some of these individuals will be Joseph Smith, Hyrum Smith, Brigham Young, Kimball, Wells, David, and Parley. See Crowther p99
- Proclamation of the Twelve Apostles: We command all kings and nations of earth to join the Church and send your treasures here for the building up of the kingdom of God. The only salvation that you Gentiles will find is here in the Kingdom of God. There is only one Lord, and he will rule as king of all the earth. You must come and worship at the same altar as Israel for your salvation. See Crowther p102
- **Orson Pratt**: After the city of New Jerusalem is built, missionaries go for the Lamanites, and bring them to Jackson on a 5,000-8,000 mile trek from South America too. See Crowther p108
- **Benjamin F Johnson** said that Joseph Smith said: A path from South America to New Jerusalem center stake of Zion will be made. See Crowther p109
- **Orson Pratt** taught this order of events: 1. Lamanite remnant converted. 2. Zion redeemed. Believers help build New Jerusalem. 3. missionaries gather all dispersed people of the Lord to the New Jerusalem from out of all of "this continent". 4. Gods power and God will be in their midst. See Crowther p109

- **Orson Pratt**: Jackson County will be the nucleus of Zion, and as the Lord wipes out neighboring places, Zion will increase **hundreds and hundreds of miles**, being filled with the people coming to it. There they will be a united people, and Jesus will come, bringing the righteous society down to earth with him, and they'll find these people on earth's Zion are united like they, those of above, are. Those of Jackson County and round abouts in Zion will be perfected and carrying out the law of heaven as it is in heaven. See Crowther p111
- **Brigham Young**: When Jesus returns in glory, it will first be to America, for that is where it all began. That is where he made the Garden of Eden. See Crowther p113
- **Joseph Smith**: Jesus will come to his people at the New Jerusalem and the world at large won't notice it. It will be totally natural for him to be there among those people at the New Jerusalem. He will give to them his laws and minister to them. See Crowther p113
- **Orson Pratt**: The **light** emanating from the New Jerusalem will be so bright that it will cause others to fear; it will cause people to **want to come cross the ocean to see** it for themselves. When the congressmen and kings of the earth are yet several days off in their journey to see the New Jerusalem, they will see its light illuminating the whole sky, like the northern lights of the arctic regions. When the wicked see this their knees will tremble and they will flee as soon as possible for fear. But when the righteous see this they will know it is the Lord and go to it, saying with Isaiah, that **"the gentiles shall come to thy light**, and kings to the **brightness** of thy rising". See Crowther p115-6
- **Lorenzo Snow**: In New Jerusalem, Jesus will be a guest in our homes, we will shake his hand, and he will eat and drink with us. See Crowther p117
- **Oliver Cowdry**: The 10 tribes will be revealed in the north country wither they've been a long time. They'll help build New Jerusalem. See Crowther p117
- **Orson Pratt**: The 144,000, the Priesthood, see Jesus' face in the temple before mission. They receive power to withstand the plagues and destructions and earthquakes of the earth such as the earth has never before known. This is why the scripture in Revelation says that the destroying angels are not to hurt the earth until these are

sealed, it's to protect them as they go forth among all this desolation to do their missionary work and yet be protected. Their bodies will be refined like gold and silver in a furnace in the temple. They'll preach in midst of the whirlwind of judgments on the wicked. See Crowther p122-3

- **Orson Pratt**: The 144,000 selected after the 10 tribes return. The 10 tribes will be crowned with glory by Ephraimites. The 144,000 get power to gather out of all nations. The 144,000 gather in the morning of the 7th thousand years. We are living upon the great eve of this. See Crowther p123-4
- **Joseph Smith**: Righteousness and truth sweeping the earth as a flood. Men and angels will be co-workers in this work See Crowther p125 (Note: A flood indicates a sudden massive surge that is greater than the surroundings can resist. The latter-day missionary fleet which has been growing the church is part of this, but more dynamic fulfilments are yet to come. As President Nelson prophesied, the greatest miracles will be seen between now and when the Lord returns.)
- **Orson Pratt**: When the inhabitants of the USA are swept off, much of their homes will remain, and will be desolate and uninhabited until the Saints expand to fill all those areas. See Crowther p178
- **Joseph Smith**: The Saints will fill the west, and through Mexico, central and south America would do a great work for the remnant of Jacob. The kingdom of God will be organized upon the earth through all nations learning war no more, and all adopting the God-given Constitution of the United States as a palladium of liberty and equal rights. See Crowther p179
- **Orson Pratt**: The 10 tribes will come from the north to Missouri Zion and do farming and ranching there for a while, then 12,000 from each tribe will be chosen to fill the ranks of the 144,000, they go back to Palestine (the land of their inheritance). The 144,000 will be sealed in their foreheads to be immune to the plagues and death. See Crowther p182
- **Orson Pratt**: John the revelator will be laboring among the 10 tribes. See Crowther p183
  Note: Joseph Smith taught this as well.

- **Orson Pratt**: The “whole of the tribes of Israel” return to Palestine to build the temple there before the 2nd Coming and before Armageddon. See Crowther p183.
- **Orson Pratt**: Asia and Africa have Israel in them though they are heathen nations. Some of Asia and Africa will repent since they'll see the power and glory of God manifested in Israel. See Crowther p183.
- **Orson Pratt**: The biblical feasts will return. See Crowther p183
- **Orson Pratt**: After God overthrows the nations, He will gather the tribes of Israel and return them to their own land. See Crowther p183

A New Holy Government

- **Orson Pratt**: The government will end and we (the LDS Church) make our own. See Crowther p54
- **Orson Pratt**: They'll overthrow USA, we'll need our own government, all else will be mobs, we will base it on the US Constitution. See Crowther p67
- **Brigham Young**: US Constitution won't be destroyed, at crucial time, the LDS "will hold it inviolate", and "save it from destruction." See Crowther p68
- **Orson Hyde**: Joseph Smith said if the Constitution will be saved, it will be by this people. Hyde says if we are righteous, God will give us a Constitution. See Crowther p68
- **John Taylor**: When US Constitution is torn to shreds, this people will hold it up to all nations and proclaim liberty for all. See Crowther p69
- **John Taylor**: US Constitution is a design for a new world. See Crowther p69
- **Orson Pratt**: The US Constitution is a stepping stone toward a higher government where God chooses the leaders and is based on divine laws. See Crowther p69
- **Brigham Young**: Joseph Smith organized the Kingdom of God completely and fully a few months before his death. It has its own constitution and officers which will be operating in the future. See Crowther p70

- **History of the Church**: The council of 50 isn't part of the church, it is for political things and its members need not be LDS. It can't organize the church, only the Priesthood can do that. The Council of 50 sometimes is called the General Council. See Crowther p70
- **Brigham Young:** The Kingdom of God is organized but won't be in operation till the Lord sees fit. See Crowther p70
- **George Q Cannon**: The Church of God is separate from the Kingdom of God. See Crowther p68
- **George Q Cannon**: The Kingdom of God will be to protect the rights of all people not just the LDS. See Crowther p74
- **D&C 65:2, 5-6:** The Kingdom of God must go forth before the Kingdom of heaven can. See Crowther p70 ("…may the kingdom of God go forth, that the kingdom of heaven may come,…")
- **Parley P Pratt**: The political Kingdom of God will start small like a mustard seed and be in the mountains where a majority of Gods people are. See Crowther
- **Daniel H Wells**: God will give the political Kingdom of God to the Saints when they've proven themselves capable of running it, having done well in every trial. See Crowther p76
- **John Taylor**: When the nations are convulsed we are to redeem them politically as saviors and finally redeem a ruined world. See Crowther p76
- **John Taylor**: The Latter-day Saints will rule politically. One by one the nations will come against it and fall. See Crowther p77
- **Parley P Pratt**: The political Kingdom of God will come as other nations are falling. See Crowther p77
- **Statement from The Quorum of the Twelve Apostles**: The time will come that as political Kingdom of God grows, all nations will either be for or against it. None will be neutral. Thus there will become a 1 political and religious standard - people will join and take lively interest with the Latter-day Saints, or they'll do all in your power to stop them. See Crowther p77
- **Joseph Smith**: England, Germany, Norway, Denmark, Sweden, Switzerland and Holland, these have blood of Israel in them and will submit to the Kingdom of God. England will be the last to do so. See Crowther p78
- **Parley P Pratt**: The 10 Tribes know the prophecy of Abraham that in their seed will all the earth be blessed, and they will look to the

spiritual and political kingdom of God as the group they will go to. It is there that the promise will be fulfilled. See Crowther p78

- **Brigham Young**: Jesus Christ will rule all nations of earth by the Kingdom of God. The centers for this kingdom will be found in Zion and the Old Jerusalem. See Crowther p78
- **Orson Pratt**: USA and all other governments will end and the Kingdom of God will rule all. The nucleus of that government is formed and is from God. Also all will respect this government and obey it. Its law will go forth from Zion to all like how now Washington DC sends the law to all USA. See Crowther p79
- **Charles W Penrose**: The Kingdom of God will rule all earth and the Latter-day Saints will rule it. All other kingdoms will be broken, like Nebuchadnezzar's dream. See Crowther p80

Judgement Around the World: Vials, Trumpets, Armageddon, & The Second Coming

- **D&C 87:6**: Full end of all nations is decreed. See Crowther p37
- **Orson Pratt**: As a flowing stream goes continually, so shall the Gentiles come to us in Zion, seeing God protects Zion and that there is no safety in their nations. Their nations will be tottering and crumbling to ruin. They'll come not to be baptized, but for safety, having heard also our officers are for peace, and our tax collectors are righteous. See Crowther p61
- **Brigham Young**: Eventually there will be a gulf between the righteous and the wicked so they cannot trade with each other and national intercourse will cease. See Crowther p62
- **Heber C Kimball**: Trade your silks and fine things for grain and other needs, for we will have to depend on our own resources, for soon the curtain will be dropped between us and the rest of the USA. When that time comes you'll wish you had made your own clothing earlier. God requires that we go into home manufacturing. See Crowther p63

- **Orson Pratt**: Gate will be shut; we won't be able to do foreign imports. Have your own productions. See Crowther p63
- **D&C 29:13**: Trumps will sound like on Mount Sinai, audible, literal.
- **Orson Pratt**: There will be a set of plagues followed by trumps; these trumps will all be literal. It will be just before the Lord comes. There will be 7 each, and then Jesus comes. See Crowther p144
- **Orson Pratt**: God will literally use thunder and cause the voice from that thunder, even the voice of the thunder, to say these audible words which everyone on earth will hear, "Repent, o ye inhabitants of the earth and prepare the way of The Lord, prepare yourselves for the great day of the Lord." It won't be a common ordinary thunder storm. In addition to the voices of thunder and lightning, the Lord himself will speak so all can hear him, commanding them to repent and prepare for his coming. See Crowther p145
- **Orson Pratt**: After Jerusalem is rebuilt by the Jews, the **2 witnesses** to prophecy there 3.5 years come there. By their prophecies and Gods power, nations gathered together against Jerusalem will be stayed, these witnesses holding them at bay by their faith and power. Eventually the witnesses are overcome. All this takes place after the trumps begin to sound. The witnesses mission is **3.5 years, so the trumps aren't all at once**, things must happen in between them. When all 7 have sounded, they begin to sound a 2nd time. The **2nd set** of trumpets won't be for destructions, but to declare Gods works in each of the 7 thousand years, 1 thousand year period per trump. When the 7th trump sounds a 2nd time, it's to pronounce that the work of God is finished so far as the great preparation for the 2nd Coming is concerned. The sounding of the 1st trumpet of the 2 sets of 7 trumpets is when the 1st resurrection happens; and all these great works are to be performed on the earth, and years elapse before Jesus descends with all his saints. See Crowther p154-5
- **D&C 45:69**: Every nation except New Jerusalem will be at war against each other.
- **Orson Pratt**: War in Europe to desolate it; no prisoners of war, all vacant or burned. No rules of war. See Crowther p161
- **Orson Pratt**: Universal war, all except Latter-day Kingdom; at this time Jews flee to Jerusalem. See Crowther p161 (Note: Many (about

half) of the Jews have already gathered, and it seems the rest at this time will also gather.)

- **Orson Pratt:** Europe falls before heathen nations. People of Christendom have more light and knowledge than the heathens so they'll be under more condemnation. See Crowther p164 (Note: Heathen nation is defined as nations without Christianity.)
- The vials and trumpets are opened after New Jerusalem begins, the days of wrath have begun, and the 7th seal has now opened (see Rev. 8). The fullness of God's wrath is centered on the eastern world, by this time America has been redeemed and is becoming the New Jerusalem.
- (for more references see Crowther: Prophecy Key to the Future and Skousen: Prophecy and Modern Times)
- Safety only in Zion. D&C 115:6: "And that the gathering together upon the land of Zion, and upon her stakes, may be for a defense, and for a refuge from the storm, and from wrath when it shall be poured out without mixture upon the whole earth." Note that this protection is offered in the "land of Zion" and "her" stakes. See also D&C 45:68-69, no safety except in Zion.
- The Saints build New Jerusalem in America during the wrath taking place around the world. The wrath is not for the saints. (1 Thes. 5:5-9.)
- The pure in heart are miraculously brought to Zion (Matt. 24:40, Luke 17:36) As worldwide chaos increases, the 144,000 will gather the pure in heart and bring them to the American Zion miraculously. Joseph Smith says only the pure in heart will be saved from the calamities of the last days.
- The 144,000 have special protection to be among the nations of the world during the wrath to bring the pure in heart to Zion. (Note that the 144,000 aren't 19-year-old young missionary virgins. Virgin is symbolic of covenant fidelity to God, and that most completely happens in the holy order of the priesthood, meaning the marriage covenant (D&C 131:2).)
- The days of wrath are 'shortened lest no flesh survive.' (Matt. 24:22)
- The final scenes, including the **vials and trumpets of judgement**, are laid out in the Book of Revelation: Chapter 8: John sees **fire and desolation** poured out during the seventh seal and preceding the Second Coming. Chapter 9: John also sees the **wars and plagues**

poured out during the seventh seal and before the Lord comes. Chapter 10: John seals up many things relative to the last days—He is commissioned to participate in the restoration of all things. Chapter 11: In the last days, **two prophets will be slain** in Jerusalem—After 3½ days, they will be resurrected—Christ will reign over all the earth. Chapter 16: God pours out plagues upon the wicked—The nations assemble for **Armageddon**—Christ comes, **islands flee, and mountains cease**. Chapter 17: John is shown that Babylon the great, the mother of harlots and abominations, has become established throughout the earth. Chapter 18: The **Saints are called out of Babylon** lest they partake of her sins—She falls and is lamented by her supporters. Chapter 19: The marriage supper of the Lamb is made ready—The **testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy [Note: because you know he is coming in the future, and you know the things he said about it will happen.]—**Christ is King of Kings and Lord of Lords. Chapter 20: Satan is bound during the Millennium—The Saints will then live and reign with Christ—The dead stand before God and are judged out of the books according to their works. Chapter 21: Those who overcome will be sons of God—The earth attains its celestial glory. Chapter 22: The Saints will reign in celestial splendor—Christ will come, and men will be judged—Blessed are they who keep His commandments.

- Armageddon is specifically fought in Israel and the surrounding nations. America doesn't fight in it. Areas like Egypt, Russia, Turkey, Iran, and Lybia - these fight Israel. America is destroyed and other countries are angry, they wanted to take America. In America, things are burned, and we can then begin to build New Jerusalem. See Cleon Skousen Prophecy in Modern Times.
- The days are "shortened, lest no flesh survive." (Matt. 24:22) This is why no one knows the day or the hour of Christ's return.
- Armageddon ends with the Lord and His 144,000, ending the 1260 days that the 2 prophets held off the world's army.
- **Ezekiel** names several places as the persons who attack Jerusalem, and the modern day equivalent geographical nations to that are Turkey, Persia, Ethiopia, Libya, and the southern tip of Russia just above the Caspian Sea. p199
- **Orson Pratt**: By miracles the devil gathers many to fight the Jews at Jerusalem in Armageddon. It is when the Kingdom of God is over

the whole earth and sun turned dark; millions upon millions come for war. **Christendom will be so darkened from priestcraft that they will not understand** these things. The Devil will drive them around at this time as a whirlwind. p201-202

Note: It's becoming popular to hate Israel, even in suppsedly Christian circles.

- **Rev. 11:13**: There will be a major earthquake at the time the 2 prophets are taken into heaven. p209
- **Rev. 11:13**: There will be a major earthquake at the time the 2 prophets are taken into heaven. Compare this with **D&C 45:47-50**: There will be a great earthquake at the time when Christ puts his foot on the Mount of Olives.
- **Zechariah**, etc.: After Armageddon, a time period where those who won't worship at Jerusalem and keep feast of tabernacles will have no rain and will have plague. This is pre-millennium. p216-219 for references.

The Second Coming

- The Second Coming comes in as Armageddon ends. (Chapter heading to Ezek. 38 says, "The battle of Gog, from the land of Magog, against Israel will usher in the Second Coming—The Lord will come amid war and pestilence, and all men will shake at His presence.")
- The wicked are burned at the Second Coming of Christ. (many scriptures on this)
- It takes 7 years to clean up from Armageddon. (Ezek. 39:9-10)
- **Orson Pratt**: The silence in heaven for a half hour comes immediately after a trump. This half hour may be our time or the Lord's (longer) time. During it, all is perfectly still. No angels flying, no trumpets sounding, no noise in heavens above. Then immediately after it, the curtain of heaven is unfolded as a scroll. See Crowther p230
- **Orson Pratt**: When Christ comes the mortal **Saints will be transfigured** and sanctified, not immortalized. They'll be prepared for the Millennial reign. Then tables will be spread and they will eat the sacrament. See Crowther p230

- **Orson Pratt**: There will be an audible sound of a trump, that of the archangel, when this coming happens. At that time, the dead in Christ will come forth out of their tombs. Also at this trump the Saints still living will instantaneously be caught up in the air to meet the Lord. See Crowther p231
- **D&C 88:110 & Rev. 20:1-3** It's after each of the angels has sounded their trumpet twice that Satan is to be bound for 1000 years for the Millennium.
- **Joseph Fielding Smith**: Adam dwelt on this American continent. But when he did, it wasn't the American continent or even the western hemisphere. The land was all in one place, and the water was all in one place. No Atlantic ocean separated the hemispheres. The creation account even tells that God caused the water to gather in one place, as well as the land. Then in Genesis we read of a time where the earth was divided. That means the land was actually divided, not just a sociology statement. **The land returning to its original form** is part of the great restoration. John saw this and said that every island will flee, and mountains are not found. See Crowther p239-240
- **John Taylor**: The Zion city of Enoch went into the sky. At the 2nd coming of Christ in glory, it will descend, and the city of Zion on earth which the Saints will have built up will ascend, and they will meet each other in the air, and fall on each other's necks and kiss each other. They will be similar peoples. See Crowther p243

Much Has Been Revealed About the Future

Members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints have been blessed with visions dreams and prophecies in "the last days" (Acts 2:17). In this book we will dive into doctrines of the future and themes regularly appearing in the visions of the saints, on topics both dreadful and exciting! May we embrace the gift of prophecy, and benefit from the many messages the Lord is sharing with His Saints in these last days!

First we study many scriptures and quotations from Latter-Day Saint leaders on future prophecy. Many latter-day saints are unaware of the many teachings of the prophets about future events. Becoming acquainted with these doctrinal teachings will expound the mind and help the saints cultivate the gift of prophecy.

In addition to many scriptures and full quotes of latter-day prophets, many summaries of quotes of the prophets from Duane Crowther's book on future prophecy are included.

Some topics of future prophecy treated include economic collapse, wars, plagues, flooding, collapse of the government, foreign invasion of America, persecution of the Saints, earthquakes, miraculous preservation of the faithful, gathering, translation, the lost tribes, the redemption of Zion and building of the New Jerusalem, Adam-ondi-Ahman, the Second Coming, and more. Some topics on the spiritual nature of things include the nature of visions, spiritual communication, ancestors, angels, cosmos, the pre-mortal spirit world, elemental intelligence, and more.

Rather than focusing on specific dates and predictions, we value visions for the themes they provide. We recognize that some elements of prophecy are symbolic, and that a focus on key doctrines rather than specific predictions is most appropriate.

This book also takes a look at classical church history visions from leaders like Joseph Smith, Heber C Kimball, John Taylor, and George Albert Smith.

Finally, we look at a possible sequence of events based on prophetic teachings.